ALADWAA

Gem

ENGLISH

for Secondary Schools

&

Around the World in Eighty Days

11 الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

By

Emad Fawzy

Ahmed Fadel

Mohamed Abdel Aal

Ayman M. Ebrahim

الاسم: .....

رقم الموبايل: .....

امسح الكود واحصل على لينكات الأضواء الرسمية

Follow Us | 16766

www.aladwaa.com

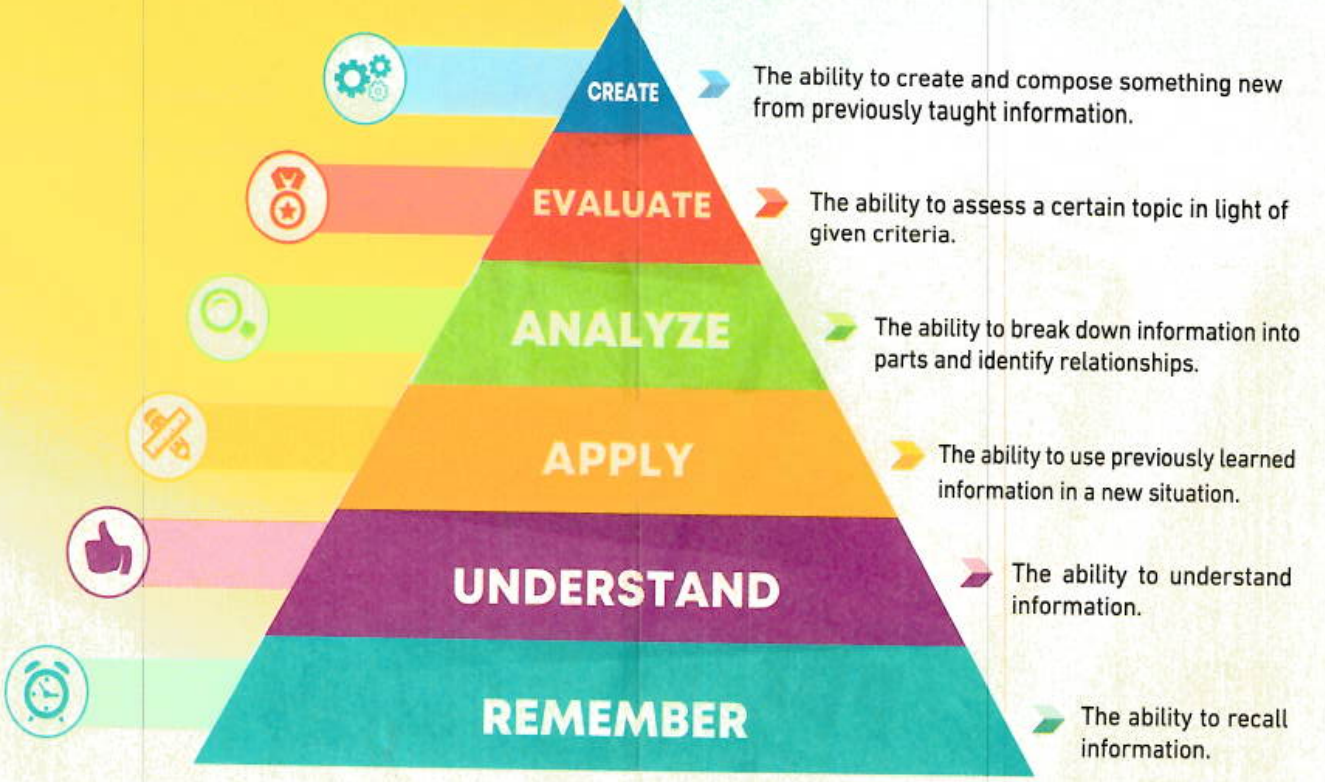
NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

BLOOM'S TAXONOMY
تصنيـف بلـوم

نواتـــج التعلـــم والمستويـات المعرفيـــة

تمثل نواتج التعلم ما ينبغى أن يعرفه الطالب ويكون قادرًا على أدائه بعد دراسته لمقرر دراسى معين، بينما تشمل المستويات المعرفية جميع النشاطات الذهنية أو العقلية، ويبدأ تصنيف نواتج التعلم فى المجال المعرفى من العمليات العقلية البسيطة ويمتد إلى العمليات الأكثر تعقيدًا (تصنيف بلوم)، ويوضح الشكل التالى هذه العمليات:

تم الاعتماد فى إعداد التدريبات والأنشطة داخل الكتاب على تصنيـف بلـوم



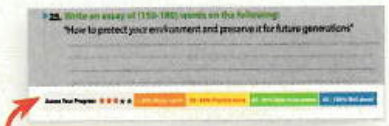
ستجد تلك الأيقونات بجانب كل سؤال فى تدريبات الأضواء؛ لمعرفة تصنيف السؤال وفقًا لهرم بلوم المعرفى.

REMEMBER UNDERSTAND APPLY ANALYZE EVALUATE CREATE

ALADWAA JOURNEY

من أجل رحلة تعليمية ممتعة تضمن لك التفوق

قمنا بتقسيم كل درس إلى:


"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations"

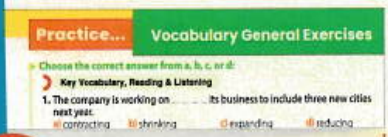
Assess Your Progress

تحديد مستواك
فى نهاية كل وحدة

Test Yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
Vocabulary
1. The port city of Singapore serves as a vital ..... for international trade and shipping.

Test Yourself

اختبار على
كل جزء


Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening
1. The company is working on ..... its business to include three new cities next year.
a) contracting b) shrinking c) expanding d) reducing

Practice

تدريبات متنوعة
ومتدرجة المستوى

Study... Part 1 | Lesson 1: Egypt: Gateway to Africa
Lesson 2: Voices from the Partnership
A Vocabulary
Key Vocabulary
expand (v) (adj) integration (n) stability (n)

Study

شرح مُبسط ووافٍ

01 02 03 04

USER'S GUIDE

START

1 Vocabulary

تعرف على معانى الكلمات فى كل درسين من خلال جداول الكلمات الرئيسية والتعبيرات الواردة فى كتاب الطالب المدرسى وأهم المشتقات والمترادفات والمتضادات والتعريفات.

2 Language

ذاكر القواعد عن طريق الشرح المبسط المدعم بخرائط ذهنية وأمثلة وفيرة على كل نقطة.

3 Vocabulary & Language Checkpoint

اختبر حفظك للكلمات من خلال تدريبات بسيطة بعد كل مجموعة من جداول الكلمات، واختبر فهمك للقواعد من خلال تدريبات بعد النقاط الرئيسية.

4 Vocabulary & Grammar General Exercises

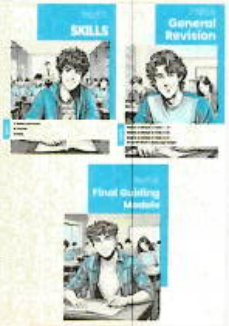
للتأكد من استيعاب الكلمات والقواعد أجب عن التدريبات العامة بعد كل درسين.

12 Dictionary

بنهاية الكتاب قاموس لترجمة الكلمات الصعبة الموجودة فى قطع الفهم.

13 Booklet

- شرح مفصل للمهارات المختلفة (القراءة/الكتابة/الترجمة).
- تدريبات لقطع الفهم والترجمة ومراجعة المنهج من خلال بنك الأسئلة على كل وحدتين.
- مراجعة عامة على القصة.
- نماذج استرشادية على المنهج.



END

7 Student's Book Corner

أهم التدريبات الواردة بكتاب الطالب على الكلمات والقواعد.

8 Al-Azhar Corner

تدريبات خاصة بطلبة الأزهر فى نهاية كل وحدة.

6 Skills

تدرب على مهارات الوحدة من خلال أسئلة لقطع الفهم والترجمة والكتابة من خلال:

Skills Exercises

9 General Exercises

تدريبات شاملة على الوحدة.

5 Test Yourself

أجب عن التدريبات المجمعة على الكلمات و القواعد.

11 Around the World in Eighty Days

- مقدمة بالسمات الهامة لشخصيات القصة.
- ملخص الفصول على هيئة نقاط.
- تمارين مجابة وغير مجابة على كل فصل للتأكد من فهمك للأحداث.

10 Module General Exercises

تدريبات عامة على كل وحدتين.

Contents

Module 1

Unit 1 Egypt-Africa Cooperation

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2) 9
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4) 27
Part 3 (Skills) 43
General Exercises 52

Unit 2 Startups & Young Entrepreneurs

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2) 56
Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4) 74
Part 3 (Skills) 90
General Exercises 98
Units 1&2 Module (1) General Exercises 101

Module 2

Unit 3 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2) 106
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4) 127
Part 3 (Skills) 143
General Exercises 152

Review (1)

Units 1, 2, & 3 155

Unit 4 Natural Disasters

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2) 164
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4) 182
Part 3 (Skills) 199
General Exercises 208
Units 3&4 Module (2) General Exercises 211

Module 3

Unit 5 Media Manipulation

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2) 216
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4) 234
Part 3 (Skills) 250
General Exercises 259

Unit 6 Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2) 263
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4) 283
Part 3 (Skills) 299
General Exercises 307
Units 5&6 Module (3) General Exercises 310

Review (2)

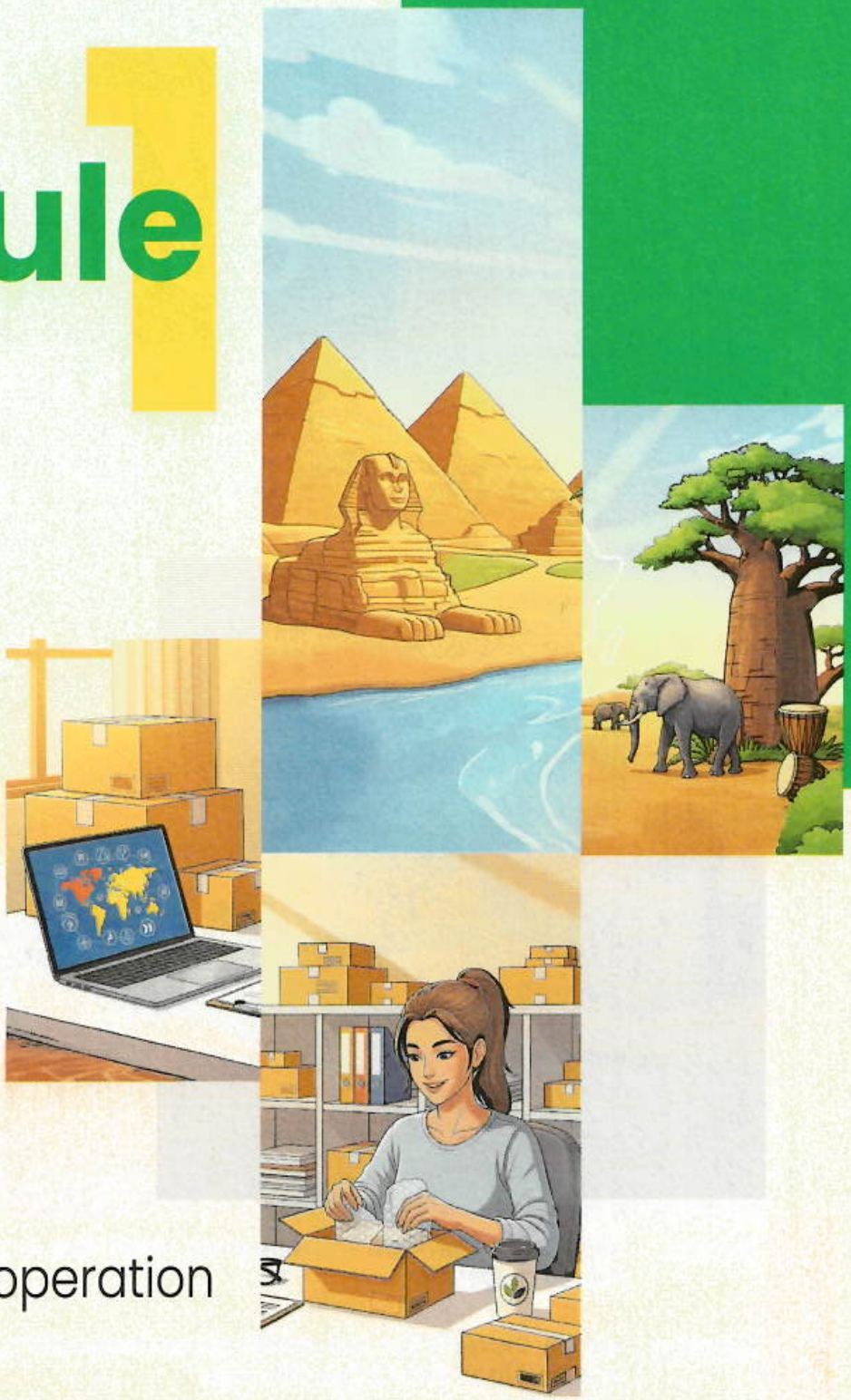
Units 4, 5, & 6 313

Story Around the World in Eighty Days

Introduction 323
Chapter (1) 326
Chapter (2) 335
Chapter (3) 344
Chapter (4) 355
Chapter (5) 364
Chapter (6) 374

Dictionary 383

Module 1

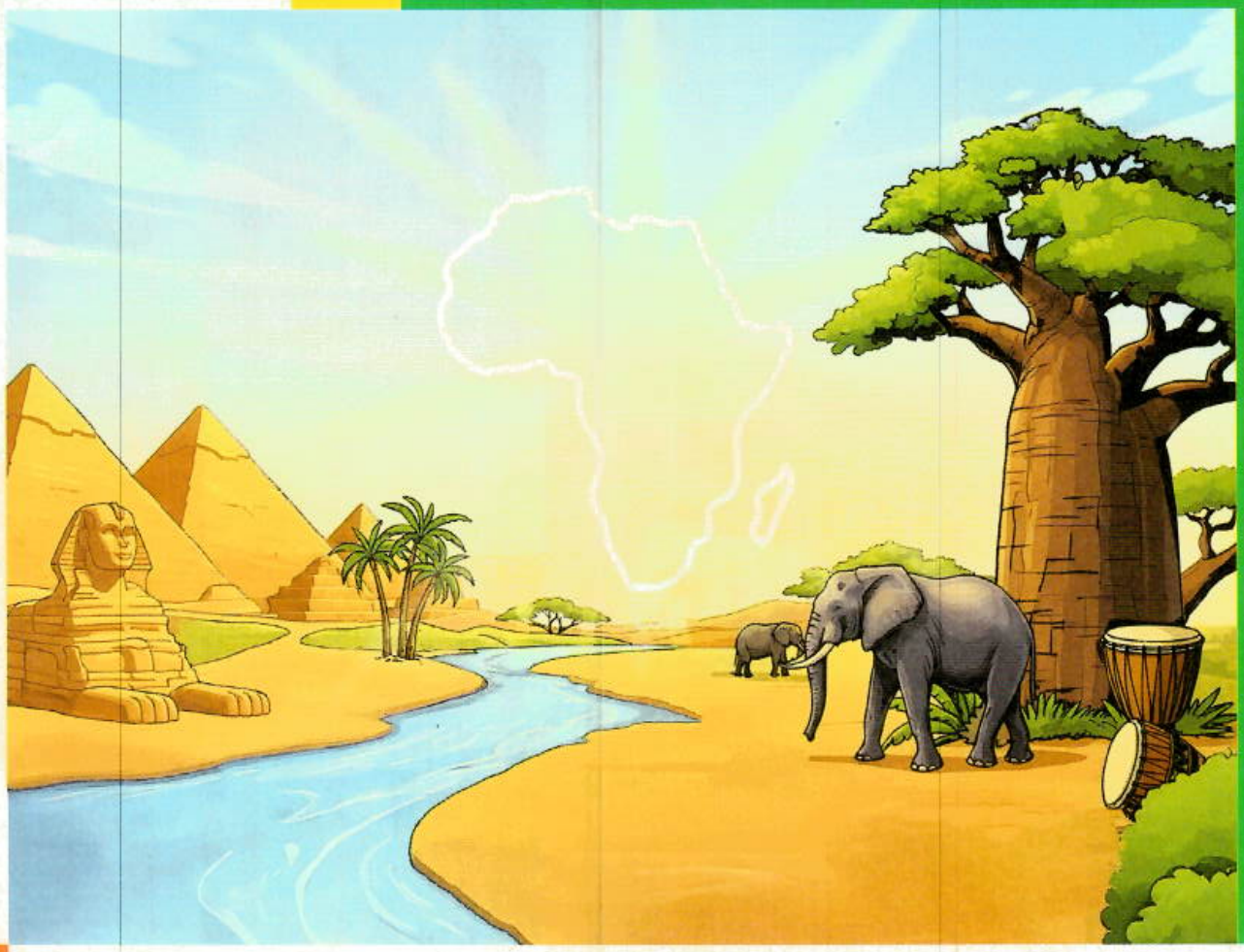


Unit 1
Egypt-Africa Cooperation

Unit 2
Startups & Young Entrepreneurs

Module (1) General Exercises
Units 1 & 2

Unit 1
Egypt-Africa Cooperation



Learning Outcomes

Reading - Identify the main ideas and supporting details from an article about Egypt's role in African cooperation.

Listening - Identify the main idea and specific details from audio tracks about the Egyptian trade relationship and African partnerships.

Speaking - Participate in a two-minute role-play discussing the benefits of educational exchanges and the challenges of international cooperation.

Writing - Write an essay using clear, persuasive phrases.

Language - Use the present continuous to talk about situations that are going on now.
- Use the present continuous passive to talk about actions that are being done.

Study... Part 1

Lesson 1: Egypt: Gateway to Africa
Lesson 2: Voices from the Partnership

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

expand (v) (ed)	يوسّع/يتوسع	integration (n)	تكامل/اندماج/دمج	stability (n)	استقرار
funding (n)	تمويل	manufactured (adj)	مُصنَّع	stable (adj)	مستقر/ثابت
gateway (n)	بوابة	mutual (adj)	متبادل		
hybrid (adj)	هجين	partnership (n)	شراكة	textiles (n)	منسوجات
infrastructure (n)	بنية تحتية	rural (adj)	ريفى		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

access (n)	وصول/مدخل	clinic (n)	عيادة	enterprise (n)	مشروع/مؤسسة
achievement (n)	إنجاز	combat (v) (ed)	يكافح	export (n) (v) (ed)	تصدير/يصدر
adopt (v) (ed)	يتبنى	comprehensive (adj)	شامل	facilities (n)	تسهيلات/مرافق
adoption (n)	تبنى	convoy (n)	قافلة/موكب	financially (adv)	ماليًا
advanced (adj)	متقدم	cooperation (n)	تعاون	flourish (v) (ed)	يزدهر
advantageous (adj)	مفيد/مربح	cross-border (adj)	عبر الحدود	forum (n)	منتدى
affordable (adj)	يمكن تحمل نفقاته	currently (adv)	حاليًا	goal (n)	هدف
African Union (n)	الاتحاد الإفريقى	customs (n)	جمارك	growth (n)	نمو
agricultural (adj)	زراعى	decade (n)	عقد (عشرة سنوات)	hepatitis (n)	التهاب الكبد الوبائى
aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف/يهدف	delegate (n) (v) (d)	مندوب/يفوض	import (v) (ed)	استيراد/يستورد
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	development (n)	تنمية/تطوير	impressive (adj)	مثير للإعجاب/مُبهر
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر/ينتبه	disease (n)	مرض	include (v) (d)	يشمل
basic (adj)	أساسى/بَسِيط	drought-tolerant (adj)	مقاوم للجفاف	initiative (n)	مبادرة
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	duration (n)	مدة	joint (adj)	مشترك
boost (v) (ed)	يعزز/يدعم	educational (adj)	تعليمى/تربوى	limitations (n)	قيود/حدود
bridge (n)	جسر/رابط	empower (v) (ed)	يمكن/يفوض	location (n)	موقع
climate-resilient (adj)	مقاوم لتغير المناخ	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد على	machinery (n)	آلات

medical aid مساعدات طبية	raw material مادة خام	Sub-Saharan (adj) متعلق بالصحراء الكبرى الإفريقية
moderator (n) مُعِد/منسق	recommendation (n) توصية	summit (n) قمة/مؤتمر قمة
network (n) شبكة	reflect (v) (ed) يعكس	support (n) (v) (ed) دعم/يدعم
occupy (v) (~~y~~ied) يشغل/يحتل	relationship (n) علاقة	technical (adj) فنى/تقنى
operation (n) عملية/جراحة	researcher (n) باحث	telecommunication (n) اتصال
participate (v) (d) يشارك	resources (n) موارد	tie (n) (v) (d) رابطة/يرتبط
partner (n) شريك	scholarship (n) منحة دراسية	trade (n) (v) (d) تجارة/يتاجر
party (n) طرف/حزب	shape (n) (v) (d) شكل/يشكل	treatment (n) علاج/معاملة
physical (adj) جسدى/مادى	solar-powered (adj) يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	tremendous (adj) هائل/ضخم
political (adj) سياسى	solidarity (n) تضامن	trial (n) محاولة/تجربة
potential (n) (adj) إمكانية/محتمل	specialized (adj) متخصص	unity (n) وحدة
power supplies (n) إمدادات الطاقة	spread (v) (n) ينتشر/انتشار	vaccine (n) لقاح
priority (n) أولوية	steady (adj) ثابت/مستقر	varieties (n) أصناف/متنوعات
process (n) (v) (ed) عملية/يعالج/يصنع	strategic (adj) استراتيجى	volume (n) حجم/مقدار
promote (v) (d) يعزز/يروج	structure (n) هيكل/بنية/مبنى	water-intensive (adj) كثيف الاستخدام للماء

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Passport officers check passports at the ..... before allowing travelers to enter the country.
   a) gateway b) growth c) highway d) route
2. Fresh vegetables are often transported long distances from ..... areas to city markets.
   a) civil b) rural c) artificial d) basic
3. Cotton, wool, and silk are traditional raw materials used in ..... production.
   a) metal b) energy c) plastic d) textile
4. Students who fail to ..... at least 80% of their classes may not be allowed to take the final exam.
   a) avoid b) create c) attend d) deny

5. Nowadays, farm workers use heavy ..... to harvest crops efficiently.
a) furniture b) machinery c) irrigation d) vision

6. Each electrical ..... of this brand comes with a one-year warranty ضمان.
a) construction b) structure c) office d) product

7. Both companies benefited from the ..... exchange of technology and experience.
a) mutual b) costly c) physical d) temporary

8. The flu ..... is recommended annually, especially for those with chronic diseases أمراض مزمنة.
a) operation b) therapy c) vaccine d) trade

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

across the continent	عبر القارة/في جميع أنحاء القارة	connect with	يربط بـ	play a vital role	يلعب دورًا حيويًا
stand shoulder to shoulder	يقف جنبًا إلى جنب	on a large scale	على نطاق واسع	face challenges about	يواجه تحديات حول
joint effort	مجهود مشترك	in return	في المقابل	scale back	يخفض/يقلص
combine with	يدمج مع	focus on	يركز على	scale up	يَزيد نِطاق .../يُوَسع
advantageous for	مفيد لـ/مربح لـ	go on	يستمر	stand at	يقَدر بـ/يَبلُغ
aim for	يَهْدف إلى	impact on	تأثير على	work with	يعمل مع
bring together	يجمع بين	increase ... by	يزيد... بمقدار		

Derivatives — المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement achiever	إنجاز مُحَقِّق/شخص ناجح	achievable	قابِل للتحقيق
attend	يحضر	attendance attendant	حضور حاضِر/مضيف	attentive	مُنتبِه/مُتيقظ
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperation cooperator	تعاون مُتَعاوِن	cooperative	تَعاوُنى
develop	يطور	development developer	تطوير/تنمية مُطَوِّر	developed developing	متطور نامى
fund	يربط بـ	fund/funding	تمويل	funded	مُموّل

integrate	يدمج/يتكامل	integration integrator	دمج/تكامل مدمِج/جهاز التكامل	integrated integrative	مُدمَج تكاملي/اندماجي
limit	يحد	limit limitation	حَدّ/قيد تَحْديد/قيد	limited limitless	مَحدود غير محدود
manufacture	يصنع	manufacture manufacturer	تصنيع مُصَنِّع/شركة تصنيع	manufactured	مُصنَّع
participate	يشارك	participation participant	مُشارَكة مُشارِك	participatory participating	تَشارُكي مُشارِك
recommend	يوصي	recommendation	توصية	recommended	مُوصى به
support	يدعم	support supporter	دَعْم/مساندة داعِم/مُشَجِّع	supportive supported	داعِم/مساند مَدعوم

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

She hopes to achieve a high score on her exam with thorough preparation. (v)
The Nobel Prize is considered one of the greatest achievements in the scientific community. (n)
The team leader set achievable goals for the project to ensure everyone stayed motivated. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
advantageous مُفيد/مُربِح	beneficial/favorable	unfavorable/harmful ضار/مُضر
arrangement ترتيب	organization/setup	chaos/disorder فوضى/اضطراب
basic أَساسِيّ/بَسِيط	fundamental/essential	advanced/complex متقدّم/معقّد
boost يدفع/يعزز	push/enhance	undermine/hinder يقلل/يعيق
cooperation تَعاوُن	collaboration/teamwork	competition/opposition منافسة/معارضة
currently حَاليًا	presently	previously/formerly سابقًا/فيما مضى
empower يمكن/يفوض	enable/strengthen	disable/weaken يُعطّل/يُضعف
expanding توسع	growing/increasing	contracting/shrinking يتقلص/يَنْكمش
flourish يَزْدَهِر	prosper/succeed	decline/fail يتراجع/يفشل
impressive مُثير للإعجاب	remarkable/notable	unimpressive/ordinary غير ملحوظ/عادي

mutual	مُتَبادَل	shared/common	individual/separate	فردى/منفصل
physical	جَسَدِيّ	bodily/tangible	mental/spiritual	عقلى/روحى
promote	يُرَوِّج/يَعزِّز	support/encourage	hinder/discourage	يعيق/يثبّط الهمة
solidarity	تَضامُن	unity/agreement	discord/disagreement	خلاف/نزاع
strategic	استراتيجى	planned/tactical	random/unplanned	عشوائى/غير مُخطَّط له
unity	وَحْدَة/اتِّحاد	harmony/agreement	division/conflict	انقسام/صراع

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The car factory makes cars on a large ..... and sells them to many different countries.
   a) mood b) rush c) stair d) scale
2. Teachers and parents ..... a vital role in shaping children's characters and futures.
   a) play b) try c) rely d) ignore
3. I helped my friend with homework, and in ..... she helped me with my math problems.
   a) first b) denial c) return d) fiction
4. The shop had to scale ..... its opening hours because fewer customers were coming.
   a) on b) over c) back d) above
5. The store has ..... parking spaces, so customers often have to park on the street.
   a) limit b) limitation c) limited d) limitless
6. The company wants all employees to participate in the safety training. The noun of the verb "participate" is ..... .
   a) participated b) participation c) participative d) anticipatively
7. Having a bike is advantageous for traveling short distances. The adjective "advantageous" is similar to ..... .
   a) beneficial b) harmful c) wasteful d) intensive
8. The company will flourish in the new market with its innovative products. The antonym of the verb "flourish" is ..... .
   a) succeed b) deny c) develop d) decline

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Egypt: Gateway to Africa

Egypt occupies a unique position as Africa's northeastern gateway, serving as a bridge among the African continent, the Middle East, and Europe. This strategic location has shaped Egypt's role in African cooperation for decades.

Currently, Egypt is strengthening its ties with sub-Saharan African countries through various initiatives. The government is investing heavily in infrastructure projects that connect Egypt with its southern neighbors. These projects include road networks, telecommunications systems, and energy partnerships that benefit the entire region.

Egypt regularly attends African Union summits, to promote economic cooperation and political stability across the continent. Egypt is also expanding its educational programs, offering scholarships to African students who want to study at Egyptian universities.

Trade relationships are flourishing as Egypt exports manufactured goods, textiles, and agricultural products to African markets. In return, Egypt imports raw materials and natural resources from countries like the Sudan, Uganda, and Kenya. This mutual exchange is creating jobs and boosting economic growth in all participating nations.

Egypt has played a vital role in strengthening healthcare across Africa through comprehensive medical initiatives. These include sending specialized medical convoys, establishing modern clinics and hospitals, and training African doctors and nurses in advanced techniques. Egypt also provides affordable medicines and vaccines, while supporting joint research to combat diseases like malaria, hepatitis, and COVID-19. By combining medical aid with capacity building, Egypt aims not only to treat patients but also to empower local health systems. These initiatives reflect Egypt's strategic vision of solidarity, African unity, and sustainable development, ensuring healthier futures for millions across the continent.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What role does Egypt's strategic location enable it to play?

a) A cultural center for Europe.

b) A bridge connecting Africa, the Middle East, and Europe.

c) A trade gateway for Asia.

d) A passage to North America.

2. How is Egypt strengthening its ties with sub-Saharan African nations?

a) By building universities.
b) By providing military support.
c) By investing in infrastructure projects like roads, telecoms, and energy.
d) By focusing only on cultural exchanges.

3. Besides infrastructure and trade, which other area is a key focus of Egypt's cooperation with Africa?

a) Space exploration.
b) Tourism promotion.
c) Building airports.
d) Educational programs and scholarships.

4. What is a comprehensive goal of Egypt's medical initiatives in Africa?

a) To only provide immediate treatment for diseases.
b) To empower local health systems through aid, training, and research.
c) To build hospitals exclusively in Egypt for African patients.
d) To focus on combating COVID-19 only.

Scan & listen

Listening Text

Presenter : Mr. Rami, thank you for joining us. Can you tell us about Egypt's current trade focus?

Mr. Rami : Thank you. Our main priority right now is strengthening trade relationships with African countries. We see tremendous potential in regional integration and economic collaboration across the continent. Currently, our annual trade volume with African nations stands at $12 billion. That's significant, but we believe it can grow much further. Our future goal is to increase trade by 50% by 2026, so we're aiming for around $18 billion. Of course, there are challenges. The biggest one remains infrastructure limitations, especially in cross-border transport and customs procedures. But we're working closely with regional partners to address these issues.

Presenter : Dr. James Nyambura, Kenyan agricultural scientist. Dr. Nyambura, you've been involved in a major agricultural collaboration with Egypt. Can you tell us about it?

Dr. James : Yes, I've been working with Egyptian researchers on a climate-resilient farming project, it focuses on developing drought-tolerant crops suitable for dry regions, especially in East Africa. This partnership has been going strong for 7 years now, and it's been incredibly productive. Our main achievement so far has been the successful introduction of new hybrid maize varieties that yield up to 40% more under dry conditions, farmers in Kenya and Tanzania have already started adopting them. Our plans for next year include expanding field trials to 5 more countries and training local agricultural officers to support wider adoption.

Presenter: Magda Ramzy, Development Journalist. Magda, you've recently returned from a reporting trip across East Africa and Egypt, what story were you covering?

Magda : I was covering Egypt-Africa development cooperation, specifically how technical and agricultural partnerships are transforming rural economies. One project stood out, the solar-powered irrigation initiative in northern Kenya, it's a joint effort between Egyptian engineers and local communities. The impact on local communities has been life-changing. Farmers now grow crops year-round, incomes have doubled, and children are staying in school longer because families are more financially stable. Based on what I've seen, my recommendation is clear: scale up funding and technical support for similar small-scale community-driven projects-they deliver real lasting change.

Definitions

		التعريفات
expanding	توسع	making something bigger or spreading it to more places
funding	تمويل	money that is given to support a project, business, or activity
gateway	بوابة	a point of entry or access to something large
hybrid	هجين	a mix of two different things, especially to make something better
infrastructure	بنية تحتية	The basic physical and organizational structures and facilities (e.g., buildings, roads, power supplies) needed for the operation of a society or enterprise
integration	تكامل	the process of bringing different groups or systems together to work as one
manufactured	مُصنَّع	made or produced on a large-scale using machinery
mutual	متبادل	experienced or done by each of two or more parties toward the other or others
partnership	شراكة	arrangements where two or more parties cooperate to advance their mutual interests
rural	ريفى	places in the countryside, away from big cities
stable	استقرار	not changing too much; strong and steady

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

meeting
مقابلة (مناسبة حيث يجتمع الناس لمناقشة أمرما)

The committee will hold another meeting Wednesday.

summit
قمة (اجتماع بين قادة الدول أو المؤسسات المهمة لمناقشة الأمور المهمة)

A summit meeting of OPEC leaders was called to find a solution to the oil crisis.

2

impressive
مؤثر (يوحى بالإعجاب)

The fireworks display was truly impressive and amazed the crowd.

affecting/moving
مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)

The sad movie had an affecting/moving impact on the audience.

effective
مؤثر (فعال ومفيد)

The new medicine proved to be effective in treating the disease.

3

attend

- يستخدم الفعل attend بأكثر من معنى منها:

١- يحضر مناسبة أو اجتماعًا.

The meeting is on the fifth and we're hoping everyone will attend.

٢- يداوم الذهاب أو الحضور إلى مكان مثل جامعة أو مسجد أو كنيسة.

Which school do your children attend?

٣- ينتبه / يعطى اهتمامًا لـ...

The customer service staff will attend to your complaints.

٤- يعتنى بشخص (خاصة عند مرضه).

My grandmother is 70 years old and needs to be attended by us.

4

expand يوسع / يتوسع
(مع الأشياء المادية أو التجارية)
(التوسع فى الحجم أو النطاق)

The company plans to expand its business by opening new stores in different cities.

extend يُمَدِّد / يُطيل / يُوسِّع
(مع النفوذ، السلطة، الوقت، الخدمات)
(أى شىء معنوى أو غير ملموس)

We decided to extend our trip by an extra week to see more of the country.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The basic physical and organizational structures and facilities are called ..... .
   a) enterprise
   b) initiative
   c) capacity
   d) infrastructure
2. A ..... is an arrangement where two or more parties cooperate to advance their mutual interests.
   a) Partnership
   b) Separation
   c) Structure
   d) Solidarity
3. The old patient was attended by two nurses. The verb "attend" here means to ..... .
   a) go to
   b) understand
   c) care for
   d) fetch
4. The exact ..... of the hotel where the royal couple is staying is a secret.
   a) situation
   b) location
   c) destination
   d) sight
5. World leaders will meet at the economic UN ..... to discuss trade and money issues.
   a) research
   b) clinic
   c) meeting
   d) summit
6. The manager says that motivating the staff is very ..... in getting work done.
   a) initiative
   b) impressive
   c) effective
   d) boring

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The company is working on ..... its business to include three new cities next year.
   a) contracting b) shrinking c) expanding d) reducing
2. Donations from the community will ..... the animal shelter's expansion project.
   a) spend b) fund c) attend d) combat
3. My neighbor drives a/an ..... car that uses both gas and electricity.
   a) gas b) electric c) simple d) hybrid
4. The successful ..... of new technology helped improve the factory's production.
   a) integration b) separation c) division d) isolation
5. These hand-made shoes are ..... in Italy using high-quality leather and materials.
   a) invented b) grown c) discovered d) manufactured
6. The new shopping mall ..... a large area on the main street.
   a) holds b) occupies c) frees d) intensifies
7. Many factories in Mahalla produce ..... such as cotton shirts, woolen sweaters, and silk scarves.
   a) pottery b) sculptures c) textiles d) paintings
8. The doctor said that the patient's condition is ..... and improving every day.
   a) strategic b) unsteady c) stable d) unpredictable
9. My grandparents live in a/an ..... area with farms and open fields.
   a) rural b) urban c) modern d) desert
10. The army chose a ..... location on the hilltop to watch the enemy movements.
    a) random b) careless c) strategic d) foolish
11. The students are ..... preparing for their final exams that start next week.
    a) formerly b) currently c) previously d) never
12. Egypt has had strong economic ..... with many African countries for ages.
    a) connections b) divisions c) ties d) separations
13. The President launched several ..... to reduce pollution and protect the environment.
    a) actions b) recommendations c) ideas d) initiatives
14. Four ..... companies provide phone and internet services for millions of Egyptians.
    a) entertainment b) telecommunication
    c) food d) construction
15. The coastal ..... of Egypt attracts many visitors because of its beaches and fine weather.
    a) country b) city c) world d) region
16. The science teacher uses games and activities to ..... learning and make lessons more interesting.
    a) promote b) ignore c) discourage d) export

17. The American University in Cairo offers ..... for top students in public schools to study for free.
a) loans b) scholarships c) debts d) fees

18. Good ..... with coworkers زملاء العمل make the workplace more enjoyable.
a) positions b) conflicts c) relationships d) arguments

19. The hospital's internal ..... allows doctors to access patients' records from any department within the building.
a) staff b) job c) solidarity d) network

20. After losing her job, Sarah's not ..... secure, and she can't pay her rent.
a) academically b) awfully c) financially d) romantically

21. The ..... support team helped me solve the problem with my internet connection.
a) technical b) sales c) production d) sails

22. The online ..... has thousands of members who discuss different topics every day.
a) software b) forum c) network d) database

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23. New parents ..... challenges with sleep when their baby cries at night.
a) include b) reply c) face d) focus

24. The restaurant hopes to increase daily customers ..... 30 % with their new menu.
a) at b) of c) around d) by

25. Economic ..... in rural areas in Upper Egypt will provide more jobs and improve people's lives.
a) developed b) development c) developer d) develop

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. The new policy helped boost the economy by encouraging investment. The synonyms of the word "boost" are ..... .
a) decrease b) enhance c) weaken d) push e) praise

27. National unity is very important during times of crisis. The opposites of "unity" are ..... .
a) cooperation b) division c) agreement d) fight e) conflict

28. The startup began to flourish after receiving proper funding. The synonyms of the word "flourish" are ..... .
a) decline b) succeed c) drop d) raise e) prosper

29. Education can empower young people to make better decisions about their future careers. The antonyms of the verb "empower" are ..... .
a) strengthen b) weaken c) integrate d) hide e) disable

30. Regular physical activity is essential for good health. "Physical" gives the same meanings as ..... .
a) emotional b) bodily c) theoretical d) tangible e) imaginary

B Language

1 Present Continuous (Active & Passive) المضارع المستمر (المعلوم والمجهول)

FORM التكوين

Affirmative الجملة المثبتة
- Subj. فاعل + am/is/are + v-ing
The baby is sleeping at the moment.

Negative الجملة المنفية
- Subj. فاعل + am/is/are + not + v-ing
They aren't watching TV at the moment.

Question الاستفهام
- Am/Is/Are + subj. فاعل + v-ing?
Is he doing his homework?
- Wh- question أداة استفهام + is/are + subj. فاعل + v-ing?
What are you doing?

Passive المبنى للمجهول
- Obj. مفعول + am/is/are + being + P.P.
Look! The thief is being chased.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 For actions happening now to say that we are in the middle of the action:
يستخدم للأحداث التى تحدث الآن لنقول إننا فى منتصف الحدث.
I'm waiting for the train. (I'm at the station now.)
They are playing football. (The match is not over yet. لم تنتهِ المباراة حتى الآن)

2 For actions that are going on around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking:
يستخدم لحدث مستمر ولكن ليس بالضرورة فى وقت الكلام.
She is working hard these days. (تعمل بجد هذه الأيام وربما هى الآن تأكل أو تقرأ أو تنام)

3 A current situation which is different to a past situation:
موقف حالى أو حاضر ومختلف عن موقف فى الماضى.
Young people aren't reading newspapers these days.

4 For fixed arrangements in the near future:
للأحداث التى تم الترتيب لها لتحدث فى المستقبل.
Ahmed is leaving for Luxor in an hour. (It's been arranged.)
يستخدم مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل إذا كان الحدث تم الترتيب له.
Ali is meeting Mr. Amgad next Saturday morning.

5 An action that people do again and again and sometimes annoys:

يستخدم مع كلمة always إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث كثيرًا وأحيانًا يضايق.

- He is always forgetting the car keys at home.
- She is always asking a lot of questions.
- Why is he always playing his guitar?

- The present continuous is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

now	at the moment	these days	at present	still
nowadays	Look!	Listen!	Take care!	

- He is still working.
- It's raining at the moment.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Why ..... strangely at that man? Has he done anything wrong?
a) did you look b) do you look
c) are you looking d) will you look

2. Please, don't make so much noise. I ..... to concentrate.
a) 'm trying b) try c) was trying d) trying

3. Mariam is busy at the moment. She ..... her hair.
a) wash b) washes c) is washing d) has washed

4. If you ..... this comic book, I'd like to borrow it.
a) don't read b) aren't reading c) read d) were reading

5. Some men are waiting outside for you ..... .
a) at that time b) recently
c) 2 hours ago d) at the moment

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. She are reading a new book now. (.....)
2. Look! The children is playing in the garden. (.....)
3. I am study for my exam at the moment. (.....)
4. The baby crying loudly at the moment. (.....)
5. A new agreement is signed right now by the leaders. (.....)
6. The goods are been shipped to the port now. (.....)

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar ..... to eat more vegetables these days.
   a) was trying b) is trying c) try d) tried
2. Why ..... on the wrong side of the road? It's not your habit.
   a) are you driving b) do you drive c) were you driving d) could you drive
3. Some friends of mine ..... their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.
   a) build b) have built c) built d) are building
4. I don't have anywhere to live right now. I ..... for a flat.
   a) look b) 'm looking c) have looked d) looked
5. A: Where's Nada? B: She ..... a tennis match.
   a) played b) has played c) is playing d) plays
6. Everything is arranged for Samir's travel next Saturday. This means he ..... next Saturday.
   a) travel b) will travel c) is traveling d) was traveling
7. My sister is always ..... my clothes without asking!
   a) borrow b) is borrowing c) borrows d) borrowing
8. Right now, a conference about African cooperation ..... in Cairo .
   a) is being held b) held c) is held d) has held
9. Hazem ..... computer games. He should do something more active.
   a) always played b) is always playing c) always playing d) always plays
10. Look at those workers outside! A new road ..... .
    a) is built b) are built c) is being built d) was built
11. Right now, thousands of emails ..... around the world.
    a) are being sent b) is sent c) were sent d) are sending
12. Please don't disturb them. They ..... their homework at the moment.
    a) do b) are doing c) have done d) does
13. A very important match ..... live on TV now.
    a) broadcasts b) is broadcasted
    c) is being broadcast d) was broadcast
14. I'm sorry, you can't talk to the manager. He ..... to an important client.
    a) talks b) is talking c) talk d) has talked

15. Be quiet! The baby ..... .

a) sleeps b) slept c) is sleeping d) has slept

16. A: Where have you arranged to spend the summer vacation?

B: I ..... two weeks in Sharm El-Sheikh next summer.

a) going to spend b) had spent

c) will spend d) am spending

17. We ..... our sister's wedding party tomorrow; we have made all preparations.

a) will have b) had had

c) going to have d) are having

18. You ..... to loud music. This is annoying; I can't concentrate on my lessons.

a) always listened b) are always listening

c) always are listening d) are always listened

19. Look! Bassem ..... up his room.

a) is tidying b) was tidying c) had tidied d) would tidy

20. Look! The children ..... football in the park.

a) plays b) are playing c) is play d) playing

21. She can't come to the phone right now. She ..... a shower.

a) is taking b) takes c) has taken d) was taking

22. We ..... for our English exam this week.

a) study b) are studying c) studies d) studied

23. Don't worry about the invitation. It ..... to all the guests right now.

a) is sending b) are sending

c) is being sent d) was being sent

24. Would you mind giving me a lift? My car ..... at the mechanic's.

a) is being checked b) was being checked

c) checks d) is checking

25. Sarah ..... her dirty clothes on the floor!

a) leave b) is left

c) was left d) is always leaving

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Ahmed is in the middle of the chess game now. (playing)

2. The time of my birthday party is next Friday. Everything is OK. (We ...)

3. She is too busy to talk right now; she is in a meeting. (having)

4. Our arrangement is to buy a new car next month. (We ...)

5. The chef is in the kitchen right now, preparing our meal. (cooking)

Test Yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The port city of Singapore serves as a vital ..... for international trade and shipping.
   a) gateway b) path c) route d) ending
2. The government tries to improve its ..... by building better roads, bridges, and power lines.
   a) integrity b) infrastructure c) location d) structure
3. The two companies formed a ..... to share costs and work together on new projects.
   a) border b) battle c) partnership d) limitation
4. Political ..... is important for economic growth and attracting foreign investors.
   a) scholarship b) enmity c) solidarity d) stability
5. Students need ..... to computers and internet to do their researches and projects properly.
   a) structure b) clinic c) access d) operation
6. The factory is hoping to ..... its products to five different countries by next year.
   a) import b) export c) decrease d) manufacture
7. A rescue ..... saved 20 people trapped in the collapsed building after the earthquake.
   a) risk b) health c) process d) operation
8. The factory increased its production ..... to meet the high demand for their products.
   a) solidarity b) quality c) volume d) cost
9. The new airline will fly ..... the continent connecting important cities in Africa.
   a) across b) above c) over d) outside
10. Social media helps people connect ..... friends and family who live far away.
    a) at b) with c) for d) in
11. Regular exercise improves both mental health and physical fitness. The synonym of the adjective "physical" is ..... .
    a) spiritual b) mutual c) bodily d) intentional
12. The doctor did a ..... check-up including blood tests, heart monitoring, and eye examination.
    a) limited b) narrow c) partial d) comprehensive
13. The cancer center has ..... doctors who focus only on treating different types of cancer.
    a) specialized b) basic c) ordinary d) general

14. Military ..... of trucks carried supplies and food to soldiers in remote areas.
a) facilities b) treatments
c) convoys d) telecommunications

15. ..... is a liver disease that can be prevented with proper vaccination تطعيم.
a) Hepatitis b) Malaria c) Measles d) Polio

Language

16. Turn the TV off. No one ..... it!
a) watches b) isn't watching c) is watching d) watched

17. They ..... to Paris next week for the conference.
a) are traveling b) travel c) traveled d) travels

18. Kareem's a policeman, but he ..... a uniform today.
a) doesn't wear b) isn't wearing c) wears d) no wear

19. Hany ..... his hair now. He ..... it every day.
a) is washing / washes b) washes / is washing
c) wash / is washing d) is washing / wash

20. ..... that our team will win the next match?
a) Were you believing b) Are you believing
c) Will you believe d) Do you believe

21. I'm angry because you ..... the door open.
a) had left b) are always leaving c) leaving d) are left

22. Egypt ..... more projects with African partners this year.
a) launches b) is launching c) launch d) launched

23. They are visiting the zoo on Saturday. This means that they ..... .
a) have arranged everything b) haven't decided yet
c) are in the zoo now d) are still thinking of going there

24. A: Hurry up! It's time to leave. B: OK, I ..... .
a) am come b) come c) coming d) am coming

25. The kids ..... each other around the kitchen table at the moment.
a) chased b) chasing c) are chasing d) are chased

26. It ..... outside. Take an umbrella!
a) rain b) rains c) is raining d) rained

27. Please be quiet. My baby ..... .
a) is slept b) is sleeping c) slept d) sleeps

28. Sohaila is very clever. She ..... seven different languages.
a) is speaking b) was speaking c) speaks d) has spoken

29. Why ..... you ..... so late tonight?
a) are / working b) do / work c) did / work d) were / working

30. Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?
a) Are they having a good time? b) He's having a huge house.
c) They are designing a robot. d) They are looking at the photo album.

Study... Part 2

Lesson 3: Egypt and Africa
Lesson 4: Success Stories in African Partnership
Lesson 5: Essay

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

annual (adj) سنوى	engagement (n) مشاركة/تفاعل	milestone (n) محطة بارزة/إنجاز هام
capacity (n) قدرة/سعة	enhance (v) (d) يعزز	targeted (adj) مستهدف
collaboration (n) تعاون	highlighted (adj) مؤكد عليه/مميز	yield (n) (v) (ed) ناتج/محصول/ينتج

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

artistic (adj) فنى	festival (n) مهرجان	organize (v) (d) ينظم
cite (v) (d) يستشهد	fossil fuel (n) وقود أحفورى	overall (adj) إجمالى/عام
conference (n) مؤتمر	foster (v) (ed) يرعى/يعزز	product (n) مُنْتَج
continent (n) قارة	healthcare (n) الرعاية الصحية	productive (adj) مُنْتِج
contribute (v) (d) يساهم	introduce (v) (d) يقدم	region (n) إقليم/منطقة
create (v) (d) ينشئ/يبتكر	invest (v) (ed) يستثمر	regional (adj) إقليمى
cultural (adj) ثقافى	irrigation (n) رى الأرض	reliance (n) اعتماد
deliver (v) (ed) يوصل/يقدم	launch (v) (ed) إطلاق/يطلق	renewable (adj) متجدد
economic (adj) اقتصادى	leader (n) قائد	sector (n) قطاع
employ (v) (ed) يوظف/يستخدم	major (adj) رئيسى/كبير	security (n) أمن
encourage (v) (d) يشجع	medical (adj) طبى	shift (n) تحول/يتحول
entirely (adv) تمامًا/بالكامل	method (n) طريقة	significant (adj) مهم/ذو مغزى
establish (v) (ed) ينشئ/يؤسس	military (adj) عسكرى	solar panel (n) لوح شمسى
event (n) حدث	mission (n) مهمة	strengthen (v) (ed) يعزز/يقوى
exchange (n) (v) (d) تبادل/يتبادل	multiple (adj) متعدد	summarize (v) (d) يلخص
expert (n) خبير	nation (n) أمة/دولة	supply (n) (v) (ied) إمداد/يزود
expertise (n) خبرة	neighboring (adj) مجاور	technique (n) تقنية/أسلوب
feature (n) خاصية/يَضُمُّ/يُبْرِزُ	one-sided (adj) من جانب واحد	transform (v) (ed) يحول/يتحول

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adding more lights will ..... the safety of the new Ring Road to Giza at night.
   a) threaten b) postpone c) enhance d) appear
2. Receiving the scholarship was a crucial ..... that opened many doors for him.
   a) milestone b) accident c) mistake d) stone
3. The farmer was disappointed with this year's corn ..... due to the drought.
   a) equipment b) yield c) schedule d) expense
4. Doctors recommend a regular ..... health checkup for people over 40.
   a) risky b) optional c) annual d) dangerous
5. The new industrial area will bring ..... benefits to the community by exporting to foreign countries.
   a) social b) political c) economic d) environmental
6. The government plans to ..... billions of dollars in new roads and bridges.
   a) invest b) waste c) withdraw d) donate
7. The government is making great efforts to improve ..... services for everyone through investing more in hospitals.
   a) education b) healthcare c) housing d) transportation
8. Africa is a large ..... with many different countries and cultures.
   a) country b) region c) island d) continent

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

across the region عبر المنطقة	drive progress يدفع عجلة التقدم	day by day يوم بعد يوم	
at a specific time في وقت محدد	give reasons يقدم أسبابًا	in conclusion في الختام	
bring new ideas يجلب أفكارًا جديدة	give a party يقيم حفلًا	in short باختصار	
do the dishes يغسل الصحون	in addition بالإضافة إلى ذلك	infer about يستنتج بشأن	
based on معتمد على / بناءً على	result in يؤدي إلى / ينتج عنه	keep ... healthy حافظ على صحة ...	
reliance on اعتماد على	roadmap for خارطة طريق لـ	support to دعم لـ	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
collaborate	يتعاون	collaboration	تعاون	collaborative	تعاونى
contribute	يساهم	contribution	مساهمة	contributory	مساهم
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
engage	يشارك/يتفاعل	engagement	مشاركة/تفاعل	engaging	جذاب/متفاعل
enhance	يعزز	enhancement	تعزيز	enhanced	معزز/محسن
highlight	يسلط الضوء على	highlight	نقطة بارزة/تسليط الضوء	highlighted	مميز/مؤكد عليه
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة/تقديم	introductory	تمهيدى/استهلالى
irrigate	يروى	irrigation	رى	irrigated irrigational	مروى رى
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliant	معتمد
summarize	يلخص	summary summarization	ملخص تلخيص	summarized/summative	ملخص/تلخيصى
target	يستهدف	target	هدف	targeted	مستهدف
transform	يعزز	transformation	تحول	transformative	تحويلى

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The new treatment will enhance the patient's ability to walk without pain. (v)
The enhancement of customer service led to higher satisfaction ratings. (n)
The athlete used enhanced training methods to improve her performance. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
artistic	فنى	creative/imaginative		common/unimaginative	شائع/تقليدى (غير مبدع)
capacity	قدرة/سعة	ability/volume		incapacity/limitation	عجز/قصور
contribute	يساهم	donate/participate/devote		withdraw/oppose	يسحب/يعارض
establish	يؤسس	found/set up		demolish/damage	يهدم/يضر

highlighted	مميز/مؤكد عليه	emphasized/featured	downplayed/minimized تم التقليل من
organize	ينظم	arrange/coordinate	disorganize/disorder يسبب فوضى
overall	إجمالي/عام	general/total	specific/partial/limited محدد/جزئي/محدود
security	أمن	safety/protection	insecurity/danger عدم أمان/خطر
supply	يزود/إمداد	provide/furnish	demand/withdraw يطلب/يسحب
targeted	مستهدف	aimed/specific	general/broad عام/واسع

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Medicine must be taken at a ..... time as directed by your doctor in order for it to be effective.
   a) strange b) past c) common d) specific
2. The young designer was hired to ..... new ideas to the traditional advertising company.
   a) follow b) rely c) bring d) depend
3. They're planning to ..... a party for their anniversary to celebrate 10 years together.
   a) do b) give c) take d) value
4. Mother always warns me that eating too much junk food can result ..... serious health problems later in life.
   a) in b) at c) of d) for
5. The company's ..... social media content helped increase their followers.
   a) engages b) engagement c) engaging d) engagingly
6. I rely on my alarm clock to wake me up every morning. The noun of the verb "rely" is ..... .
   a) relied b) reliance c) reliant d) reliantly
7. The school offers artistic programs, including painting and music. The synonym of the adjective "artistic" is ..... .
   a) creative b) common c) highlighted d) targeted
8. The company's overall profit has improved significantly over the past year. The antonym of the word "overall" is ..... .
   a) general b) effective c) helpful d) partial

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Success Stories in African Partnership

Since 2019, the Egypt-Sudan Agricultural Project has been transforming farming communities along the Nile. Egyptian experts are collaborating with Sudanese farmers to enhance crop yields and introduce modern irrigation techniques, resulting in a 35% increase in food production in targeted areas.

A major dam project in Tanzania, built by Egyptian companies, was cited as a milestone showing Egypt's expanding international expertise, especially across Africa, Europe, and Asia.

Egyptian medical teams frequently travel to neighboring countries to deliver healthcare and train local staff, building sustainable capacity. These missions are strengthening healthcare systems across the region.

In renewable energy, Egyptian-Kenyan collaboration is driving progress. Solar panel factories established with Egyptian investment are now supplying clean energy to East African markets. These projects have created over 5,000 jobs and are helping reduce reliance on fossil fuels.

Cultural exchange also plays a vital role. The annual African Movies Festival in Cairo, launched in 2018, features films from 25 African nations. It fosters cultural understanding and encourages artistic collaboration.

Through agriculture, infrastructure, health, energy, and culture, Egypt is deepening its partnerships and impact across the African continent.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the result of the Egypt-Sudan Agricultural Project in targeted areas?

a) 35% increase in food production.
b) 25% decrease in food production.
c) No significant change in food production.
d) 50% increase in food production.

2. What type of project was cited as a milestone showing Egypt's expanding international expertise?

a) Agricultural project.
b) Renewable energy project.
c) Cultural festival.
d) Major dam project.

3. What is the result of Egyptian-Kenyan collaboration in renewable energy?

a) Reduction in jobs.
b) Increased reliance on fossil fuels.
c) Creation of over 5,000 jobs and reduced reliance on fossil fuels.
d) No significant impact.

4. What is the purpose of the annual African Movies Festival in Cairo?

a) To promote Egyptian movies only.

b) To foster cultural understanding and encourage artistic collaboration.

c) To showcase European movies.

d) To focus on Asian cinema.

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Egypt is strengthening its ties with African countries through trade, education, and cultural exchange. At the moment, Egyptian companies are investing in projects across Africa, from energy to agriculture. Universities in Cairo are welcoming African students who are bringing new ideas and experiences. On the other hand, African nations are also supporting Egypt, for example, they are sharing resources and signing agreements that increase cooperation. At this time, African farmers are working with Egyptian experts to improve irrigation systems. Meanwhile, Egyptian doctors are providing medical help in rural African areas. These partnerships are not one-sided. New projects are being launched, and important bridges of trust are being built across the continent. Many conferences are being organized where leaders are discussing solutions for climate change, security, and development. Egypt and African countries are facing challenges together, but they are also creating opportunities. Day by day, relations are becoming stronger through joint action. Egypt and its African neighbors are showing that unity is not just a dream—it is something that is being achieved in the present.

Definitions

التعريفات

annual	سنوى	happening once every year
capacity	سعة	the maximum amount that something can contain or produce
collaboration	تعاون	the act of working together with others to achieve a common goal
engagement	مشاركة/تفاعل	the act of being involved or participating in something
enhance	يعزز	to increase or improve the quality, value, or extent of something
highlighted	مؤكد عليه/مميز	emphasized or made to stand out as particularly important or significant

milestone	محطة بارزة	a significant stage or event in the development or progress of something
targeted	مستهدف	directed or designed to reach a specific group, object, or goal
yield	ناتج/محصول	the full amount of an agricultural product grown

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

employ

- يوظف شخصًا لعمل
- يوظف (يستخدم طريقة أو مهارة معينة لتحقيق شيء ما)

- The factory employed 100 workers at its inauguration.
- The surgeons employed a new technique in their last surgery.

exploit

- يستخدم (استخدام شيء ما بشكل كامل وفعال قدر الإمكان)
- يستغل (يستخدم شيئًا من شأنه أن يعطيك ميزة على خصمك)

- The country's natural resources have not yet been fully exploited.
- He was quick to exploit any weakness in his opponent's argument.

2

leader

قائد (لبلد أو مجموعة أو منظمة)

Mr. Reda is a brilliant leader who manages the team well.

ruler

حاكم (شخص لديه سيطرة رسمية على بلد أو منطقة كملك أو أمير)

They gave the new square the name of the former ruler of the country.

3

introduce

يستخدم الفعل (introduce) بمعانى مختلفة مثل:

١- يقدم شخصًا ما.

٢- يطلق أو يقدم شيئًا جديدًا.

٣- ينفذ سياسة.

٤- يدخل مفهومًا جديدًا.

٥- يعرض (أو يقدم) على المسرح.

- The teacher will introduce the new student to the class.
- The company will introduce a new product next month.
- The school will introduce a new dress code.
- The book introduces readers to meditation techniques.
- The host will introduce the performers.

4

event
حدث مهم أو مشوق

Marriage is one of the most important events in a person's life.

incident
حدث غير عادى أو غير سار أو جزء من سلسلة من الأحداث

Many violent incidents at the city affected its image.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... is the act of being involved or participating in something.
   a) Collaboration b) Feature
   c) Irrigation d) Engagement
2. The maximum amount that something can contain or produce is ..... .
   a) reliance b) milestone
   c) capacity d) mission
3. The adjective "....." means directed or designed to reach a specific group, object, or goal.
   a) intended b) targeted
   c) eligible d) highlighted
4. The soccer team will ..... the opposing team's weak defense on the left side.
   a) exploit b) employ
   c) hire d) introduce
5. The tour ..... showed the group around the historic city and explained its interesting history.
   a) minister b) ruler
   c) leader d) employer
6. The graduation ceremony is an important ..... in every student's life.
   a) accident b) incident
   c) funeral d) event

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The new stadium has a seating ..... of 65,000 people.
   a) dimension b) opportunity c) size d) capacity
2. The successful project was the result of close ..... between three different companies.
   a) separation b) competition c) collaboration d) confusion
3. The manager ..... the most important points during the presentation.
   a) exchanged b) highlighted c) deleted d) invented
4. The teacher noticed increased student ..... when using interesting teaching methods.
   a) engagement b) confusion c) boredom d) milestone
5. The advertising campaign was ..... at teenagers who are interested in sports.
   a) interested b) targeted c) identified d) hidden
6. All students are expected to ..... to the class discussion by sharing their opinions and ideas.
   a) attach b) deliver c) contribute d) forbid
7. The government wants to ..... people to use public transportation instead of driving cars.
   a) refuse b) discourage c) make d) encourage
8. After the new expansion, the factory will ..... 200 new workers next year.
   a) fire b) employ c) exploit d) fear
9. Mrs. Wafaa is a/an ..... in computer programming with over 15 years of experience.
   a) expert b) beginner c) messenger d) detective
10. The government will ..... medical equipment to hospitals across the country.
    a) replay b) deny c) imply d) supply
11. The top graduate received ..... job offers after graduation because of his high qualifications.
    a) strange b) single c) multiple d) deductive
12. Solar and wind power are examples of ..... energy sources that are eco-friendly.
    a) renewable b) harmful c) traditional d) non-renewable
13. The new ..... trade agreements help countries in the same area do business more easily with each other.
    a) social b) regional c) economical d) severe
14. There has been a ..... shift in consumer preferences toward organic foods to keep healthy.
    a) creative b) minor c) significant d) hateful
15. The tech company will ..... its new smartphone model in September.
    a) launch b) discover c) rehearse d) repeat

16. Modern ..... systems help farmers grow crops in dry areas and save water as well.
a) security b) economic c) industrial d) irrigation

17. The university wants to ..... online courses to reach students who cannot attend classes on campus.
a) reverse b) derive c) introduce d) hide

18. Because of the high wind, the fire quickly spread to ..... buildings.
a) reflexive b) neighboring c) national d) repetitive

19. The surgeon's ..... in heart operations saved many patients' lives.
a) expertise b) search c) article d) method

20. The new car ..... advanced safety technology and fuel efficiency.
a) reverses b) features c) duplicates d) proposes

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. Innovation and investment in technology can ..... progress in many fields of life nowadays.
a) drive b) do c) design d) detect

22. The teacher asked students to ..... reasons for missing two classes this week.
a) do b) give c) play d) delay

23. Experts say that regular exercise and a balanced diet help..... you healthy.
a) stay b) avoid c) keep d) reply

24. The doctor's treatment plan was based ..... the patient's medical history and test results.
a) at b) for c) at d) on

25. After failing the first test, Adel needed ..... from his friends to keep studying.
a) encourage b) encouragement c) encourages d) encouraged

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. The lack of security made everyone feel uncomfortable. The synonyms of the word "security" are ..... .
a) amusement b) protection c) risk d) safety e) danger

27. Sarah needs to organize her desk and files before starting the new project. The verb "organize" is the opposite of the words ..... .
a) hinder b) stop c) coordinate d) disorder e) disorganize

28. The teacher highlighted the main points of the lesson. The synonyms of the word "highlighted" are ..... .
a) emphasized b) ignored c) featured d) presented e) overlooked

29. Ali agreed to contribute to the project, offering great support. The antonyms of the word "contribute" are ..... .
a) take b) withdraw c) support d) block e) oppose

30. Lack of sleep can ..... poor concentration, especially during exams.
a) result in b) reason for c) avoid d) cause e) delay

B Language

Present Continuous: (State/Stative verbs) أفعال الثبات/الحالة

هنالك بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم فى زمن المضارع المستمر، وتصف هذه الأفعال حالة ثابتة أو عملية معرفية متعلقة بالإدراك والشعور أو تعبر عن ملكية أو آراء، ونستخدم فى هذه الحالة المضارع البسيط أو can + inf. وليس المضارع المستمر، واليك بعضًا من هذه الأفعال:

(1) Thoughts and opinions	أفعال تعبر عن الآراء والاعتقادات	think, know, etc.
(2) Feelings and emotions	أفعال تعبر عن المشاعر والعواطف	like, love, etc.
(3) Perception and senses	أفعال تعبر عن الإدراك والحواس	hear, see, etc.
(4) Possessions and measurements	أفعال تعبر عن الملكية والمقاييس	belong يخص, have, weigh, etc.
(5) I ~~am seeing~~ some birds on the wall.		(I see/I can see ...)

ADVANCED POINTS

Some verbs have both a stative and an active meaning:

بعض الأفعال لها كل من المعنى الحركى والمعنى غير الحركى، وإذا استخدمت فى الأزمنة المستمرة (المضارع المستمر) يكون لها معنى مختلف:

Verb	State الحالة	Action الحركة
think	I think English is easy. هذا اعتقاد وليس تفكيرًا	I'm thinking about your plan. = I'm considering. يدبر أمرًا/يفكر مليًا فى أمر
have	My brother has a nice car. أخى (يملك) سيارة لطيفة وليس (يتناول).	He's having dinner now. = He is eating now. (يتناول العشاء) وليس (يملك)
feel	I feel you should take more time. الشعور والإحساس هنا ليس حركيًا ولكنه مثل الاعتقاد.	She is feeling her way in the dark. = She is finding her way in the dark. تتحسس الطريق باليد أو النظر جيدًا
see	His eyes are so bad. He sees a little. الفعل see هنا بمعنى (يرى) وليس (يقابل).	I'm seeing my lawyer tonight. = I'm visiting/meeting my lawyer tonight. أزور/أقابل
look	He looks tired = seems الفعل look هنا بمعنى يبدو.	She's looking at some old photographs. = She's examining some old photographs. تتفقد/تفحص/تنظر بدقة
be	Ali is a kind man. الفعل «يكون» فعل حالة وهو ليس فى وقت معين ولكنه دائم.	Ramy is being very kind to me these days. = He's behaving kindly. يتعامل معى بلطف هذه الأيام فقط.

smell	The food smells nice. رائحة الشيء تكون هى حالته.	Why are you smelling your food? = Trying the smell of. يحاول شم رائحة شيء.
weigh	The meat weighs 2 kilos. يبلغ وزنها ؟ كيلو جرام	He is weighing the meat. يقوم بعملية الوزن

ولنفهم الفرق بين الأفعال جيدًا نتأمل المثال الآتى:

The soup tastes nice. I'm tasting the soup now.

فالحالة التى عليها الشُربة هى أنها جيدة ولها مذاق جميل، وهذا شيء ثابت لا حركة فيه. أما أنا فيصدر منى حدث وليس حالة وهو أننى أقوم بالتذوق لكى أعرف حالة الشوربة، وهنا يكون الاستمرار.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I ..... that honesty is the best policy.
a) am thinking b) think c) thinks d) thinking

2. Which sentence is correct?
a) I am having a new laptop that I use for my studies.
b) I have a new laptop that I use for my studies.
c) I am having a shower right now, so I'll call you back.
d) Both b and c are correct.

3. Which sentence uses the verb 'see' to mean a deliberate action?
a) I see a beautiful bird outside my window.
b) With these new glasses, I can see much better.
c) I am seeing my doctor for a check-up this afternoon.
d) He sees the importance of this decision.

4. Which sentence uses the verb 'be' in a dynamic way to describe temporary behavior?
a) Water is essential for life. b) He is a very intelligent student.
c) Why are you being so rude to me today? d) The world is round.

5. Which sentence is correct?
a) This cake is tasting delicious.
b) I am loving the music at this party.
c) The chef is tasting the soup to check the seasoning.
d) She is having two brothers and one sister.

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I'm having a car now. (.....)
2. We needing to build a hospital. (.....)
3. I don't eating at the moment. (.....)
4. The food is tasting nice. (.....)
5. You are love healthy food. I know that. (.....)

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Most scientists ..... that the world is getting hotter.
a) believe b) are believed c) are believing d) will believe

2. Hana likes reading science fiction stories, but her brothers ..... sport.
a) liked b) are liking c) likes d) like

3. They're hungry. They ..... something to eat.
a) wants b) want c) are wanting d) were wanting

4. The sky ..... grey and the wind is blowing. I think it is going to rain.
a) looks b) isn't looking c) has looked d) will look

5. You haven't said a word all morning. What ..... about?
a) you think b) do you think c) you do think d) are you thinking

6. Something ..... different - Are you wearing a new suit?
a) seem b) had seemed c) seems d) is seeming

7. When my brother has a bad cold, he ..... nothing.
a) tasting b) is tasting c) tasted d) tastes

8. Mohamed ..... more money than he can afford to pay.
a) owes b) owed c) is owing d) was owing

9. I ..... the fish now. It ..... five kilos.
a) am weighing/is weighing b) am weighing/weighs
c) weigh/weighs d) weigh/is weighing

10. Which sentence of the following is grammatically correct?
a) I'm usually brushing my teeth at the moment.
b) My brother is wanting to look for a better job these days.
c) We are meeting on Monday to discuss some problems.
d) I don't eat breakfast this morning.

11. A: What is Osama doing at the moment? B: ..... .
a) He is tasting the food. b) He weighs the fish he has just bought.
c) He is looking ill. d) He is thinking that his teacher is a genius.

12. I ..... a wonderful time in the village. Everyone is really nice.
a) am not having b) going to have c) had had d) am having

13. Call me later. I ..... dinner with my family.
a) will have had b) have c) have had d) am having

14. I ..... about going to the sports club.
a) thought b) am thinking c) think d) am thought

15. My friend ..... a lovely villa which has a nice pool.
a) is having b) had c) has d) was having

16. Leila ..... that she will be better at math.
a) is being hoped b) is hoping c) hopes d) hoping

17. A new African trade agreement ..... to boost economic growth across the continent.
a) signed b) signs c) is being signed d) has signed

18. This week, the African Union ..... its annual summit in Addis Ababa.
a) is holding b) holds c) is being held d) was holding

19. The new solar panels for the village ..... from Egypt next month.
a) are shipping b) are being shipped c) ship d) shipped

20. The doctors ..... a special convoy to provide aid in rural areas next week.
a) send b) are sending c) are being sent d) sent

21. Excuse the noise; the workers ..... the road to improve the infrastructure.
a) repair b) are repairing c) repaired d) have repaired

22. More affordable medicines ..... to remote clinics as we speak.
a) are delivering b) deliver
c) are being delivered d) were being delivered

23. Cultural understanding ..... through events like the annual African Film Festival.
a) is promoting b) promotes
c) is being promoted d) are promoted

24. New telecommunications cables ..... to connect Egypt with its southern neighbors.
a) are laying b) is laid c) are being laid d) have laid

25. The details of the new partnership ..... at the conference next Friday.
a) are announcing b) announce
c) are being announced d) were announced

26. We ..... on a major project on sustainable energy this semester.
a) are working b) work
c) are being worked d) worked

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Are they building a new school? (being built)
2. The chef checks the flavor of the sauce. (tasting)
3. Mona has an appointment with the doctor this afternoon. (seeing)
4. The team is now in the club to have some practice. (practicing)
5. Our company is launching a new product this month. (being)

Test Yourself | Part 2 | Lessons 3, 4 & 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The company holds a/an ..... meeting every December to discuss the year's achievements and future plans.
   a) temporary b) weekly c) annual d) constantly
2. Reaching 10,000 subscribers was a major ..... for the YouTube channel.
   a) capacity b) milestone c) integration d) collaboration
3. This year's corn ..... was 20% higher than last year due to favorable weather conditions.
   a) product b) outcome c) result d) yield
4. The healthcare ..... has grown significantly due to increased demand for medical services.
   a) sector b) district c) division d) revision
5. Scientists from around the world attended the International Climate Change ..... in Dubai.
   a) Research b) Summit c) Search d) Site
6. The school's art program helps ..... students' creative talents and self-expression.
   a) hide b) delay c) foster d) income
7. The Youth Forum in Sharm El-Sheikh promotes ..... exchange between different young people.
   a) financial b) cultural c) economic d) professional
8. Installing solar ..... on the roof can reduce electricity costs greatly.
   a) panels b) dishes c) slides d) cubes
9. The hypermarket aims to ..... new branches in big cities in the country.
   a) close b) avoid c) appear d) establish
10. Digital technology has ..... the way we communicate and work.
    a) worsened b) created c) transformed d) complicated
11. The basketball coach taught his players a new shooting ..... to improve their accuracy.
    a) problem b) technique c) mistake d) form
12. The bank clerks need to ..... a meeting to discuss the new policy changes.
    a) organize b) postpone c) realize d) highlight
13. The spacecraft's ..... is to explore Mars and search for signs of ancient life.
    a) racket b) package c) mission d) message
14. Many countries are trying to reduce their use of ..... fuels by using renewable energy sources.
    a) solar b) modern c) sustainable d) fossil

15. The computer's security software protects against viruses and online threats. Here, "security" is similar in meaning to ..... .

a) attention b) protection c) danger d) expertise

Language

16. Right now, a lot of new houses ..... in the city.

a) were built b) are building c) are being built d) build

17. Look at the river! The water ..... very fast today.

a) is flowing b) is being flowed c) flows d) was flowing

18. Wait, Rami. Mother ..... lunch now.

a) is making b) is being made c) makes d) is made

19. We can't enter the classroom now. The floor ..... .

a) is cleaning b) is cleaned c) is being cleaned d) cleans

20. Don't count him in. He ..... for the final exams this week.

a) is studying b) studies c) studied d) has studied

21. She can't hear you because she ..... to music.

a) listens b) is listening c) listened d) has listened

22. He is always ..... loudly during the lessons!

a) talk b) is talking c) talked d) talking

23. Look! The Egyptian engineers ..... a new dam in Tanzania right now.

a) build b) are building c) built d) have built

24. Why ..... you ..... your passport? Are you planning a trip?

a) are/needing b) do/need c) are/needing d) have/needed

25. My brother ..... about becoming a diplomat and working in international relations.

a) is always talk b) is always talking c) always talk d) is always talked

26. This semester, many African students ..... in specialized medical programs at Cairo University.

a) are enroll b) enroll c) are being enrolled d) have enrolled

27. The green spaces in Cairo ..... by the government.

a) are increasing b) increase

c) are being increased d) are increase

28. She ..... a presentation on Egypt's role in African development for her class tomorrow.

a) prepares b) is preparing c) is being prepared d) has prepared

29. I ..... to a podcast about African economic integration while I'm cooking dinner.

a) listen b) am listening c) have listened d) was listening

30. He ..... for new challenges; he's so ambitious.

a) look b) is looking c) always look d) is looked

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Writing an Essay كتابة المقال

An essay is like a structured story or argument in which you write about a specific topic.

المقال يشبه قصة أو مناقشة منظمة، تكتب فيه عن موضوع مُعيَّن.

The main structure of an essay:

Introduction (The Beginning): المقدمة:

- Grab the reader's attention and clearly say what the essay is about.

قم بجذب انتباه القارئ وتوضيح فكرة المقال.

- **Hook:** Start with an interesting sentence or question about the topic.

ابدأ بجملة أو سؤال يجذب الانتباه.

- **Thesis Statement:** This is the most important sentence. It tells the reader exactly what your essay will prove or explain.

جملة الموضوع هى أهم جملة فى المقدمة وهى التى تخبر القارئ بموضوع المقال.

Body Paragraphs (The Middle): فقرات الموضوع:

- Explain and prove your thesis statement with ideas and evidence.

اشرح وأثبت المعلومات فى جملة الموضوع خاصتك بالأفكار والأدلة.

- Each paragraph must focus on ONE main idea that supports your thesis.

اجعل كل فقرة تركز على نقطة محددة فقط.

- Start each paragraph with a Topic Sentence that introduces that main idea.

ابدأ كل فقرة بجملة رئيسية تظهر موضوع الفقرة.

- Support your topic sentence with reasons, facts, or examples.

دعم الجملة الرئيسية بالأمثلة والحقائق والأسباب.

Conclusion (The End): الخاتمة:

- Summarize your main points and leave a final impression.

لخص النقاط الرئيسية واترك انطباعًا أخيرًا.

- Restate your thesis in new words.

أعد صياغة جملة الموضوع خاصتك بطريقة جديدة.

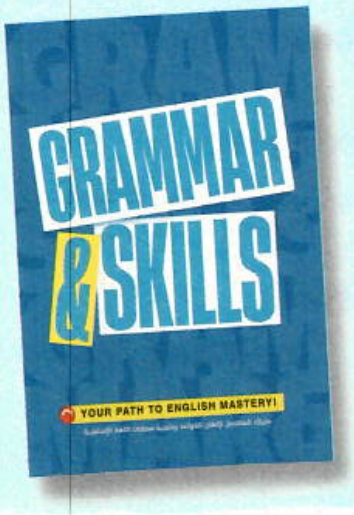
- End with a strong closing thought that makes your essay feel complete.

اختم بفكرة قوية تجعل مقالك كاملًا.

MODEL ESSAY

Egypt: The Gateway to Africa

Introduction	Egypt holds a unique and vital position as the gateway to Africa. Its strategic location bridges the continent with the Middle East and Europe, making it a center for cooperation and exchange. This role is crucial for Africa's growth and unity.
Body Paragraphs	Egypt strengthens its ties through economic partnerships. It exports manufactured goods and imports resources, boosting trade and creating jobs across the continent. Furthermore, Egypt provides essential support in healthcare by sending medical missions, training doctors, and offering affordable treatments to fight diseases. In addition, Egypt invests in infrastructure projects like roads and energy networks, connecting Africa and fostering development. Cultural exchanges, such as scholarships and festivals, build lasting bonds of understanding and friendship between peoples.
Conclusion	In conclusion, Egypt is much more than a geographical bridge. Through economic, medical, and cultural efforts, it actively empowers and connects Africa, proving it is truly the continent's indispensable gateway.



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيّقة!

Practice ... Skills Exercises

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Keeping healthy is important for living a happy, energetic, and successful life. When you take care of your body and mind, you feel better, have more energy, and can do the things you enjoy. Choosing natural and fresh foods over processed foods helps your body function better and protects you from many illnesses.

Exercising regularly is another key part of a healthy lifestyle. Exercise helps strengthen muscles, improve heart health, increase flexibility, and reduce stress. Many doctors suggest at least 30 minutes of moderate exercise, like walking, swimming, or cycling, five times a week.

Getting enough sleep is just as important as eating and exercising. Most experts recommend between 7 to 9 hours of sleep each night for adults. Good sleep allows the body to recover, rebuild muscles, and strengthen the immune system, which helps you fight off sickness.

Another essential habit is drinking plenty of water every day. Water helps control body temperature, carries nutrients to cells, and removes waste from the body.

Visiting the doctor for regular check-ups is another smart step, as early detection of health problems can lead to easier and more effective treatment.

Finally, keeping a positive attitude, setting true personal health goals, and celebrating small achievements can keep you motivated to stay healthy every day.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Keeping healthy is important because it helps the person ..... .

a) look better than others
b) feel active and live happily
c) sleep well at night
d) drink much water

2. Choosing fresh foods helps your body as it ..... .

a) makes meals taste better
b) saves more time cooking
c) reduces the need for exercise
d) helps the body work well and stay healthy

3. A major benefit of exercising regularly is ..... .

a) improving strength, heart health, and flexibility
b) feeling more tired all day
c) having less food and water
d) sleeping fewer hours at night

4. The synonym for the underlined word "detection" is ..... .

a) celebration b) confusion c) discovery d) movement

5. The sentence that best summarizes the second paragraph is .....

a) regular exercise strengthens the body, improves the heart, reduces stress, and can be fun

b) exercising once a month is enough to stay healthy

c) only competitive sports can keep your body healthy

d) doctors believe exercise is not important if you eat healthy foods

6. Drinking water supports health as .....

a) it warms the body

b) it increases fat storage

c) it decreases physical strength

d) it cleans the body by getting rid of harmful substances

7. Infer what might happen if someone ignores both stress and unhealthy eating for a long time.

a) They might develop serious health issues.

b) They will automatically stay healthy.

c) They will become stronger and smarter.

d) They will not notice any change in life.

8. If you could change just one daily habit to live healthier, what would be a smart first step?

a) Sleep more than 9 hours to have more energy.

b) Walk or exercise for 30 minutes each day.

c) Skip breakfast to lose weight quickly.

d) Drink water only instead of eating food.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Aziz was a smart and kind boy who always tried to do the right thing. However, when he started high school, he wanted to fit in with a group of students known for being troublemakers. They encouraged Aziz to skip classes, make fun of others, and do things that he knew were wrong. At first, Aziz thought it was fun to be part of the group, and he enjoyed their attention.

But as time went on, Aziz started to feel uncomfortable about their actions. He noticed the group didn't treat others kindly and often made jokes at the expense of other students. His grades, which had once been excellent, began to drop.

One day, his teacher, Mr. Adel, noticed that Aziz was not doing well in class and asked if everything was okay. Aziz told him everything. The teacher replied that choosing the right friends was important.

Aziz decided to distance himself from the group and focus on finding new friends who shared his values. It wasn't easy, but over time, he began to feel better about himself and his decisions.

Aziz worked hard to improve his grades and regain his self-confidence. He learned an important lesson: bad friends can have a big negative impact on your life, but choosing the right friends can help you make better choices.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Aziz wanted to join the group of students because ..... .

a) he just wanted to fit in
b) they were very smart
c) he wanted to try something new
d) they were good at sports

2. The group encouraged Aziz to ..... .

a) help other students fail
b) steal student's money
c) join a sports team
d) skip school and make fun of others

3. The synonym for the word "uncomfortable" is ..... .

a) happy
b) uneasy
c) excited
d) proud

4. After Aziz spent time with the wrong friends, ...

a) his parents realized the change in his behavior
b) his personality got stronger
c) his school marks started to get worse
d) he became popular with his old friends

5. It was important for Aziz to find new friends who shared his values because ..... .

a) true friends help you make better choices and grow
b) they would make him more popular
c) he wanted to skip classes without trouble
d) he needed more people to play games with

6. The sentence that best summarizes the last paragraph is ..... .

a) Aziz stopped caring about school and friends
b) Aziz learned that good friends help you succeed, while bad friends can hurt you
c) Aziz became popular because he joined a new group
d) Aziz found that ignoring his problems made them go away

7. Why do you think it was difficult for Aziz to leave his old group of friends?

a) Because he enjoyed studying with them.
b) Because he didn't care about his future.
c) Because he wanted to feel accepted and feared being alone.
d) Because they helped him improve his grades.

8. If Aziz's teacher hadn't talked to him, ...

a) he might have been better
b) he could have focused on studying
c) he would have succeeded in exams
d) He might have stayed with the bad group

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt plays a pivotal role in Africa through its diplomatic initiatives and economic partnerships, which strengthen stability and foster development across the continent.

a) تلعب مصر دورًا محوريًا فى إفريقيا من خلال مبادراتها الدبلوماسية وشراكاتها الاقتصادية، مما يعزز الاستقرار ويطور التنمية فى جميع أنحاء القارة.

b) تمارس مصر تأثيرًا هامًا فى إفريقيا بمشاريعها السياسية وعلاقاتها التجارية، مما يدعم الأمان وينمى التقدم فى كل القارة.

c) تقوم مصر بدور رئيسى فى إفريقيا عبر مساعيها السلمية وتعاونها المالى، مما يشدد الثبات ويبنى التطور فى عموم إفريقيا.

d) تساهم مصر بشكل مركزى فى إفريقيا بواسطة جهودها الخارجية واتفاقياتها الاستثمارية، مما يزيد التأسيس ويشجع النمو فى أرجاء القارة.

2. The main purpose of education is the integral development of students. It also aims at preparing them for the challenges of the future.

a) إن الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطلاب. كما يهدف إلى إعدادهم لمواجهة تحديات المستقبل.

b) إن الغرض الأساسى من التعليم هو التنمية الجزئية للطلاب. كما يهدف إلى إعدادهم لمجابهة تحديات المستقبل.

c) إن الغرض الرئيسى من التثقيف هو التنمية المتكاملة للطلاب. كما يهدف إلى إعدادهم لمواجهة تغيرات المستقبل.

d) إن الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتدرجة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعدادهم لمواجهة إعدادات المستقبل.

3. Egypt is strengthening its African partnerships through trade, healthcare, and infrastructure projects.

a) مصر تعزز شراكاتها مع دول إفريقيا من خلال التجارة والرعاية الصحية ومشروعات الصرف الصحى.

b) مصر تعزز شراكاتها العالمية من خلال التجارة والرعاية الصحية ومشروعات البنية التحتية.

c) تعزز مصر شراكاتها الإفريقية من خلال الأشغال والمستشفيات ومشروعات البنية التحتية.

d) مصر تعزز شراكاتها الإفريقية من خلال التجارة والرعاية الصحية ومشروعات البنية التحتية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. تمثل العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة لمصر قفزة كبرى نحو الحداثة والتطور، حيث تهدف إلى تخفيف الازدحام فى القاهرة وتوفير مرافق متطورة لجذب الاستثمارات العالمية.

a) Egypt's New Administrative Capital is a big jump towards modernism and progress, as it wants to lessen crowding in Cairo and offer developed utilities to double international investments.

b) Egypt's New Administrative Capital represents a major leap towards modernity and development, as it aims to reduce congestion in Cairo and provide advanced facilities to attract global investments.

c) Egypt's New Administrative Capital symbolizes a huge hop into contemporary and evolution, seeking to minimize traffic in Cairo and present sophisticated amenities to attract worldwide business.

d) Egypt's New Administrative Capital represents a major step towards modernity and development, as it aims to stop congestion in Cairo and provide advanced facilities to attract global investments.

5. تؤدى مصر دورًا محوريًا فى العالم العربى بفضل ثقلها التاريخى والسياسى، حيث تعمل دائمًا على دعم قضايا الأمة والدفاع عن استقرار المنطقة.

a) Egypt has a main role in the Arab world based on its old and governmental value, and it usually tries to help the nation's topics and fight for the region's progress.

b) Egypt makes a key job in the Arab world because of its historical and political importance, and it always functions to hold the nation's problems and protect the area's security.

c) Egypt performs a central role in the Arab world due to its historical and political importance, and it constantly strives to back the causes of the nation and guard the stability of the zone.

d) Egypt plays a pivotal role in the Arab world thanks to its historical and political weight, as it always works to support the nation's issues and defend the region's stability.

6. إن اتباع نظام غذائى يساعدك كثيرًا فى الحفاظ على وزن طبيعى وصحة جيدة. لذا يجب أن تعى أن المعدة مفتاح لصحة جيدة فى حالة اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة.

a) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

b) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining an abnormal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

c) Following a diet helps you a lot in wasting a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

d) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the kidney is a key to good health if you follow proper eating customs.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"How we can enhance international trade to boost our economy."

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

diplomatic	دبلوماسى	administrative	إدارية	congestion	الازدحام
pose	يشكل	binding	ملزم		

Student's Book Corner

Vocabulary

1 Match the words to their meanings:

1. gateway	a) arrangements where two or more parties cooperate to advance their mutual interests
2. infrastructure	b) experienced or done by each of two or more parties toward the other or others
3. partnership	c) a point of entry or access to something larger
4. manufactured	d) The basic physical and organizational structures and facilities (e.g., buildings, roads, power supplies) needed for the operation of a society or enterprise.
5. mutual	e) made or produced on a large scale using machinery

Language

2 Correct the verb between brackets using the present continuous tense:

1. Egypt ..... (launch) new projects.
2. The final match ..... (play) now.
3. Doctors ..... (provide) medical help.
4. The road ..... (pave).

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They ..... a new bridge across the Nile now.
   a) build b) are building c) is built d) are built
2. Many new projects ..... out in the countryside now.
   a) are carrying b) have carried c) are being carried d) have been carried
3. The students ..... for their exams this week.
   a) study b) are studied c) are studying d) is studying
4. English ..... in many schools right now.
   a) is teaching b) are teaching c) is being taught d) is taught
5. My friends ..... football in the park now.
   a) are playing b) is played c) are played d) is playing
6. The roads ..... because of the heavy rain today.
   a) are cleaning b) is being cleaned c) are being cleaned d) was cleaned
7. I ..... to music while doing my homework.
   a) listens b) am listened c) am listening d) is listening
8. New houses ..... quickly in this area.
   a) are being built b) is built c) are building d) being built

1 Finish the following dialog:

Basil meets his neighbor Ali outside his house.

Basil: Good evening. Where are you going?

Ali : I am going to the doctor's.

Basil: (1)..... ?

Ali : I don't feel well these days. I have always got a headache. I never feel fresh.

Basil: Do you take exercise or have a good weekend?

Ali : No, I don't. You know I am busy in my new job.

Basil: That's why you don't feel well.

Ali : (2)..... ?

Basil: A person who works all the day and does not do exercise can fall ill.

Ali : You may be right. What should I do then?

Basil: (3)..... .

Ali : Quality time! What do you mean?

Basil: (4)..... .

Ali : That's right. My family always complains that I am away working.

Basil: I'm sure you won't need a doctor if you do this.

Ali : Thanks for your advice.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is marvelous about the human body organs?

2. What would happen if there were more than one creator?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The amazing ..... of the universe is a certain proof of the Oneness of the Creator.

a) balance b) chaos c) things d) trees

4. The right path to arrive at our destination is the correct ..... of Allah.

a) knowledge b) ambition c) ignorance d) expectation

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Scientists are doing a lot of research to protect the world from diseases.

(B) Translate into English:

- إن استصلاح الصحراء وتحويلها لأراضٍ زراعية ضرورة لتحقيق الاكتفاء الغذائى.

Unit 1 General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Roads, electricity, and water systems are all part of a country's ..... which should be maintained and regularly developed.
   a) integration b) infrastructure c) collaboration d) provision
2. Good teamwork depends on the ..... of new ideas into the project.
   a) intention b) efficiency c) partnership d) integration
3. Trust grows inside the family when there is ..... understanding between its members.
   a) mutual b) highlighted c) separate d) individual
4. Parents give their children love and care, and..... return, they hope for respect and gratitude.
   a) as b) of c) in d) with
5. Teachers often use technology to ..... students' learning experience and love for school.
   a) enhance b) finance c) remind d) inspect
6. Success in science often comes from close ..... between researchers inside or outside the country.
   a) access b) collaboration c) enterprise d) experiment
7. The company plans to establish a new branch in Cairo next year. The antonym of the verb "establish" is ..... .
   a) demolish b) supply c) collaborate d) set up
8. I can't talk to you now. We ..... dinner with guests.
   a) are having b) have c) had d) will have
9. The mechanic ..... the car engine at the moment.
   a) fix b) is being fixed c) is fixing d) was fixing
10. Listen! Someone ..... the violin beautifully.
    a) plays b) played c) is playing d) has played
11. Look at the sky! The clouds ..... darker and darker.
    a) is becoming b) are being become c) are becoming d) was becoming
12. She ..... a dentist tomorrow at 10 a.m.
    a) is seeing b) see c) sees d) seen
13. We ..... a big party next Friday evening.
    a) are have b) have c) are having d) had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Don't eat just before going to bed!" My mother used to tell me. "You might have a nightmare." I never believed her until it happened to me. It was on a night when I felt hungry just as I was about to go to bed. So, I made myself a peanut butter sandwich and a large, cold glass of milk. After consuming them, I went to bed.

Soon I drifted off into a troubled sleep. I dreamt that I was with a group of people looking for an old woman. I was not sure why we were looking for her, but we all seemed to be afraid of her. Somehow, we had to find her. So there I was, searching high and low for her in frightful places I had never been before.

Sometimes, I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move. The whole atmosphere was like a dreadful horror movie.

After some searching, I entered a dark room and saw a figure sleeping on a bed. As I got nearer, the figure suddenly threw away the blanket, got up and stared at me. It was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She raised her claw-like fingers and walked towards me.

I wanted to run but was unable to do so. I tried to scream, but found that I could not. In horror, I struggled and struggled to get away from the frightful woman.

The next moment, I gave a muffled yell and found myself panting on my bed. My goodness, what a horrible nightmare it was! For a minute or so I lay on my bed not daring to close my eyes for fear of falling asleep again and continuing the nightmare. From then on, I never ate just before going to sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. The writer's mother warned him not to ..... .

a) eat before going to sleep
b) go with a group of people anywhere
c) search for the old woman
d) scream on facing dangers

15. The result of a peanut butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk was a/an ..... .

a) high bill
b) nightmare
c) attack from an old woman
d) mother's anger from her son

16. The synonym of the word "muffled" is a "..... ".

a) loud speech
b) loud voice
c) very pure sound
d) quiet and less clear sound

17. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) Nightmares
b) Mothers' experiences
c) Much eating and good sleep
d) An adventure during the night

18. The boy was looking for the old woman although ..... .

a) she was cute
b) she was scared
c) he was afraid of her
d) he couldn't know her place

19. According to the passage, the nightmare ..... .

a) happens when people are awake
b) is a bad scary dream
c) refers to real life
d) happens to hungry people

20. The boy didn't want to close his eyes ..... .

a) because he was tired
b) so that he could see the rest of the nightmare
c) because they were sore
d) because he fears that he might see the nightmare again

21. The writer decided that he ..... .

a) would never eat just before sleeping
b) wouldn't listen to his mom's words
c) would do sports before sleeping
d) wouldn't talk to old women anymore

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So, we should all realize its importance and try to make the best use of it.

a) يجب أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول صنع الأفضل منه.

b) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

c) إذا تم استخدام وقت الفراغ لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا يمكن أن يكون مفيدًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول توفير الكثير منه.

d) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتغيير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا، ويمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء، فضلًا عن كونها تُثري ثقافتك.

a) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it keeps your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels, and help you relax, as well as enriching your culture.

b) Reading is a very reflective hobby because it stimulates your brain. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as increasing your culture.

c) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a clearing effect, can lower stress stages, and help you relax, as well as enriching your culture.

d) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels, and help you relax, as well as enriching your culture.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around The World In Eighty Days)

1. If you were Passepartout, would you accept the job? Why or why not?
2. What lesson can we learn from the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout?
3. How would you feel living in a house with no decorations, only clocks?

25. Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 2
Startups & Young Entrepreneurs

Learning Outcomes

Reading - Skim a text to identify the main idea, scan a text to find specific information, distinguish between facts and opinions, infer the meaning of unfamiliar words using context clues.

Listening - Extract specific details like the problem, solution, and funding needed from audio pitches from entrepreneurs.

Speaking - Participate in a role-play as an entrepreneur pitching an idea to an investor, use modal verbs of necessity or prohibition to give advice, discuss the advantages and disadvantages young entrepreneurs face.

Writing - Analyze a model business email to identify its key structural parts, prepare to write a formal business email of your own.

Language - Use the past perfect to talk about an action that happened before another action in the past.
- Use the past perfect passive to talk about things that happened before another action in the past when the agent is in an unimportant or unknown action.

Study... Part 1

Lesson 1: Inspiring Entrepreneurs
Lesson 2: Startup Pitch Competition

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

assist (v) (ed) يساعد	foundation (n) مؤسسة/أساس	mobilization (n) تعبئة
capital (n) رأس المال/عاصمة	founder (n) مؤسس	pitch (n) (v) (ed) فكرة مشروع/ يعرض فكرة لإقناع الآخرين
commitment (n) التزام	independence (n) استقلال	rental (n) تأجير/إيجار
competition (n) مسابقة/منافسة	inspire (v) (d) يلهم	
entrepreneurs (n) رواد أعمال	institution (n) مؤسسة/ معهد	tutor (n) (v) (ed) مدرس خاص/درس خصوصى/يعلم
evolve (v) (d) يتطور/يتقدم	inventory (n) جرد(قائمة بمحتويات مكان)	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

address (v) (ed) (n) يخاطب/عنوان	eco-friendly (adj) صديق للبيئة	nevertheless (adv) بالرغم من ذلك
advantages (n) مزايا	expert (n) خبير	resources (n) موارد
approach (n) نهج/طريقة	fashion (n) موضة	scene (n) مشهد
aviation (n) الطيران	filmmaking (n) صناعة الأفلام	secure (v) (d) يُؤَمِّن
challenge (v) (d) يتحدى/تحدٍّ	financial (adj) مادى	setback (n) إخفاق/نكسة
convince (v) (d) يقنع	fitness (n) لياقة	significant (adj) بارز
countless (adj) لا يعد	homeland (n) الوطن	social (adj) اجتماعى (تصف الأشياء)
cost (v) (n) يتكلف/تكلفة	identify (v) (~~y~~ ied) يحدد/يتعرف على	startup (n) شركة ناشئة (فى بدايتها)
create (v) (d) يخلق/يبدع	impact (n) (v) (ed) تأثير/يؤثر	target (n) (v) (d) هدف/يستهدف
culture (n) ثقافة	include (v) (d) يتضمن	task (n) مهمة
dedicate (v) (d) تكريس/يكرس	industry (n) صناعة	ton (n) طن
discourage (v) (d) يمنع/لا يشجع	invest (v) (ed) يستثمر	traditional (adj) تقليدى
dominate (v) (d) يهيمن/يسود	launch (v) (ed) يطلق	unique (adj) متفرد/متميز
dramatically (adv) بشكل كبير	marketing (n) التسوق	untiring (adj) لا يكل/بلا كلل

various (adj)	متنوع	establish (v) (ed)	يؤسس	resilience (n)	صمود
economic (adj)	اقتصادى	partners (n)	شركاء	vision (n)	رؤية
effort (n)	مجهود	platform (n)	منصة	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
enterprises (n)	شركات/مشاريع	require (v) (d)	يتطلب		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My grandfather is the original ..... of the local school in our area.
   a) seller b) founder c) foundation d) address
2. The professor's story ..... her students to follow their dreams successfully.
   a) chose b) prevented c) inspired d) dedicated
3. There is a good car ..... service near my house. I usually deal with them.
   a) rental b) clinic c) fitness d) effort
4. To start a business, you need enough ..... to cover its costs.
   a) energy b) effort c) pitch d) capital
5. Tourism plays an important ..... role in Egypt. It increases our income.
   a) economic b) social c) cultural d) traditional
6. Scientists work hard to ..... good solutions to our global problems.
   a) ignore b) describe c) create d) challenge
7. Those who want to succeed must have a clear ..... for the future.
   a) service b) vision c) fashion d) capital
8. When a company gets bigger, it plans to ..... the market by taking over other small startups.
   a) face b) guarantee c) invest d) dominate

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

take risks يجازف/يخاطر	make your own choices يصنع اختياراته بنفسه	peer-to-peer platform منصة تفاعلية بين الأشخاص (الطلاب)
wholly Egyptian bank بنك مصرى بالكامل	give a talk/speech يلقى حديثًا	think outside the box يفكر خارج الصندوق (تفكير غير معتاد)
at the age of فى سن	struggle with يكافح مع	food waste بقايا الطعام
contribute to يساهم فى	work with يعمل مع	expert in/on/at خبير فى
connected to متصلة بـ	dream of يحلم بـ/يتمنى	learn from يتعلم من
prepare for يعد لـ	rely on يعتمد على	lie in يكمن فى
have access to لديه تصريح لـ	for sale للبيع	aim to يهدف إلى

Special Collocations

face challenges	يواجه تحديات	solve problems	يحل المشكلات
take risks	يجازف/يخاطر	build a foundation	يبنى مؤسسة
achieve a vision	يحقق نجاحًا	guarantee success	يضمن النجاح
invest money	يستثمر المال		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
found	يؤسس	foundation founder	أساس مؤسس	foundational	أساسى
commit	يلتزم	commitment	التزام	committed	ملتزم
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	assisting	مساعد/مُعين
inspire	يُلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring inspired	ملهم مُلهَم
depend	يعتمد	dependant dependence	تابع/معول اعتماد/اتكال	dependable	يمكن الاعتماد عليه
rent	يؤجّر	rental	إيجار	rentable	متاح/مناسب للإيجار
invest	يستثمر	investment	استثمار	invested	مستثمر فيه
economize	يوفّر اقتصاديًا	economy economics	الاقتصاد علم الاقتصاد	economic economical	اقتصادى موفر
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدٍّ	challenging	صعب
dominate	يهيمن	domination/dominance	هيمنة	dominant	مهيمن
finance	يموّل	finance	تمويل	financial	مالى
create	يخلق/يُبدع	creation creator	خَلق/إبداع الخالق/مُنشِئ/مُبدِع	creative	مبدع
vary	يتنوع	variety	مجموعة متنوعة	various	متنوع

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Big companies often dominate the market. (v)
The company's domination of the tech industry became a success. (n)
English is the dominant language in many countries. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
mobilization حشد/تعبئة	deployment/activation	demobilization/inaction تسريح/تفكيك/خمول
inspire يُلهم	motivate/encourage	discourage/depress يُثبّط/يحبط
assist يساعد	help/support	hinder/obstruct يعيق/يمنع
commitment التزام	dedication/responsibility	negligence/indifference إهمال/لا مبالاة
independence استقلال	freedom/autonomy	dependence/reliance اعتماد/تبعية
evolve يتطور	develop/grow	regress/decline يتراجع/ينحدر
dominate يهيمن	control/rule	obey/follow يطيع/يتبع
unique فريد	special/exceptional	common/ordinary شائع/عادى
advantages مزايا	benefits/pros	disadvantages/cons عيوب/سلبيات
setback نكسة	obstacle/difficulty	progress/success تقدم/نجاح
resilience مرونة/صمود	toughness/endurance	weakness/fragility ضعف/هشاشة
dedicate يكرّس	devote/commit	neglect/ignore يهمل/يتجاهل
convince يُقنع	persuade/assure	dissuade/confuse يُثنى/يُربك
various متنوع	diverse/different	similar/same مشابه/نفسه

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students in the university ..... access to free Wi-Fi.
a) have b) rely c) do d) look

2. He said that his house is ..... sale. Are you interested in buying it?
a) about b) at c) for d) in

3. We shouldn't rely ..... others to finish our work.
a) at b) on c) with d) into

4. Before you ..... money, you must understand all the risks.
a) convince b) save c) inspire d) invest

5. The final exam was more ..... than all the students expected.
a) challenge b) challenging c) challenger d) changing

6. One of the main advantages of online learning is flexibility. The opposite of the word "advantages" is ..... .
   a) merits b) cons c) pros d) effects
7. Nurses are trained to assist doctors during operations. The synonym of the word "assist" is ..... .
   a) ignore b) hinder c) support d) replace
8. My business quickly evolved and I expanded it into the international market. The synonym of the word "evolved" is ..... .
   a) developed b) evaporated c) declined d) built

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Inspiring Entrepreneurs

At just 20 years old, Talaat Harb launched Bank Misr, a bank created with completely Egyptian capital, during a time when foreign institutions dominated the financial scene. His story inspires countless people to achieve economic independence and contribute to national development. But what does it really take to build a successful national institution at a young age?

Young founders of national enterprises face unique challenges. However, they have significant advantages. They are deeply connected to their homeland, understanding its needs and culture well. They are also not afraid to take risks to achieve a greater national vision.

Talat Harb is an example of how a young entrepreneur could establish a wholly Egyptian bank at the age of 20. He could convince more than 120 Egyptians to invest in the project and secure the necessary capital. He then worked with his team to use Egyptian capital to support various industries, including shipping, aviation, and filmmaking.

The business scene has evolved dramatically. Young entrepreneurs today have access to resources their ancestors couldn't dream of. However, building a national enterprise like Bank Misr required a different kind of effort, relying on community mobilization and untiring commitment.

Nevertheless, success is not guaranteed. Young entrepreneurs must develop resilience and learn from setbacks quickly. They need to prove their ideas and build a strong foundation before investing too much time or money.

The key to success lies in solving real problems. Successful founders of national enterprises don't just create businesses they think are cool—they identify real social needs and address them. They also understand that building a team is vital. No one can do everything alone, especially when building a national institution.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Talaat Harb's story is inspiring to ..... people to achieve national development.
   a) limited b) many
   c) few d) little
2. Talaat Harb overcame ..... by relying on Egyptian support.
   a) lack of technology b) foreign financial dominance
   c) family support d) language barriers
3. According to the passage, ... motivates young founders to take risks.
   a) desire for personal fame b) pressure from family
   c) guaranteed financial returns d) a greater national vision

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Welcome to today's pitch competition. We have three young entrepreneurs presenting their ideas. Let's start with Monir Magdy.

Monir Magdy: Food Saver AI

Hi, I am Monir Magdy. Restaurants waste tons of food every day, and this costs them money. My solution is Food Saver AI, a smart inventory system that tells restaurants exactly how much food they need. It uses AI to predict demand and can reduce food waste by 40%. We need $75,000 to expand to 100 restaurants. Thank you.

Mona Eid: Study Buddy

I'm Mona Eid. Many students are struggling with math and science subjects and can't afford tutoring. Study Buddy is a peer-to-peer learning platform where students assist one another. We use games to make learning fun. Students earn points for teaching and learning. Our target market is high school students aged 12 to 18. We need $50,000 to launch our mobile app. We have to think outside the box in education, and that's what we do.

Hisham Mustafa: Green Style

Hello, I'm Hisham Mustafa. Fast fashion is destroying our environment. People buy clothes, wear them once, then throw them away. Green Style is a clothing rental service for young adults. Instead of buying fast fashion, customers can rent trendy clothes for special events. Our unique selling point is our style algorithm that suggests perfect outfits. We have 200 customers already and need $100,000 to expand to three cities. Thank you all. These entrepreneurs really know how to think outside the box.

Definitions التعريفات

institutions	مؤسسات	organizations or important establishments (like banks, schools, or hospitals) that serve a public purpose
inspire	يلهم	to make someone feel that they want to do something and can do it
independence	استقلال	being free to make your own choices and not relying on others
founder	مؤسس	a person who starts or creates a business, organization, or company
evolve	يطور/ينمى	to change and develop over time
mobilization	تعبئة	the act of preparing for active service or use
commitment	إلزام/التزام	staying dedicated and working hard to achieve something, even when it's difficult
competition	منافسة	trying to win against others
inventory	جرد	a list or count of all the goods, items, or products a business has for sale
tutoring	الدروس الخصوصية	helping someone learn one-on-one
assist	يساعد	to help or give support to someone with a task
pitching	عرض فكرة لإقناع الآخرين	giving a short, persuasive talk for investors, partners, or customers
rental	تأجير	paying to use something for a short time

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

economic اقتصادى (متعلق بالاقتصاد والتجارة)
Egypt aims to achieve economic growth.

economical اقتصادى (موفر/رخيص)
A small car is more economical and saves fuel.

2

approach نهج أو أسلوب للتعامل مع موقف أو مشكلة
We need a new approach to solve this problem.

method طريقة منظمة أو علمية تستخدم فى العلوم، التعليم، أو الخطوات المحددة لحل شىء
This is the best method for learning new vocabulary.

3	require	يتطلب/يحتاج إلى	This job requires experience.
	acquire	يكتسب/يحصل على	You can acquire a new language by practicing.
	inquire	يستفسر/يسأل	The customer wants to inquire about the price.
4	find	فعل مضارع بمعنى يجد	We can find a lot of information on the internet.
	found	وجد (الماضى من find)	She found a ring on the ground yesterday.
	found (founded ماضى)	بمعنى يؤسس	My father founded a new company in 2010.
5	at the age of = aged	فى عمر/سن	- Mohammed started playing football at the age of 7. = aged 7 - A girl aged 12 is the winner of the competition.
	in the age of	فى عصر/زمن	We live in the age of technology.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This course will help you ..... the skills needed for the job.
a) require b) inquire c) acquire d) desire

2. Omnia ..... her lost cat after two days.
a) found b) founded c) was fond d) find

3. My daughter became a tourist guide ..... 20.
a) in the age of b) at the age of
c) aging d) age

4. With only a few ..... materials, you can make handmade accessories.
a) economic b) economical
c) founded d) countless

5. A/An ..... refers to a detailed list of all items in stock or in possession, usually in a store or warehouse.
a) mobilization b) inventory
c) investment d) registration

6. ..... is to bring people or resources together for a common goal.
a) Classification b) Investment
c) Inventory d) Mobilization

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Some famous successful ..... started their large businesses with very little money.
   a) volunteers b) entrepreneurs c) industries d) travelers
2. We need to rely on our local products to achieve economic ..... .
   a) independence b) dependence c) knowledge d) rental
3. The school students joined a math ..... and could take first place.
   a) foundation b) game c) competition d) camp
4. Private ..... is useful for students who have difficulties with some subjects.
   a) mobilizing b) tutoring c) reading d) solving
5. That school is supported by a well-known ..... that funds educational projects.
   a) competitor b) aviation c) foundation d) government
6. The entrepreneur spent hours trying to ..... his idea clearly to the investors.
   a) fix b) pitch c) assist d) collect
7. Banks are financial ..... that help small businesses grow.
   a) services b) markets c) fashions d) institutions
8. The fresh graduate's ..... to his job impressed everyone in the company.
   a) resource b) commitment c) foundation d) tradition
9. The police arrived quickly at the ..... of the crime.
   a) task b) homeland c) scene d) competition
10. The singer's voice is so ..... that we can recognize it easily.
    a) traditional b) unique c) social d) ordinary
11. Winning this award is a/an ..... moment in my daughter's career.
    a) challenging b) untiring c) significant d) early
12. Good speakers know how to ..... listeners with strong arguments.
    a) establish b) convince c) confuse d) invest
13. Mai dreams of working in the field of ..... as a flight-attendant.
    a) filmmaking b) aviation c) finance d) communication
14. Many young entrepreneurs launch ..... with innovative ideas to achieve their dreams.
    a) planes b) startups c) factories d) approaches
15. The doctor's ..... passion for helping others motivated everyone to be helpful.
    a) untiring b) sudden c) quiet d) silent
16. The government offers financial support to new ..... in rural areas.
    a) volunteers b) advantages c) tools d) enterprises
17. The company is about to ..... a new product next month.
    a) cancel b) address c) launch d) stop
18. Every success story might include some failures الفشل or ..... which strengthen our determination.
    a) setbacks b) startups c) merits d) gains

19. We need ..... energy sources like wind and solar power.
a) powerful b) expensive c) sustainable d) limited

20. The hospital depends on ..... to assist with non-medical tasks.
a) nurses b) visitors c) founders d) volunteers

21. My mother gave me some good ..... advice on saving money.
a) industrial b) cultural c) social d) financial

22. The factory was fined for its negative environmental ..... on the local environment.
a) tutor b) cost c) plan d) impact

23. Her ..... helped her recover from failure quickly.
a) weakness b) resilience c) security d) success

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

24. Creative people always think ..... the box when they face challenges or difficulties.
a) outside b) inside c) around d) above

25. It's important for teenagers to ..... their own choices to become independent adults.
a) copy b) make c) ignore d) do

26. Social media allows people to stay ..... friends and family worldwide.
a) used to b) connected to c) isolated from d) separated from

27. Students must prepare themselves ..... their exams by studying regularly.
a) about b) of c) against d) for

28. The principal's speech was very ..... and motivated all students to work harder.
a) inspiring b) inspiration c) inspired d) inspire

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

29. She dedicates her life to helping poor children. The antonyms of the word "dedicates" are ..... .
a) devotes b) assists c) delays d) neglects e) ignores

30. This painting has a unique beauty that attracts many visitors. The word "unique" gives the same meaning as ..... .
a) common b) special c) alone d) ordinary e) exceptional

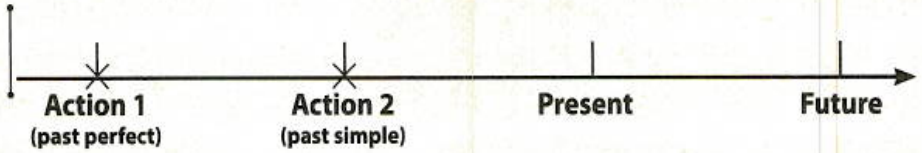
31. She has various hobbies, including painting and hiking. The opposites of the word "various" are ..... .
a) similar b) boring c) amazing d) limited e) same

32. Every entrepreneur faces some setbacks before reaching success. The synonyms of the word "setbacks" are ..... .
a) disagreements b) progresses c) obstacles d) advantages e) difficulties

33. Talaat Harb could convince more than 120 Egyptians to invest in the project. The synonyms of the word "convince" are ..... .
a) persuade b) confuse c) dissuade d) assure e) trust

B Language

Past perfect — الماضى التام



FORM التكوين

Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

- Subj. فاعل + had + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- By yesterday, I had read 5 stories.

Negative الجملة المنفية

- Subj. فاعل + hadn't + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.

Question الاستفهام

- Had + subj. فاعل + P.P. التصريف الثالث?
  Had Osama bought the tickets by yesterday?
- Wh- question + had + subj. فاعل + P.P.?
  What had she done before going out?

Passive المبنى للمجهول

- Obj. مفعول + had been + P.P. التصريف الثالث
- By the time I reached the movie theater, all the tickets had been sold.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى: الحدث الأول تام والثانى بسيط.

I showed my mother what I had bought from the market.
He admitted that he had lied to his father more than once.

2 For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى.

There was glass on the floor as Osama had broken the window.

3 For duration before something in the past (with state verbs).

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا لفترة فى الماضى قبل حدث آخر، مع الأفعال التى لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار.

I had had the bike for ten years before I bought a car.
By the time I got used to life in Cairo, I had been there for five years.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

يُستخدم الماضى التام مع التعبيرات الآتية:

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as.

1 After / As soon as + Past perfect (ماضٍ تام) + Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط)

After I had looked both ways, I crossed the street.

2 Before / By the time + Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) + Past perfect (ماضٍ تام)

Before I crossed the street, I had looked both ways.

3 ماضٍ بسيط منفى Negative past simple , till / until , ماضٍ تام Past perfect

- مع ملاحظة أن الماضى البسيط المنفى له عدة أشكال:

- didn't + inf. — ماضٍ بسيط منفى مبنى للمعلوم
- wasn't/weren't + P.P. — ماضٍ بسيط منفى فى المبنى للمجهول
- couldn't + inf. — (عدم استطاعة) فى الماضى
- refused - denied - … — كلمة تعطى معنى النفى

• My son didn't buy the phone until he had taken the money.

4 After / Before + n./(v. ing) + ماضٍ بسيط / ماضٍ تام

إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم (v. ing) ويكون فاعل الجملة الثانية هو الفاعل المحذوف فى الجملة الأولى.

After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished, ...
Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped, ...

5

لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الآتية:

When + Past simple, Past perfect

When I reached the station, the train had left. — غادر القطار قبل وصولى (لم ألحق به)

When + Past simple, Past simple

When I reached the station, the train left. — غادر القطار عند وصولى (ربما لحقته أو رأيته)

When + Past perfect, Past simple

When I had reached the station, the train left. — وصلت المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقته)

6 After / Before / As soon as / When + Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) + Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) — إذا لم يكن هناك فارق زمنى بين الأحداث

When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. As soon as I ..... a story, I started the next one.
   a) 'd finished b) finish
   c) have finished d) was finishing
2. We missed the bus because we ..... to set the alarm.
   a) forgotten b) forget
   c) had forgotten d) have forgotten
3. When I ..... the station, the train left. I caught it.
   a) have reached b) had reached
   c) reach d) was reaching
4. When I reached home, father wasn't there. He ..... out.
   a) has gone b) went c) goes d) had gone
5. He kept looking at her, wondering where he ..... her before.
   a) had seen b) would see c) was seeing d) has seen

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. By the time the conference started, all the guest speakers have arrived. (.....)
2. She was exhausted because she has done lots of work alone. (.....)
3. He couldn't remember where he park his car the night before. (.....)
4. After she has finished her degree, she applied for a job abroad. (.....)
5. The team celebrated because they had been won the championship. (.....)

لاحظ

1 إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين فى الجملة يجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماضيًا تامًّا، والأحداث الباقية إما ماضيًا بسيطًا وإما مستمرًّا حسب المعنى.

As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realized that I had met him before.

- لم نضع الماضى التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول، لكن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة).

After he got to the station, he realized that he had left the train ticket at home.

- لم نضع الماضى التام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول، لكن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة فى المنزل).

I was shopping with my friend when I realized that I had lost my wallet.

- الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

2 يستخدم الماضى التام مع أفعال مثل think/say/know/realize عند استخدامها فى الماضى للحديث عن اعتقادات ومحادثات ومعرفة وإدراك لشىء سابق.

I thought I had finished my homework, but I realized I had forgotten the last page.
I knew where I had put the keys.

3 يجب ملاحظة المبنى للمجهول جيدًا إذا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول، وهنا نستخدم had been + P.P. للماضى التام و was/were + P.P. للماضى البسيط.

After the food had been cooked, it was eaten.
Before the email was sent, it had been written.

4 يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد after/before/until وليس جملة كاملة.

My friends visited me after lunch yesterday.
Before the war, the two countries had threatened each other.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I ..... in the essay until I had completed it.
   a) have handed b) didn't hand
   c) handed d) had handed
2. We ordered our food after we ..... the menu.
   a) reading b) had read c) read d) were reading
3. I couldn't buy the new phone until the money ..... .
   a) had been saved b) saved
   c) had saved d) has been saved
4. The prisoner ..... free until he had returned the stolen things.
   a) didn't set b) doesn't set c) won't set d) wasn't set
5. When I ..... the news, I couldn't believe it.
   a) will hear b) hear c) heard d) was hearing

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The software update was successful only after the engineer fixed the critical bug. (had)
   .....
2. I reached home, then I had my lunch. (After)
   .....
3. Before I saw the movie, I had read the novel. (till)
   .....
4. The film started. We arrived at the movie theater later. (before)
   .....
5. She didn't know the answer because she didn't read the lesson. (until)
   .....

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. By the time the investor arrived, the team ..... their final pitch.
a) had prepared b) have prepared c) prepared d) were preparing

2. Mona realized she ..... the wrong file as soon as she opened the email.
a) has sent b) sent c) had sent d) was sending

3. He couldn't log in because he ..... his password.
a) has forgotten b) had been forgotten c) had forgotten d) was forgetting

4. I ..... the report when I discovered the error.
a) have already finished b) had already finished
c) already finished d) was already finishing

5. She didn't rest until she ..... all her goals for the day.
a) has achieved b) achieved c) had achieved d) was achieving

6. Mazen apologized because he ..... our meeting.
a) has missed b) missed c) had missed d) was missing

7. When the manager asked for the data, the intern متدرب ..... it already.
a) has collected b) collected c) had collected d) was collecting

8. She was excited to visit the company she ..... since she was young.
a) has admired b) admired c) had admired d) was admiring

9. Tamer ..... all his exams before he traveled abroad.
a) passes b) had passed c) has passed d) had been passed

10. The student felt that he ..... it wrong.
a) has made b) makes c) was made d) had made

11. The weather was worse last year than I ..... it to be.
a) expect b) have expected c) had expected d) was expected

12. I ..... my homework when my mother came.
a) already did b) had already done
c) have already done d) already do

13. When I counted my change الباقى, I realized they ..... me 100 pounds.
a) had given b) gave c) have given d) had been given

14. The tourist ..... a camel before he came to Siwa.
a) has never ridden b) did never ride
c) had never ridden d) will never ride

15. It was the first time she ..... a prize.
a) had won b) has won c) is won d) would win

16. When we checked the website, we saw that our results ..... significantly.
a) had increased b) has increased c) increased d) was increasing

17. They waited patiently until the principal ..... speaking.
a) was finishing b) has finished c) had finished d) finishes

18. I was doing my homework when I realized that I ..... to study 2 pages.
a) had forgotten b) forgot c) was forgetting d) have forgotten

19. At first, I was very nervous, but after a while I ..... to feel more confident.
a) begin b) began c) have begun d) had begun

20. My father read the article which ..... about cloning.
a) had written b) written
c) had been written d) has been written

21. By the time Mariam was 26, she ..... married for three years.
a) has b) was being c) has been d) had been

22. Which one of the following is correctly structured?
a) As soon as Samy phoned me, I had visited him.
b) As soon as Samy had phoned me, I had visited him.
c) As soon as Samy phoned me, I visited him.
d) As soon as Samy phones me, I visited him.

23. Which one of the following isn't correctly structured?
a) When I reached home, my mother had cooked dinner.
b) When I had reached home, my mother cooked dinner.
c) When I reached home, my mother finished cooking dinner.
d) When I had reached home, my mother had cooked dinner.

24. Maher refused to lend me his camera until I ..... to return it on the same day.
a) had been promised b) had promised
c) promise d) have promised

25. Finally, I finished the task you ..... me to carry out.
a) had asked b) had been asked c) ask d) will ask

26. When I went to the service center, I was pleased to find that my car ..... well.
a) has been repairing b) was repairing
c) had repaired d) had been repaired

27. After the plane ..... off, I felt sad to leave my country.
a) is taking b) had been taken c) had taken d) has taken

28. After ..... this article, I summarized it.
a) has read b) had read c) read d) reading

29. He ..... to sit down until he had apologized.
a) doesn't allow b) didn't allow c) wasn't allowed d) hadn't allowed

2 Rewrite the following sentence using the word between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. By the time we arrived, the train had left already. (After)
2. She had finished the report before the meeting. (a meeting)
3. After they had eaten dinner, they went for a walk. (going)
4. Omar sent an email. Then, he realized his mistake. (By the time)
5. Before I went to the club I had done my homework. (doing)

Test Yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. To protect your account well, you must make sure your password is ..... .
   a) weak b) secure c) public d) simple
2. El-Mahalla is known for its many ....., especially textiles المنسوجات.
   a) industries b) farms c) schools d) parks
3. The company is facing ..... challenges this year. They owe much money to banks.
   a) physical b) financial c) emotional d) social
4. After many years abroad, Ahmed returned to his ..... to live with his family.
   a) homeland b) foundation c) occupation d) office
5. The opening ..... of the play was very dramatic.
   a) theme b) view c) scene d) effort
6. The festival was a great ..... event for the community to meet and celebrate.
   a) social b) physical c) financial d) mental
7. Each student has to finish their ..... before the deadline.
   a) enterprises b) visions c) meals d) tasks
8. We should care for our natural ..... and use them wisely.
   a) resources b) animals c) tools d) books
9. They checked the ..... before ordering new supplies or goods.
   a) inventory b) schedule c) invention d) contract
10. My ..... app tracks my physical health and recommends personalized exercise.
    a) hunger b) fitness c) sleep d) mood
11. She had to ..... with some financial problems after losing her job.
    a) ignore b) struggle c) avoid d) fight
12. Many young adults seek ..... when they move out of their parents' house.
    a) dependence b) independence c) control d) fear
13. Solar energy is considered a clean and ..... source of energy.
    a) eco-friendly b) dangerous c) limited d) finite
14. Don't let small ..... stop you from moving forward.
    a) efforts b) setbacks c) results d) signs
15. In the last decade, technology companies have come to dominate the global market. What does the word "dominate" most likely mean?
    a) To avoid. b) To control or have power over.
    c) To participate in. d) To support.

Language

16. I couldn't imagine what ..... to her.
a) had been happened b) has been happened
c) had happened d) has been happening

17. The criminal ..... until he had tried to leave the country.
a) arrested b) wasn't arrested
c) didn't arrest d) won't be arrested

18. We ..... the station before the train arrived.
a) had reached b) were reaching c) will reach d) reach

19. After the house ....., we furnished it.
a) is painted b) has painted
c) had painted d) had been painted

20. As soon as I ..... a space, I parked my car.
a) was finding b) find c) had found d) have found

21. After he had written the email, he ..... it to the manager.
a) has sent b) sent c) was sending d) was sent

22. As soon as the bell ....., the students left the classroom.
a) rang b) didn't ring c) rings d) was ringing

23. I applied for a job in a nearby bank ..... I graduated.
a) until b) while c) just d) as soon as

24. The facts ..... by the reporter before he wrote his report.
a) had checked b) had been checked
c) are checked d) are checking

25. By the time we got to the stadium, our team ..... two goals.
a) has scored b) were scoring c) had scored d) will score

26. After ..... school, Mahmoud worked in a restaurant for a year.
a) leaving b) had left c) being left d) leave

27. The team ..... in Asia before they quit and went back to Egypt.
a) were working b) are working c) have worked d) had worked

28. I didn't go with you to the movie theater because I ..... that movie.
a) already see b) have already seen
c) had already seen d) didn't see

29. The student decided not to make that mistake again after ..... by the teacher.
a) being punished b) punishing
c) had punished d) punished

30. When they ..... the theater, the play had already started.
a) reach b) reached c) had reached d) will reach

Study...

Part 2

Lesson 3: Past Tenses in Context
Lesson 4: Small Places, Big Impact!
Lesson 5: Business Email

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

boost (n) (v) (ed) تعزيز/دفعة/يعزز	investment (n) استثمار	pesticides (n) مبيدات حشرية/مقاوم للآفات
flax (n) نبات الكتان	notable (adj) مميز/هام/جدير بالذكر	portion (n) جزء/نسبة
heritage (n) تراث	organic (adj) عضوى/طبيعى/حيوى	processing (n) معالجة/تجهيز/تصنيع

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abroad (adv) بالخارج	enhance (v) (d) يعزز/يقوى	perfume (n) عطر
administration (n) إدارة	export (n) (v) (ed) تصدير/يصدر	population (n) تعداد السكان
agreement (n) موافقة/اتفاق	fibers (n) ألياف	preserve (v) (d) يحفظ
allow (v) (ed) يسمح	figs (n) التين	produce (v) (d) ينتج
amount (n) كمية/مقدار	governorate (n) محافظة	producer (n) منتج
attract (v) (ed) يجذب	graduate (v) (d) (n) يتخرج/خريج	products (n) منتجات
ban (v) (ned) (n) يمنع/يحظر/حظر	growth (n) نمو	project (n) مشروع
business management إدارة أعمال	harvest (v) (ed) (n) يحصد/حصاد	promote (v) (d) يُرقّى/يطور
collect (v) (ed) يجمع	house (v) (d) يؤوى/يوفر سكنًا	rainwater (n) مياه الأمطار
consumer (n) مستهلك	historically (adv) تاريخيًا	recycle (v) (d) يعيد تدوير...
container (n) حاوية	image (n) صورة	sign (v) (ed) (n) يوقع/علامة
crafts (n) الحرف اليدوية	increase (v) (d) (n) يزيد/زيادة	single-use (adj) يستخدم لمرة واحدة
crops (n) محاصيل	key (n) (adj) مفتاح/أساسى/رئيسى	source (n) مصدر
cultivation (n) زراعة	market (n) سوق	specialize (v) (d) يتخصص
date palms (n) أشجار النخيل	materials (n) مواد خام	specialty (n) تخصص
development (n) تنمية	medium (adj) متوسط	ton (n) طن
engage (v) (d) يشارك/ينخرط	mention (v) (ed) يذكر	tourism (n) السياحة
engineering (n) هندسة	painting (n) الرسم	village (n) قرية

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Healthy food and regular exercise can ..... your immune system جهاز المناعة.
   a) damage b) attract c) boost d) boast
2. Farmers use ..... to protect their crops from harmful insects.
   a) pesticides b) vitamins c) products d) weapons
3. Many people prefer ..... food because it's grown without chemicals.
   a) artificial b) organic c) canned d) notable
4. The government wants to ..... local tourism to support our economy.
   a) avoid b) reduce c) promote d) produce
5. Ali desires to ..... in software engineering because he's fond of computing.
   a) specialize b) apply c) change d) realize
6. Parents shouldn't ..... their children to go out late at night.
   a) ban b) make c) allow d) boost
7. The workers wake up early to ..... the figs from the trees in the morning.
   a) collect b) deliver c) mention d) sign
8. Mohammed will ..... from university next year with a degree in medicine.
   a) move b) apply c) study d) graduate

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a key source of مصدر أساسى لـ	a large portion of نسبة كبيرة من	flax-producing village قرية منتجة للكتان
recognized for معروف بـ	known for معروف بـ	turning thirty يتم الثلاثين من عمره
by the age of قبل سن	a graduate of خريج لـ	graduate in يتخرج فى (تخصص)
grown without مزروع بدون	notable for مميز بـ/معروف بـ	provide ... for يزود ... بـ
focus on يركز على	vital for حيوى/أساسى لـ	at home فى المنزل
increase in زيادة فى	set up يؤسس	harvest from يحصد من
specialize in يتخصص فى	export ... to يصدر ... إلى	turn into يتحول إلى
famous for مشهور بـ	part of جزء من	engage in يشارك فى
related to متصلة بـ	interested in مهتم بـ	graduate from يتخرج فى

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
process	يعالج/يُحَضِّر	processing processor	معالجة/تصنيع معالج (فى الأجهزة الإلكترونية)	processed	مُعالج/مُحَضَّر/مُصَنَّع
develop	يطوّر	development/developer	تطوير/مطور	developed developing	مطوَّر/متقدم نامٍ
grow	ينمو	growth	نمو	growing grown	نامٍ ناضج
populate	يسكن	population	تعداد السكان	populated	مأهول/مكتظ
contain	يحتوى	container	حاوية/وعاء	contained	مُحتوى
produce	يُنتِج	product/production producer	منتج/إنتاج منتج (شخص)	productive	منتِج/فعّال
specialize	يتخصّص	specialization/specialist	تخصص/إخصائى	specialized	متخصّص
govern	يحكم	governorate governor	محافظة محافظ	governmental	حكومى
graduate	يتخرج	graduate graduation	خريج تخرّج	graduated	متخرج
promote	يروّج/يعزز	promotion	ترويج/ترقية	promotional promoted	ترويجى مترقى
cultivate	يزرع	cultivation	زراعة	cultivated	مزروع
preserve	يحافظ على	preservation	حفظ/صيانة	preserved	محفوظ

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The king governs the kingdom with fairness. (v)
The governor visited the school to talk to the students. (n)
Cairo is the biggest governorate in Egypt. (n)
My uncle works in a governmental hospital. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
organic	عضوى	natural/chemical-free	طبيعى/خالٍ من المواد الكيميائية	artificial/synthetic	صناعى/مُصنّع
boost	يعزّز	increase/improve/enhance	يزيد/يحسّن	reduce/weaken	يقلّل/يُضعف

notable	بارز	remarkable/important رائع/مهم		ordinary/unknown	عادى/غير معروف
growth	نمو	increase/development زيادة/تطور		decline/shrinkage	تراجع/انكماش
export	يصدر	send/ship	يرسل/يشحن	import	يستورد
promote	يروّج	advertise/encourage يعلن/يشجع		block/discourage	يمنع/يثبّط
development	تطوير	progress/growth	تقدم/نمو	decline/regression	تراجع/تدهور
preserve	يحافظ	protect/maintain	يحمى/يحافظ	destroy/neglect	يدمّر/يهمل
attract	يجذب	draw/captivate	يجذب/يلفت	repel/turn away	يطرد/ينفّر
engage	يشارك	participate/involve يشارك/يشارك فى		ignore/avoid	يتجاهل/يتجنب

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Organic food is usually ..... chemicals or artificial pesticides.
a) grown without b) made with c) grown with d) taken from

2. The company plans to set ..... a new office in Luxor next year.
a) off b) away c) up d) down

3. In this meeting, we will focus ..... discussing the benefits of recycling.
a) at b) after c) away d) on

4. Cairo is considered one of the most ..... cities in Africa.
a) unpopulated b) populated c) population d) populate

5. Hana plans to study abroad after her ..... .
a) graduated b) graduate c) graduation d) graduates

6. The strong smell of garbage can sometimes attract insects. The opposite of "attract" is ..... .
a) invite b) pull c) repel d) involve

7. The government supports the development of new industries. Which of the following is a synonym for "development"?
a) destruction b) progress c) engagement d) top

8. The city is notable for its amazing landscapes. The synonym of the word "notable" is ..... .
a) meaningful b) key c) unknown d) remarkable

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Egypt aims to achieve economic growth by focusing on its villages, which are vital for development and investment. There are 4,740 villages in Egypt, housing about 57% of the population. Many villages have become known for their various industries and crafts, which have helped increase family incomes and provide jobs for young people.

The Egyptian government has introduced programs to support small and medium businesses in these areas, such as a program allowing factories to be set up at home. Some villages specialize in fishing, trade, and painting, while others export raw materials like perfumes to international markets.

The village of "Shubra Beloula" is notable for producing a large portion of the world's jasmine for perfumes, with around 4 tons of the flower harvested from there. Farmers collect jasmine flowers early in the morning and send them to factories for processing.

"Sidi Heneish" in Marsa Matrouh is famous for its organic figs, grown without pesticides and with rainwater. This village is part of a world project to promote clean crops for export.

In Aswan, "Baharif" is recognized for its date palms, producing around 300,000 trees, which are a key source of income. The villagers engage in various crafts related to palm cultivation.

"Shubra Mellas" in Gharbia Governorate is Egypt's largest flax-producing village, exporting to countries like China and Belgium. The flax plants provide income and are historically significant.

These villages contribute significantly to Egypt's economy by increasing exports and enhancing tourism, showing local industries and cultural heritage, thus improving Egypt's international image and preserving traditional craft.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. About..... of Egypt's population lives in villages.
a) 25% b) 45% c) 57% d) 75%

2. ..... produces a large amount of jasmine used in perfumes.
a) Sidi Heneish b) Baharif c) Shubra Mellas d) Shubra Beloula

3. Shubra Mellas produces ..... .
a) jasmine flowers b) dates c) flax d) fish

4. Village industries help young people by ..... .
a) making them move to cities
b) providing jobs and increasing income
c) closing local factories
d) reducing education opportunities development in Africa

Scan & listen

Listening Text

Omar Khalil, a young Egyptian entrepreneur, had always dreamed of creating his own business. By the age of 25, he had developed a small startup that focused on eco-friendly packaging. Before launching it, he had studied environmental engineering at Alexandria University, where he gained useful knowledge about sustainable materials.

By the time his first products reached the market, many single-use plastics had already been banned in some cities. Omar saw this as a chance. He explained that his team had designed boxes and cups from recycled fibers, and that local shops had welcomed the idea. Within a year, his products had been used in more than 50 cafes.

Before long, investors noticed his efforts. By the time they offered him funding, Omar had built strong partnerships with suppliers, and several agreements had already been signed. He felt proud because his vision had been recognized both in Egypt and abroad. Looking back, Omar said he could clearly see how much he had achieved before turning 30. He also believed that many lessons had been learned along the way, proving that success is built step by step.

Definitions

التعريفات

investment	استثمار	when you put money into something (like a business) to make more money later
boost	يعزز	to make something go higher, better, or stronger
notable	مميز/جدير بالذكر	something or someone important or easy to notice
organic	عضوى	grown naturally without chemicals or artificial materials
portion	نسبة/جزء	a part or piece of something
processing	معالجة/تجهيز/إعداد	changing or preparing something for use
heritage	تراث	the history, traditions, and culture passed from earlier generations
pesticides	مبيدات حشرية	chemicals used to kill insects or pests on plants
flax	الكتان	a plant used to make linen cloth and healthy seeds

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**boost**	يعزز/يدعم	Eating healthy food can boost your energy.
	boast	يتفاخر/يتباهى	Rami always boasts about his expensive car.
	post	منشور/ينشر	I will post the photos on Facebook.
2	**portion** جزء/نسبة (غالبًا من طعام أو شيء مقسوم على أشخاص)		He ate only a small portion of the cake.
	part	جزء من شيء أكبر	This chapter is the best part of the book.
	percentage	نسبة مئوية	Only 30% of the students passed the test — that's a low percentage.
3	**image** صورة/صورة ذهنية (الحاسوب - التصميم - المواقع)		The website took a long time to load the image.
	picture	رسم أو صورة فوتوغرافية	I drew a picture of my family in art class.
	photo	صورة بالكاميرا (فوتوغرافية)	She took a beautiful photo of the sunset.
4	**population** التعداد السكانى (إحصائيات وأرقام) تعامل معاملة المفرد		The population of Egypt is over 100 million.
	inhabitants السكان والأشخاص المقيمون فى المكان (جمع)		The inhabitants of the island are very friendly.
5	**house** مبنى نعيش فيه (سكن ومن الممكن ألا يكون ملكك)، ويمكن أن تأتى فعلًا بمعنى (يؤوى)		We bought a new house in the city. The island houses around 20 tribes.
	home وطن - مأوى (مكان تشعر فيه بالأمان والراحة والانتماء)		After a long day, I just want to go home and rest.

6	**notable**	مميز/جدير بالذكر	The village of "Shubra Beloula" is notable for producing Jasmine.
	noticeable	ملحوظ/سهل الملاحظة	It is noticeable that many of businesses have started online.
7	**crop**	محصول (نوع النبات المزروع)	Farmers are planting various crops this season.
	yield	محصول/إنتاج/غلة (الكمية أو الناتج، وليس نوع النبات)	The farm's wheat yield was higher this year.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... is a plant that can be used to make cloth and healthy oil.
a) Portion b) Flax
c) Heritage d) Investment

2. Farmers sometimes use ..... which are harmful to humans.
a) pesticides b) processing
c) perfumes d) fires

3. The teacher's kind words helped to ..... my confidence before the exam.
a) post b) boost
c) shout d) boast

4. A high ..... of the population lives in cities.
a) portion b) part
c) percentage d) number

5. The teacher asked us to draw a/an ..... of a tree for the class project.
a) picture b) photo
c) message d) impression

6. Egypt, our lovely ....., is a country of great history and brilliant future.
a) house b) home
c) hut d) cave

7. My manager's anger was ..... when he raised his voice suddenly.
a) notable b) noticeable
c) processed d) specialized

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Most people usually buy their everyday needs from the local ..... .
   a) field b) kitchen c) factory d) market
2. The government made a lot of ..... in education to improve our schools.
   a) investments b) experiments c) processing d) punishments
3. The actress gave a/an ..... performance that impressed everyone.
   a) organic b) polite c) notable d) boring
4. To achieve economic ....., the government attracted foreign investors.
   a) heritage b) growth c) change d) container
5. Our creative teacher tried to ..... us in the lesson by using games.
   a) engage b) ignore c) dedicate d) invest
6. The ..... of movies are those who decide how the movie is made and funded.
   a) writers b) directors c) actors d) producers
7. Museums help preserve the cultural ..... of a country for future generations.
   a) heritage b) economy c) development d) population
8. It is a must to check the ..... of your information before you share it.
   a) material b) source c) image d) topic
9. Egypt aims to ..... fruits and vegetables to other countries all over the world.
   a) export b) protect c) collect d) import
10. The farmer asked for many workers to ..... crops quickly.
    a) open b) sign c) harvest d) notice
11. The doctor told my mother to reduce the ..... of salt and fat in her food.
    a) size b) amount c) mount d) shape
12. Al-Adwaa always embraces change based on feedback from its ..... .
    a) producers b) consumers c) graduates d) patients
13. The school decided to ..... the use of cell phones. Students will leave them in the reception area.
    a) ban b) suggest c) attract d) provide
14. Some countries are working to replace ..... products with eco-friendly ones.
    a) reusable b) single-use c) natural d) fake
15. Murad is studying business ..... at university. He'd like to be an entrepreneur.
    a) administration b) doctor c) patient d) worker
16. The two rival companies signed a/an ..... to work together after much struggle.
    a) disagreement b) appointment c) agreement d) account

17. Some students hope to study ..... for better opportunities.
a) indoors b) abroad c) aboard d) alone

18. You must take this course as it will help you ..... your English skills.
a) hire b) remove c) forget d) enhance

19. His area of ..... is computer science, especially artificial intelligence.
a) generality b) specialty c) population d) portion

20. The factory is ..... the fruits before putting them into boxes.
a) boosting b) promoting c) exporting d) processing

21. The desert has very few ..... because of the hot weather.
a) cultures b) population c) inhabitants d) business

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22. Solar energy is becoming ..... of power in many countries.
a) a heavy need b) a key source c) a new form d) a hot area

23. Hana will graduate ..... the Faculty of Engineering next summer.
a) from b) for c) of d) in

24. Sleep is vital ..... both mind and body. We have to get enough of it.
a) at b) from c) in d) for

25. Many ..... countries need support in health and education.
a) developed b) development c) developing d) developmental

26. A ..... worker can help the company grow quickly.
a) produce b) productive c) production d) producer

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. Ola made a notable contribution to science. What are the best synonyms for "notable"?
a) unimportant b) unknown c) remarkable d) boring e) important

28. Our great ancestors succeeded in preserving their heritage. The antonyms of the word "preserve" are ..... .
a) protect b) sell c) involve d) destroy e) neglect

29. Egypt plans to export more fruits and vegetables to Europe. The synonyms of the word "export" are ..... .
a) import b) send c) plant d) locate e) ship

30. The teacher did his best to engage his students in the lesson. The antonyms of the word "engage" are ..... .
a) distrust b) participate c) involve d) avoid e) ignore

31. The mother asked her children to assist each other in cleaning the house. The closest meanings of the word "assist" are ..... .
a) hinder b) support c) abandon d) help e) strengthen

B Language

2 The past perfect passive — المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى التام

Form التكوين

- Object + had (not) been + P.P.

The reports had been revised well before sending them to the manager.

The plant hadn't been watered when I saw it in the morning.

Usage الاستخدام

Use the past perfect passive to talk about things that happened before another action in the past when the agent is unimportant or unknown.

يستخدم بناء المجهول فى الماضى التام للتحدث عن أن أشياء وقعت قبل أحداث أخرى فى الماضى عندما يكون الفاعل ليس مهمًا أو ليس معروفًا.

The car had been stolen before I met the delivery man.

Past perfect (Extra points) — الماضى التام

1

No sooner / Hardly / Scarcely + [لم يكد ..... حتى .....
had + subj. فاعل + P.P. التصريف الثالث
did + subj. فاعل + inf. المصدر
الماضى التام أو البسيط فى شكل سؤال] + than / when / when + Past simple ماضٍ بسيط

No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.

No sooner did Marwa find the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأتِ فى أول الكلام يكون الآتى:

Subject + had + no sooner / hardly / scarcely + P.P. + than / when / when + Past simple ماضٍ بسيط

Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

2

By + فترة فى الماضى + ماضٍ تام

By yesterday بحلول أمس, he had applied for the job.

3

Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect

Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit. = After I had booked, ...

وفى حالة المبنى للمجهول تكون كالتالى: Having been + P.P.

Having been booked, the tickets were a great surprise for my friends.

4

- It was only when إنه فقط عندما
- It wasn't until لم يكن حتى

ماضٍ بسيط + that + ماضٍ تام

It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.

5 Subject + only + Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) + when + Past perfect (ماضٍ تام)

I only solved the problem when my father had helped me.

Past perfect (other uses) — استخدامات أخرى للماضى التام

1 فى فعل شرط الحالة الثالثة من if

If our team had played well yesterday, they would have won the cup.

2 بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن الندم أو اللوم فى الماضى.

I wish I had studied harder last year.

3 بعد I'd rather فى حالة وجود فاعل بعدها لتعبر عن اللوم والندم فى الماضى.

I'd rather you hadn't done that. = I wish you hadn't done that.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tickets ..... before we reached the stadium.
   a) had booked b) booked c) were booking d) had been booked
2. Hardly ..... out of the car when fans surrounded her.
   a) has she stepped b) she had stepped
   c) had she stepped d) she stepped
3. No sooner had my father bought the computer ..... it broke down.
   a) when b) than c) that d) then
4. On ..... the old house, we were sure it would collapse.
   a) leaving b) left c) we had left d) we left
5. It wasn't until Ahmed had made the serious mistake that he ..... .
   a) punished b) had punished c) was punished d) had been punished

2 Rewrite the following sentence using the word between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The employee had revised the article before he printed it. (Having)
2. We had solved the problem by the time it got bigger. (No sooner)
3. I only got my degree when I had dedicated all my time to studying. (only when)
4. The team's luck changed when their star player scored a goal. (wasn't until)
5. Having collected the money, my father bought the car. (Hardly)

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The documents ..... before the deadline last week.
a) had been submitted b) have been submitted
c) were submitted d) had submitted

2. The conference room ..... months in advance.
a) had been booked b) has been booked
c) was booking d) had booked

3. On ..... the bad news, he fainted.
a) hearing b) had heard c) heard d) he had heard

4. Having ..... a lot of problems, he asked his uncle for help.
a) had had b) he had had c) have d) had

5. It wasn't until midnight that I ..... better and went to sleep.
a) had felt b) felt c) feeling d) was feeling

6. By the time the movie started, we ..... our seats.
a) had already found b) have already found
c) already find d) has already find

7. No sooner ..... his country than he had lots of problems.
a) he had left b) he left c) had he left d) was he leaving

8. He ..... the movie until he had booked the ticket.
a) had seen b) wasn't seen c) hadn't seen d) couldn't see

9. ..... typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager.
a) While b) Having c) When d) After

10. No sooner ..... he stepped on my foot than he apologized to me.
a) had b) did c) has d) was

11. ..... in a big city before you moved to Alexandria?
a) Have you worked b) Were you working
c) Had you worked d) Would you work

12. My cousin ..... to a big city before he visited Cairo.
a) never had been b) has never been c) won't be d) had never been

13. It was only when he ..... the instructions that he knew how to operate the machine.
a) was reading b) had read c) has read d) reads

14. The software ..... by the IT department before it was installed on our computers.
a) had tested b) had been tested c) has been tested d) was testing

15. The model ..... until the designer approved the final changes.
a) hadn't been produced b) hasn't been produced
c) wasn't produced d) hadn't produced

16. All the best seats ..... taken by the time we got to the movie theater.
a) had been b) have been c) were d) had

17. The news spread quickly after the decision ..... .
a) had been announced b) has been announced
c) was announced d) had announced

18. The package ..... by the time I arrived home.
a) had been delivered b) has been delivered
c) was delivered d) had delivered

19. After the parcel ....., I received it.
a) has arrived b) arrives c) had been arrived d) had arrived

20. ..... the money, my wife bought the kitchen machine.
a) Having saved b) Having been saved
c) After had saved d) No sooner had she saved

21. ..... we had booked the tickets that we took the train to Aswan.
a) No sooner b) Hardly
c) By the time d) It was only when

22. ..... my friend, I welcomed him.
a) By the time I met b) On meeting c) Having been met d) Had I met

23. Hardly had he made the mistake when he was dismissed. This means "....."
a) He was dismissed at first, then he made the mistake.
b) He didn't make the mistake, but he was dismissed.
c) He was dismissed as soon as he made the mistake.
d) He was dismissed before making the mistake.

24. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
a) By the time I came back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.
b) By the time I come back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.
c) By the time I had come back from my trip, a lot of things changed.
d) By the time I have come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.

25. ....., the factory became ready to produce high-quality cotton clothes.
a) Having constructed b) After constructing
c) Before constructing d) Having been constructed

26. Which of the following is structurally correct?
a) Having decorated, the house became quite ready for the wedding party.
b) When I reached the office, I realized that I had left my phone at home.
c) Did you understand the lesson that had explained again?
d) Before I go home, I had bought the things I need.

27. After the house ....., we furnished it.
a) had been painted b) has painted c) had painted d) is painted

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning:

1. I had prepared my notes properly before the presentation. (My notes..)
2. She said she had seen the movie before. (had been)
3. They left the office after they had finished all the tasks. (been)
4. By the time I contacted Rami, I had taken a taxi. (A taxi)
5. We were tired because we had played a hard match. (had been)

Test Yourself | Part 2 | Lessons 3, 4 & 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Crops with too many ..... can be harmful.
a) elements b) vitamins c) pesticides d) seeds

2. We should ..... paper and plastic to help the environment.
a) color b) repair c) recycle d) consume

3. We must ..... our cultural heritage for future generations.
a) preserve b) remove c) improve d) waste

4. The multinational company works hard to improve its public ..... .
a) picture b) image c) level d) photo

5. This place is ..... important for our culture. We must protect it.
a) history b) historically c) historical d) historic

6. We need to ..... the role of national companies to support our economy.
a) call b) tell c) boost d) speak

7. These flowers are brightly colored in order to ..... butterflies.
a) lose b) attract c) change d) encourage

8. The government is working on the ..... of new schools.
a) development b) crafts c) cultivation d) reduction

9. A healthy ..... of vegetables is good for you. It should be a daily routine.
a) part b) portion c) number d) side

10. Many farmers are switching to ..... farming methods to avoid using harmful chemicals.
a) useless b) organic c) common d) magic

11. The store sells many natural ..... like honey and herbs.
a) services b) products c) tools d) production

12. The scientist published an article related ..... climate change.
a) for b) to c) with d) from

13. After a great deal of time, the small idea turned ..... a big project.
a) into b) out c) off d) down

14. The plot of land has been under ..... for years. There are crops like rice and wheat.
a) structure b) cultivation c) construction d) treatment

15. Farmers collect the crops and send them to factories for ..... .
a) boosting b) providing c) importing d) processing

Language

16. We weren't allowed to take the plane because we ..... the tickets.
a) forget b) had forgotten c) have forgotten d) forgetting

17. The instructions ..... clearly, so everyone knew what to do.
a) had been explained b) have been explained
c) were explained d) had explained

18. I saw that most people ..... the party when I went there. I didn't see them.
a) leave b) left
c) have already left d) had already left

19. I didn't want to have lunch because I ..... with my friends at a restaurant.
a) have eaten b) had eaten c) was eating d) hadn't eaten

20. The children weren't allowed to watch TV because they ..... their homework.
a) had done b) haven't done c) must have done d) hadn't done

21. The contract ..... by both parties before the project started.
a) had been signed b) has been signed c) was signed d) had signed

22. The police had solved the problem before many people ..... the protest.
a) joined b) had joined c) joining d) have joined

23. They ..... all the doors before they left.
a) have locked b) will lock c) had been locking d) locked

24. The results ..... analyzed before the committee اللجنة meeting yesterday.
a) had been b) have been c) were d) had

25. Ramy was hungry because he ..... anything all day.
a) hasn't eaten b) wasn't eaten c) never eats d) hadn't eaten

26. After ..... in the company for ten years, he left it.
a) works b) worked c) had worked d) working

27. He was nervous because he ..... a presentation to such a large audience before.
a) has never given b) never gave
c) had never given d) was never giving

28. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) Having repaired, the car became ready for the trip.
b) Having been repaired, the car became ready for the trip.
c) Before the car had been repaired, it became ready for the trip.
d) The car isn't ready for the trip until it had been repaired.

29. Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?
a) Hardly had Osama applied for the job when he took it.
b) No sooner had Osama applied for the job when he took it.
c) No sooner had Osama applied for the job than he took it.
d) No sooner did Osama apply for the job than he took it.

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Writing a Business Email كتابة بريد إلكترونى خاص بالأعمال

- A **business email** is a formal message sent for professional purposes. It is used to communicate with colleagues, clients, or managers. It follows a specific, polite structure to ensure clarity and professionalism.

البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالعمل هو رسالة رسمية تُرسَل لأغراض مهنية. ويُستَخدم للتواصل مع الزملاء أو العملاء أو المديرين. وهو يتبع هيكلًا محددًا ومهذبًا لضمان الوضوح والاحترافية.

The structure and elements of a business email:

1. **Subject Line:** Write a short, clear reason for sending the email.
   اكتب عنوانًا واضحًا ومختصرًا لموضوع البريد الإلكترونى.
2. **Greeting:** Start with Dear Mr./Ms. [Last Name], ... ابدأ بتحية المرسل إليه بطريقة رسمية.
3. **Paragraph 1:** Introduce yourself and state your purpose. قدم نفسك ووضح الغرض من البريد الإلكترونى.
4. **Paragraph 2:** Give details or ask your specific questions. أعط تفاصيل أو اعرض أسئلتك المحددة.
5. **Paragraph 3:** Write a polite closing. اختم البريد الإلكترونى بطريقة مهذبة.
6. **Sign-Off:** End with: فى النهاية استخدم إحدى هذه العبارات.
   Yours sincerely, (if you used their name)
   Yours faithfully, (if you didn't know the name)
7. **Signature:** Type your full name, your school/class, and your email address.
   اكتب اسمك بالكامل وجهة عملك أو دراستك ومعلومات للتواصل معك.

MODEL BUSINESS EMAIL

Subject: Inquiry Regarding Summer Training Program
Dear Mr. Ahmed,

I hope this email finds you well. My name is Hassan, and I am a Grade 11 student at Gem school. I am writing to respectfully request further information about the summer training program advertised on the website.

I am particularly interested in learning more about the program's schedule, eligibility criteria, and any associated costs. Additionally, I would appreciate it if you could provide details regarding the application process and deadlines.

Thank you for your time and assistance. I look forward to your reply and the opportunity to participate in this valuable program.

Best regards,
[Hassan El Mohammady]
Grade 11 Student, Gem School
Hmohammady2010@student.com, +44 20 1234 5678

Practice

Skills Exercises

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Food plays an important role in every culture around the world. It is a way to share traditions, values, and even history. Each country has its own special dishes, often influenced by the geography, climate, and available ingredients in that region. For example, in Italy, pasta and pizza are part of the national identity. People in Italy take pride in their rich food history, and these dishes have become popular all over the world.

In Japan, sushi is a well-known and respected dish. It is made with rice, seafood, and sometimes vegetables. Indian cuisine, on the other hand, is famous for its heavy use of spices. The flavors are rich and complex, giving a taste of the country's diverse culture.

Mexico is known for its flavorful and exciting food, including tacos, burritos, and enchiladas. These dishes often come with various salsas, adding a spicy kick to every taste. The Middle East has its own set of favorite foods, including falafel, a deep-fried chickpea ball, and hummus, a smooth dip made from mashed chickpeas. Both are popular throughout the region and beyond.

In China, the key to their cooking is the perfect mix of sweet, salty, sour and spicy. Similarly, Thai food is known for using fresh ingredients. In France, food is treated as an art. The French are known for their cheeses and attractive pastries. Lastly, African food varies across the continent but often includes hearty stews, grilled meats, and grains.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Exploring food around the world helps people ..... .

a) try new flavors only
b) avoid traditional ingredients
c) focus on healthy eating
d) learn about cultures and traditions

2. The special dishes of each country are influenced by ..... .

a) geography, climate, and available ingredients
b) popular TV shows
c) the law of the government and political issues
d) modern technology

3. ..... dishes are closely tied to Italian cuisine.

a) Sushi
b) Noodles
c) Pizza
d) Tacos

4. Indian food is most famous for its ..... .

a) sweet desserts
b) spices
c) dairy products
d) fruits

5. Sushi is mainly made of ..... .

a) potatoes and meat
b) bread and cheese
c) lentils and beans
d) rice and seafood

6. Falafel is popular in ..... .

a) China
b) Egypt only
c) the Middle East
d) Italy

7. France is famous for its ..... .

a) cheeses and pastries
b) simple cooking techniques
c) fried foods
d) spicy curries

8. African dishes often include ..... .

a) sushi and noodles
b) stews, grilled meats, and grains
c) tacos and guacamole
d) cheese and bread

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El-Said caught her eye. Karima El-Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory.

She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots in the carpets.

The article shocked Nahla. Karima El-Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack. But she couldn't get Karima El-Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labor and exploitation. The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines, and factories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which one of the following isn't true?

a) Nahla is about 29 years now.
b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
c) Nahla and Karima are the same age.
d) Nahla was sorry for Karima.

2. This story shows that you ..... to help others.

a) don't have to be old
b) must be old
c) need to be courageous
d) have to be a student

3. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) How to help others
b) Children are more useful than adults
c) Children in plantations
d) Child employment and manipulation

4. The underlined word "plantations" means ..... .

a) shops
b) schools
c) farms
d) markets

5. Nahla knew about Karima El-Said's story when she ..... .

a) went to school
b) read the newspaper
c) met her teacher
d) met her personally

6. What was shocking about Karima's story?

a) She worked for long hours and had no education.
b) She worked with carpets.
c) She was from Siwa.
d) She had the ability to work for long hours.

7. Nahla cut the article out of the page to ..... .

a) stick it on the wall
b) take part in a competition
c) read it several times
d) put it in the library

8. Karima couldn't bear her conditions and ..... .

a) decided to open her factory
b) escaped from the factory
c) fought with the manager
d) went to school

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our economy needs more inspiring entrepreneurs to drive innovation and create meaningful change. Their vision is truly the engine of progress.

a) يحتاج اقتصادنا إلى المزيد من رواد الأعمال الملهمين لدفع الابتكار وخلق تغيير جذرى. فصبرهم هى حقًا وقود التقدم.
b) يحتاج اقتصادنا إلى المزيد من رواد الأعمال الملهمين لدفع عجلة الابتكار وخلق تغيير ذى معنى. فرؤيتهم هى حقًا محرك التقدم.
c) يحتاج اقتصادنا إلى الصفوة من رواد الأعمال الملهمين لدفع الابتكار وخلق تغيير ذى معنى. فإصرارهم هو حقًا محرك التقدم.
d) يحتاج اقتصادنا إلى الصفوة من رواد الأعمال المبدعين لتحفيز الابتكار وخلق تغيير أصلى. فعقليتهم هى حقًا أساس التقدم.

2. A young Egyptian entrepreneur named Abu Elnaga launched an innovative tech startup that not only creates job opportunities but also provides smart solutions to everyday challenges in his community.

a) أطلق رائد الأعمال المصرى الشاب أبو النجا شركة تقليدية قديمة فى مجال التكنولوجيا لا تخلق فرص عمل فحسب، بل توفر أيضًا حلولًا ذكية للتحديات اليومية فى مجتمعه.
b) أطلق رائد الأعمال المصرية الشاب أبو النجا شركة ناشئة مبتكرة فى مجال الصناعة لا تجدد فرص عمل فحسب، بل توفر أيضًا مساعدات جديدة للتحديات اليومية فى مجتمعها.
c) أطلق رائد الأعمال المصرية الشاب أبو النجا شركة ناشئة مبتكرة فى مجال التكنولوجيا لا تخلق فرص عمل فحسب، بل توفر أيضًا حلولًا ذكية للتحديات اليومية فى مجتمعها.
d) أطلق رائد الأعمال المصرى الشاب أبو النجا شركة ناشئة مبتكرة فى مجال الحاسبات لا تخلق فرص عمل فحسب، بل توفر أيضًا حلولًا ذكية للتحديات الأسبوعية فى مجتمعه.

3. The 'Decent Life' initiative is a major national project that aims to develop the Egyptian countryside by improving infrastructure, healthcare services, and living standards for millions of citizens.

a) مبادرة «حياة كريمة» هى مشروع قومى كبير يهدف إلى تطوير الريف المصرى من خلال تحسين البنية التحتية، والخدمات الصحية، ومستوى المعيشة لملايين المواطنين.

b) مبادرة «حياة كريمة» هى مشروع محلى كبير يهدف إلى تطوير الريف المصرى من خلال تحسين البنية الهندسية، والخدمات الصحية، ومستوى المعيشة لملايين المواطنين.

c) مبادرة «حياة كريمة» هى مشروع قومى كبير يهدف إلى تطوير المناطق الحضرية من خلال تحسين البنية التحتية، والخدمات الصحية، ومستوى المعيشة لآلاف المواطنين.

d) مبادرة «حياة كريمة» هى مشروع قومى كبير يهدف إلى تصنيع تطور الريف المصرى من خلال تحسين البنية التحتية، والخدمات الترفيهية، ومستوى المعيشة لملايين السياح.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. نأمل أن تسهم جهود المنظمات الخيرية فى مصر، مثل: جمعية رسالة وبنك الطعام المصرى، فى تخفيف معاناة الناس والقضاء على الفقر فى كل مكان.

a) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieve people's suffering and eliminate poverty everywhere.

b) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and stopping poverty everywhere.

c) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

d) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will make up to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

5. لم تمنع صعوبات التعلم بعض المشاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واستثمار قدراتهم ومواهبهم، بل استطاعوا الوصول للنجاح بالمثابرة والعمل الجاد.

a) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through preservation and hard work.

b) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from passing their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

c) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to arrive success through perseverance and hard work.

d) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

6. تُركّز مصر جهودها على تنفيذ إصلاحات اقتصادية جريئة لتحفيز النمو، وجذب الاستثمار الأجنبي المباشر، وخلق فرص عمل للمواطنين.

a) Egypt is concentrating its efforts on enforcing bold economic reforms to stimulate growth, attract foreign direct investment, and create job opportunities for its citizens.

b) Egypt is ignoring its need for timid economic changes to slow growth, repel foreign direct investment, and reduce job opportunities for its citizens.

c) Egypt is focusing its hopes on discussing economic theories to simulate growth, attract foreign indirect criticism, and create unemployment for its citizens.

d) Egypt is focusing its efforts on implementing bold economic reforms to stimulate growth, attract foreign direct investment, and create job opportunities for its citizens.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"The importance of education in starting a career"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

launch	يطلق	drive	يدفع	bold	جرىء
stimulate	يحفز	infrastructure	البنية التحتية		

Student's Book Corner

Vocabulary

1 Match the words with their meanings:

1. institutions	a) staying dedicated and working hard to achieve something, even when it's difficult
2. inspire	b) to make someone feel that they want to do something and can do it
3. independence	c) organizations or important establishments (like banks, schools, or hospitals) that serve a public purpose
4. founder	d) to change and develop over time
5. evolve	e) being free to make your own choices and not relying on others
6. mobilization	f) a person who starts or creates a business, organization, or company
7. commitment	g) the act of preparing for active service or use

Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. By the age of 25, Omar ..... his own startup.
   a) had developed b) has developed c) develops d) is developed
2. Before launching his business, he ..... environmental engineering at Alexandria University.
   a) studies b) had studied c) was studying d) is studying
3. Many single-use plastics ..... in some cities before his products reached the market.
   a) had been banned b) were banning c) have banned d) are banning
4. His team proudly said they ..... eco-friendly boxes and cups.
   a) had designed b) have designed c) were designed d) are designed
5. Within a year, his products ..... in more than fifty cafés.
   a) had been used b) were using c) had used d) have used

3 Complete the sentences using the past perfect active or passive form of the verbs in brackets:

1. By the age of 25, Omar (develop) a small startup.
2. Before launching his business, he (study) the market.
3. Many single-use plastics already (ban) in some cities.
4. His team (design) eco-friendly boxes and cups.
5. Within a year, the products (use) in more than fifty cafés.

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hoda and Salma are talking about their last visit to the Book Fair.

Salma : Hello, Hoda. So you too have come to see the Book Fair.

Hoda : Of course. (1).....?

Salma : No, I haven't. I couldn't buy all the books I liked and wanted.

Hoda : Why?

Salma : They were too expensive. What I have really enjoyed are the cultural meetings and discussions that took place at the fair. (2)..... .

Hoda : Every day! (3).....?

Salma : Yes, of course you meet poets, writers, and journalists.

Hoda : I wish I had been with you.

Salma : Don't worry. They are going to extend the fair for another two days.

Hoda : (4).....?

Salma : Of course, I can.

Hoda : Thank you very much.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is emphasized regarding the proper noun "Allah"?
2. Discuss the significance of Allah's names and attributes in shaping the relationship between believers and their Creator.

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. We should bear in mind that the names of Allah are ..... .

a) countable b) countless
c) limited d) only ninety-nine

4. Most of Allah's names are revealed in the Qur'an, while some are known from ..... .

a) stories b) narration c) the hadith d) tales

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Many people oppose globalization because it helps rich countries more than poor countries.

(B) Translate into English:

- يساعدنا الاستقرار على تنفيذ المشروعات النافعة وحل مشكلات الإسكان والمواصلات وتحسين العناية الصحية.

General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Young entrepreneurs often have to take significant ..... to launch their business ideas.
   a) visions b) risks c) foundations d) independence
2. Talaat Harb had a clear ..... to create a bank that would support Egypt's economy.
   a) capital b) vision c) institution d) competition
3. To start a business, an entrepreneur needs to secure enough ..... to fund their initial operations.
   a) capital b) commitment c) mobilization d) inventory
4. Hard work and deep ..... are essential to get promoted in your job.
   a) treatment b) commitment c) independence d) rental
5. The successful ..... of community support was crucial for the project's launch.
   a) mobilization b) independence c) competition d) processing
6. The bank grew to become a major national ..... that served the public for decades.
   a) institution b) founder c) vision d) inventory
7. We must ..... our challenges with innovative solutions.
   a) solve b) guarantee c) pitch d) face
8. The agenda for the meeting ..... to all participants by the end of last week.
   a) had been sent b) has been sent c) was sent d) had sent
9. He had finished his work before ..... to visit us.
   a) had come b) he comes c) came d) coming
10. He said that they ..... each other for many years.
    a) have known b) had been knowing
    c) had known d) have been knowing
11. The mistake ..... identified long before the product was shipped.
    a) had been b) has been c) was being d) had
12. We couldn't print the report because the printer ..... out of paper.
    a) has run b) ran c) had run d) was running
13. By yesterday, she ..... to quit her job.
    a) decided b) has decided c) had decided d) was decided

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone knows that running is a great way to get into shape, but it also can benefit almost every part of your body and boost your mood. Whether it's your favorite part of the day or something you have to push yourself through, the benefits are undeniable.

1. Running improves your health.
2. It prevents disease.
3. You might lose weight.
4. Running lightens your mood.
5. It relieves stress.
6. Running has the power to eliminate depression.

One of the coolest things about the sport of running is that you don't need expensive equipment. All you need is a good pair of running shoes and a safe environment.

No one wakes up and decides to run a marathon without training. Running requires discipline, perseverance, and concentration. It's a sport that's good for your body and mind.

Running strengthens your heart, lungs, and muscles. It develops coordination and makes you more aware of your body. Running also gives you energy by increasing your oxygen intake, and it improves your immune system, so you don't get sick as easily. It can even help you stay more focused in school because exercise helps you to think more clearly.

Most schools offer cross-country and track programs, but there are also running clubs open to all ages. A simple internet search can help you find some in your area. The programs show you how running can offer competition or just be for fun. They also teach runners to set realistic goals and take care of their bodies.

If you're looking for more than just a sport, running may be the perfect choice for you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. What is the main idea of the fourth paragraph in this article?

a) Running is one way to keep your body healthy.
b) You don't need expensive equipment to be a runner.
c) Running for fun is better than running in a competition.
d) There are many running clubs and teams you can become involved in.

15. What is the author's main purpose for writing this passage?

a) To give historical information about runners.
b) To teach readers how to become great runners.
c) To persuade readers to try running.
d) To compare and contrast running and watching television.

16. Running strengthens your ..... .

a) heart, lungs, and muscles
b) hearing
c) hair
d) weakness

17. We can infer that the ..... is responsible for protecting our bodies against sickness.

a) lungs
b) immune system
c) heart
d) marathon

18. It's required to have ..... to practice running.

a) food and beverage
b) perseverance and focus
c) leather shoes and a suit
d) money and a vast place

19. Running can benefit the mind as it ..... .

a) boosts confidence
b) helps people lose weight
c) helps people think clearly
d) keeps you hungry

20. According to the passage, people can find suitable places for running through ..... .

a) the newspapers
b) the magazines
c) the internet
d) the school noticeboard

21. The underlined word "discipline" means "..... ".

a) carelessness
b) weakness
c) self-control
d) flexibility

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Young entrepreneurs pump innovation and energy into the market, which leads to job creation and dynamic economic growth. Their fresh perspectives are crucial for overcoming future challenges.

a) يَضُخُّ رواد الأعمال الشباب التقاليدَ والخبرةَ فى السوق، مما يؤدى إلى خلق فرص العمل ونمو اقتصادى ديناميكى. ورؤاهم الجديدة حاسمة للتغلب على التحديات المستقبلية.

b) يَسْحَبُ رواد الأعمال الشباب الابتكارَوالطاقةَ من السوق، مما يؤدى إلى خلق فرص العمل ونمو اقتصادى ديناميكى. ورؤاهم القديمة غير مجدية للتغلب على التحديات المستقبلية.

c) يَضُخُّ رواد الأعمال الشباب الابتكارَوالطاقةَ فى السوق، مما يؤدى إلى خلق فرص العمل ونمو اقتصادى ديناميكى. ورؤاهم الجديدة حاسمة للتغلب على التحديات المستقبلية.

d) يَضُخُّ رواد الأعمال الشباب الابتكارَوالطاقةَ فى السوق، مما يؤدى إلى فقدان فرص العمل ونمو اقتصادى بطىء. ورؤاهم الجديدة حاسمة للتغلب على التحديات المستقبلية.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًّا، فهى لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًّا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد على انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

a) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

b) Jobless is a very serious problem, as it reflects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on cultural and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

c) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has an expected impact on economic and social growth, and helps publish crime in society.

d) Retirement is a very serious problem, as it affects not only members, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative crash on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around the World in Eighty Days)

1. Why do you think Fogg remained calm while others were excited about the robbery?
2. In your opinion, what might be the advantages and disadvantages of Fogg's personality?
3. What lesson can we learn from the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout?

25. Write an essay of (150–180) words on the following:

"The project that you dream of setting up"

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Module (1) General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt's strategic location makes it a natural ..... for trade between Africa, Asia, and Europe.
   a) stability b) gateway c) funding d) road
2. The two countries signed a/an ..... agreement to support each other's economic growth.
   a) linked b) mutual c) attached d) manufactured
3. The startup needed ..... from investors to turn its innovative idea into a real business.
   a) pitching b) funding c) banking d) founding
4. The business ..... was fierce, with many companies offering similar products.
   a) interaction b) competition c) option d) rental
5. A strong economy requires social ..... to attract foreign investment.
   a) stability b) gateway c) expansion d) option
6. She showed great ..... to her studies, practicing every day to achieve her goals.
   a) capital b) commitment c) competition d) independence
7. His story of success continues to ..... many young people to pursue their dreams.
   a) inspire b) expand c) manufacture d) result
8. Don't make noise! Grandpa ..... in the living room.
   a) is sleeping b) sleeps c) slept d) sleep
9. Be quiet, please! A play ..... in the school theater now.
   a) is being performed b) performs c) was performed d) has performed
10. I can't go out. My friends and I ..... on our project this afternoon.
    a) are working b) work c) worked on d) works
11. By the time the investor arrived, the team ..... the project proposal.
    a) was finished b) had finished c) have finished d) was finishing
12. The new software ..... by the IT department before the conference started.
    a) had been tested b) has been tested
    c) was testing d) tested
13. She realized she ..... her wallet at home only after she reached the market.
    a) leaves b) had left c) has left d) was leaving

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If we look around, we will see motion happening everywhere. We see it in the movement of vehicles, people walking, airplanes flying, a ball rolling, and animals running. Basically, it is an important part of our lives. However, there is much more to motion, and it has a great impact on many things that we are part of. We can watch things around us move. When something is in motion, it changes its position. Objects can move from one place to another. They can move in many directions. If you roll a ball, it might move in a straight line. It might also move in a curve. A swing can move back and forth. A light switch can move up and down. Fans have blades that move in a circle. If you want to know if something is moving, you can compare it to other things around it that are not moving. If the things behind the object are changing, the object is probably moving. If they are not changing, the object is probably not moving.

You can measure the distance an object moves. Just measure the distance between where it was when it started to move and where it was when it stopped.

Distance can be measured in inches, feet, yards, or miles. Those measurements are in the customary system. It can also be measured in millimeters, centimeters, meters, and kilometers. Those measurements are in the metric system.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. When something is in motion, what does it change?

a) Size. b) Height. c) Position. d) Weight.

15. How does a swing move?

a) Up and down. b) Back and forth. c) Back and up. d) Back and right.

16. How does a light switch move?

a) Back and up. b) Back and forth. c) Back and right. d) Up and down.

17. What are the units of measurement you could use to measure distance?

a) Inches, feet, yards, or miles. b) Inches, pounds, grammes, or miles.
c) Tones, kilograms, yards, or miles. d) Hectares, feet, tons, or miles.

18. We know that something is moving when ..... .

a) it makes noise b) objects behind it are changing
c) balls are moving around it d) it exceeds a mile

19. A distance between the start point of the object and the ending point means that ..... .

a) the object moved b) the object was stable
c) the object is heavy d) the object will move

20. The word "impact" in the passage can be replaced by the word ..... .

a) move b) effect c) change d) response

21. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .

a) any moving object b) a direction
c) a straight line d) a ball

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Health care is considered an important element in increasing production. A healthy worker can work harder and more efficiently than a sick one.

a) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًّا فى زيادة الإنتاج ويمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

b) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًّا فى زيادة الاستهلاك ويمكن للعامل المتعافى أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

c) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية مبررًا فى زيادة الإنتاج ويمكن للعامل المجد أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

d) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية دافعًا مهمًّا فى زيادة الإنتاج ويمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بخطورة أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- الغذاء الكامل هو الغذاء الذى يحتوى على جميع العناصر الغذائية بكميات مناسبة لاحتياجات الجسم، لكن معظم الناس يهتمون بالطعم ولا يهتمون بالمكونات.

a) Complete diet is the one that includes all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

b) Complete food is the one that contains all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but many people care about the taste and do not care about the recipes.

c) Complete food is the one that contains all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care with the taste and do not care about the crops.

d) Complete food is the one that contains all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around the World in Eighty Days)

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg chose to live such a strict and quiet life without family or friends?
2. How do Passepartout's first impressions of the house show the difference between him and his master?
3. Do you think Fogg was brave or foolish to risk so much money on a bet? Why?

25. Write an essay of (150–180) words on the following:

"The role of mass media such as television in spreading awareness about the importance of a healthy lifestyle"

.....

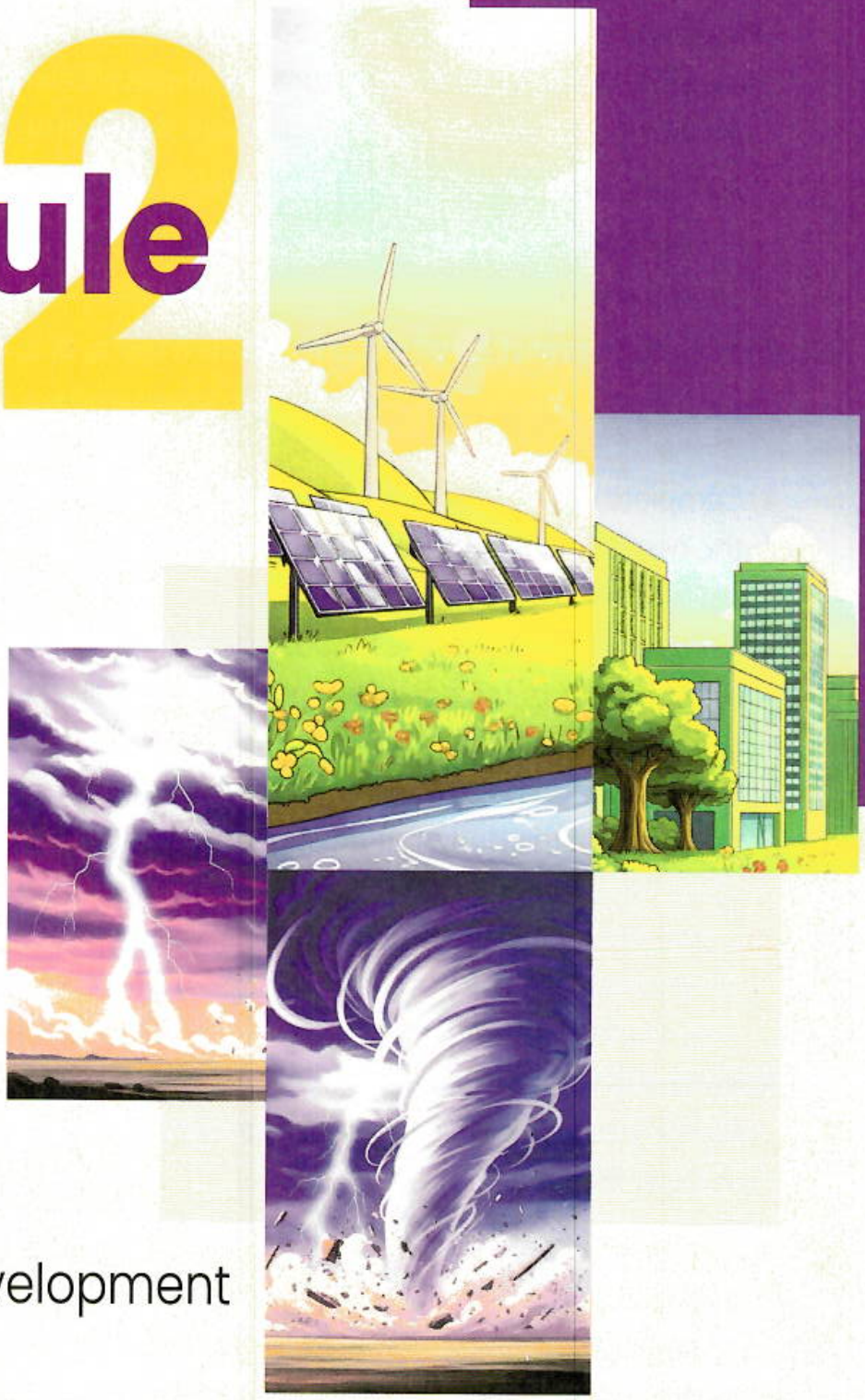
.....

.....

.....

.....

Module 2



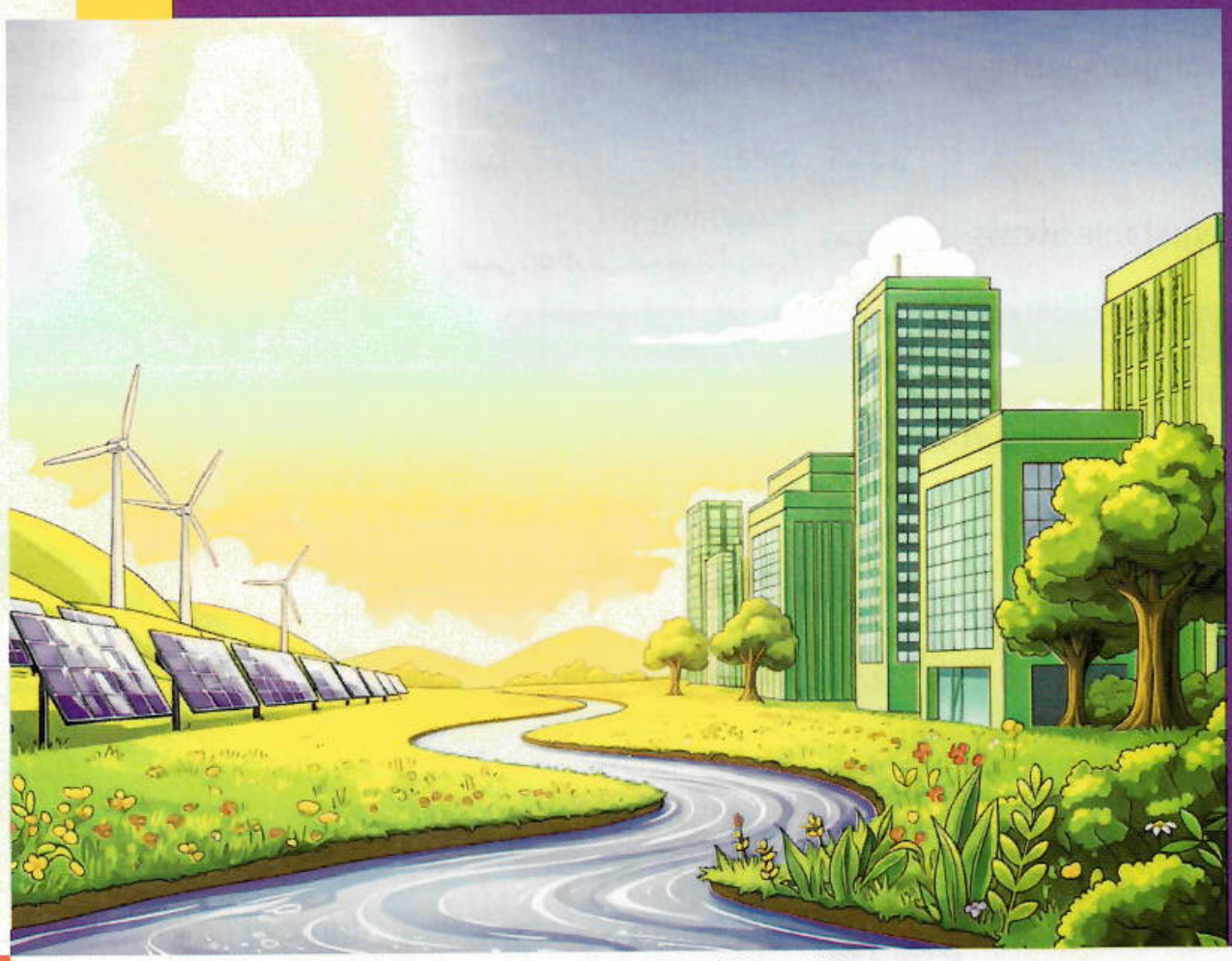
Unit 3
Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)

Unit 4
Natural Disasters

Module (2) General Exercises
Units 3 & 4

Unit 3

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)



Learning Outcomes

Reading	- Answer critical reading questions about Egypt Vision 2030. - Guess the meanings of bold words based on context. - Read passages about education and healthcare in relation to the vision.
Listening	- Identify the main idea of a spoken text about healthcare. - Guess the meaning of unknown words using context clues.
Speaking	- Talk with a partner about your personal goals for 2030.
Writing	- Write descriptive sentences using adjectives and adverbs correctly. - Write a blog post.
Language	- Correctly use adjectives to describe nouns. - Correctly use adverbs to modify verbs.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

affordable (adj) يمكن تحمل نفقاته/فى المتناول	inclusive (adj) شامل/احتوائى	sustainable (adj) مستدام
chronic disease مرض مزمن	infrastructure (n) البنية التحتية	universal (adj) شامل/عالمى
comprehensive (adj) شامل	initiative (n) مبادرة	vaccination coverage تغطية (إحصائيات) التطعيم
economic (adj) اقتصادى	pillars (n) ركائز/أعمدة	vision (n) رؤية
equitable access وصول عادل	screening (n) فحص صحى (للتأكد من عدم وجود أمراض)	

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

address (v) (ed) يعالج (مشكلة)/يخاطب	diabetes (n) السكرى	globalization (n) عولمة
agency (n) وكالة	economy (n) اقتصاد	goal (n) هدف
asthma (n) الربو	equal (adj) متساوٍ	growth (n) نمو
balanced (adj) متوازن	equally (adv) بالتساوى	guarantee (n) (v) (d) ضمان/يضمن
basic (adj) أساسى	face (v) (d) (n) يواجه/وجه	healthcare (n) رعاية صحية
campaign (n) حملة	fair (adj) عادل/منصف	high-quality (adj) ذو جودة عالية
challenge (n) (v) (d) تحدى/يتحدى	fairness (n) عدالة/إنصاف	improve (v) (d) يحسن
change (n) (v) (d) تغيير/يغير	focus (v) (ed) (n) يركز/تركيز	industrialization (n) تصنيع
check (n) (v) (ed) فحص/يفحص	follow (v) (ed) يتبع	insurance (n) تأمين
civil (adj) مدنى	fund (v) (ed) يمول	international (adj) دولى
design (n)(v) (ed) تصميم/يصمم	gap (n) فجوة/فراغ	justice (n) عدالة
detection (n) اكتشاف/تحديد	generation (n) جيل	leadership (n) قيادة
development (n) تنمية/تطوير	global (adj) عالمى	local (adj) محلى

long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد	privatization (n)	خصخصة	roadmap (n)	خارطة طريق
national (adj)	وطني	progress (n)	تقدم	security (n)	أمن
neighborhoods (n)	أحياء	prosperity (n)	ازدهار	society (n)	مجتمع
participation (n)	مشاركة	quality (n)	جودة	solve (v) (d)	يحل
partner (n)	شريك	reach (v) (ed)	يصل إلى	strategy (n)	استراتيجية
percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية	recovery (n)	تعافٍ/شفاء	strengths (n)	نقاط القوة
plan (n) (v) (ned)	خطة/يخطط	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل	symptoms (n)	أعراض
politics (n)	سياسة	region (n)	منطقة	the state (n)	الدولة/الوضع
position (n)	موقع/منصب	regional (adj)	إقليمي	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
presidential (adj)	رئاسي	religion (n)	دين		
prevent (v) (ed)	يمنع	resource (n)	مورد	vaccination (n)	تطعيم
principle (n)	مبدأ	rights (n)	حقوق		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The government launched a/an ..... to improve health services in poor villages.
   a) support b) justice c) movement d) initiative
2. Development and construction are important ..... of a strong modern society.
   a) values b) pillars c) stones d) reasons
3. Farmers depend on ..... methods to protect the land for future generations.
   a) sustainable b) temporary c) lasting d) universal
4. Education is seen as a/an ..... right that should be accessible متاح to all children.
   a) universal b) local c) optional d) restricted
5. The teacher will ..... the students about the importance of healthy food today.
   a) address b) follow c) speak d) call
6. The travel ..... arranged our flights and hotel bookings for the summer trip.
   a) campaign b) insurance c) resource d) agency
7. A/An ..... diet includes fruits, vegetables, proteins, and enough water every day.
   a) equal b) unhealthy c) balanced d) fair
8. People with ..... need to control sugar levels by going on a diet.
   a) diabetes b) asthma c) flu d) cold

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

(be) built on	مبنى على	make investments	يقوم بعمل استثمارات	social justice	عدالة اجتماعية		
do/cause harm to	يُلحق ضررًا بـ	sign up	يسجل/ينضم	make sure	يتأكد		
aim at/to/for	يهدف إلى	take part in	يشارك فى	plan for	خطة/يخطط لـ		
aspects of	جوانب من	depend on	يعتمد على	refer to	يشير إلى		
benefit from	يستفيد من	on time	فى المعاد المضبوط	related to	مرتبط بـ		
make the most of	يستفيد أقصى استفادة	give an advantage	يعطى ميزة				

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
afford	يتحمل تكاليف/يوفر/يزود	affordability	القدرة على التحمل/إمكانية الشراء	affordable	يمكن تحمل نفقاته/فى المتناول
comprehend	يستوعب	comprehension	استيعاب	comprehensive comprehensible	شامل سهل الفهم
economize	يقتصد	economy economist	اقتصاد خبير اقتصادى	economic economical	اقتصادى موفر
----------		equity	إنصاف/عدالة	equitable	منصف/عادل
include	يَضم/يشمل	inclusion	إدماج/شمول	inclusive	شامل
initiate	يبدأ/يطلق	initiative initiation	مبادرة بداية/تمهيد	initial	مبدئى
sustain	يحافظ على	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
vaccinate	يُطعِّم	vaccination vaccine	تطعيم لقاح	vaccinated	مُطعَم
envision	يتخيل/يتصور	vision visibility	رؤية وضوح الرؤية	visionary visual	خيالى/حالم بصرى

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The list includes many famous names. (v)
The school supports the inclusion of students with disabilities. (n)
We need an inclusive solution for all people. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
affordable يمكن تحمل نفقاته / فى المتناول	cheap/reasonable	expensive/costly غالٍ / مرتفع الثمن
chronic مزمن / مستمر	incurable/persistent	curable/temporary يمكن علاجه / مؤقت
equitable عادل	fair/equal	unfair/inequality غير عادل / عدم مساواة
inclusive شامل	broad/extensive/ comprehensive	exclusive/partial/limited حصرى / محدود
infrastructure البنية التحتية	foundation/base	superstructure البنية الفوقية
screening فحص	examination/testing	negligence/ignoring إهمال / تجاهل
sustainable مستدام	eco-friendly/renewable/ maintainable	wasteful/unsustainable/ short-term غير مستدام / قصير الأمد
universal شامل / عالمى	global/worldwide	local/limited محلى / محدود
vision رؤية	far-sightedness/foresight/ aspect/conception	short-sightedness/ignorance قصر نظر / جهل

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Smoking cigarettes can ..... harm to your lungs and heart, leading to serious problems.
   a) appear b) make c) cause d) give
2. Learning English can ..... an advantage in school, work, and daily communication with others.
   a) make b) do c) give d) cause
3. The government is working on using ..... forms of transportation.
   a) sustainable b) sustainability c) sustain d) sustained
4. We must ..... our efforts to protect nature and keep the environment safe for everyone.
   a) sustainable b) sustainability c) sustain d) sustained

5. The Ministry of Education will ensure providing equitable internet access for all students. The synonym of the word "equitable" is ..... .

a) complete b) fair c) limited d) sustainable

6. Smiling is a universal language that everyone can understand. The antonym of the word "universal" is ..... .

a) disabled b) worldwide c) global d) local

7. We need a clear plan ..... the trip to make everything successful.

a) to b) for c) with d) at

8. Students can benefit ..... reading books daily, improving their knowledge and language skills.

a) from b) to c) for d) at

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Egypt vision 2030

Sustainable Development Strategy (SDS) means a long-term plan that focuses on improving people's lives in a fair and balanced way. It aims to grow the economy, support social justice, and protect the environment so that every person and future generations can enjoy a good quality of life. In Egypt, this vision is called Egypt Vision 2030.

Egypt Vision 2030 is a step towards comprehensive national development. Its goal is to build prosperity through economic growth, social fairness, and stronger regional leadership.

SDS acts as a roadmap to help Egypt make the most of its strengths and face the hopes of its people for a better life. The strategy depends on the participation of the classes, which means that civil society, government agencies, and local and international partners all worked together to design the plan.

Because of Egypt's unique position in the region and the world, the SDS gives the country an advantage in addressing global changes. The SDS follows the principle of sustainable development, which is about improving people's quality of life while also protecting the rights of future generations. It focuses on three main pillars:

- the economy
- society
- the environment

In addition, the SDS is built on the ideas of inclusive and balanced development. This means that every person should take part in development, benefit from it equally, and have fair opportunities. The strategy also aims to close gaps between regions, use resources wisely, and guarantee a better future for the next generation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main goal of Egypt Vision 2030?

a) To focus only on tourism.
b) To build prosperity through growth and fairness.
c) To depend only on international partners.
d) To reduce education opportunities.

2. Who participated in designing the SDS plan?

a) Only the government.
b) Only foreign investors.
c) Civil society, government, and partners.
d) Only university professors.

3. Why does SDS give Egypt an advantage?

a) Because of its unique regional and global position.
b) Because it has the largest population in Africa.
c) Because of its natural gas only.
d) Because of its history only.

4. What principle does the SDS follow?

a) Globalization.
b) Sustainable development.
c) Industrialization only.
d) Privatization.

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Egypt is working hard to create a healthier future for its people. This goal is part of a national plan called *Egypt Vision 2030*. The country wants to provide high-quality, affordable healthcare to all citizens and hopes to become a leader in healthcare in the region. One of the most important parts of this plan is the Universal Health Insurance System (UHIS). This program started in 2018 and aims to cover everyone in Egypt by the year 2030. The system is changing how healthcare is funded and delivered. Millions of Egyptians have already signed up, and many hospitals and clinics are being improved. In addition to the UHIS, there are several presidential health campaigns that have helped millions of people. For example, the 100 Million Healthy Lives initiative tested over 60 million Egyptians for hepatitis C and other serious diseases. Other programs focus on women's health and the early detection of chronic illnesses like diabetes and high blood pressure. Vaccination is another success story—over 95 percent of Egyptians now receive their vaccinations on time. Finally, Egypt is making big investments in health infrastructure. The government plans to open 58 new hospitals by 2025. It is also using digital technology and working with private companies to improve services. The goal is to make sure everyone in every part of the country has fair and equal access to healthcare.

Definitions

التعريفات

affordable	يمكن تحمل نفقاته/فى المتناول	not too expensive
chronic disease	مرض مزمن	a long-term disease, like diabetes or asthma
comprehensive	شامل	complete and covering all or nearly all aspects of something
economic	اقتصادى	related to money, trade, jobs, or the production and use of goods and services
equitable access	وصول عادل	fair and equal opportunities for all to get the same services
inclusive	شامل/احتوائى	including a wide variety of people, things, etc., without any distinctions
infrastructure	البنية التحتية	basic systems and services, such as hospitals and roads
initiative	مبادرة	a new plan or program started to solve a problem
pillars	ركائز	important parts or strong supports of a system, idea, or structure
screening	فحص	checking people for diseases before they show symptoms
sustainable	مستدام	able to continue over time without causing harm to the environment, economy, or society
universal	شامل/عالمى	relating to or done by all people or things in the world
vaccination coverage	تغطية (إحصائيات)التطعيم	the percentage of people who have received vaccines
vision	رؤية	a clear idea or plan for the future; someone hopes to achieve

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

check
يفحص / يتأكد / يراجع بسرعة

Please, check your email for new messages.

investigate
يحقق / يبحث بدقة / يستقصى (غالبًا فى قضايا رسمية أو علمية)

Scientists are investigating a new method to treat cancer.

2

politics
علم السياسة كمجال أو نشاط (لأحزاب، الانتخابات، الحكم)

He is very interested in politics. He wants to be a member in a party حزب.

policy
سياسة كاستراتيجية أو قاعدة أو خطة عمل (سياسة تعليمية، سياسة الشركة)

Our company has a strict policy against smoking.

politician رجل سياسة

She is a young politician with fresh ideas.

3

position
مكانة / وظيفة / مركز فى الملعب / موضع الجلوس أو الوقوف

- My uncle occupies a good position in a bank.
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.

location
موقع / مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)

- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices.
- Most of the film was shot on location in Africa.

4

percentage
النسبة المئوية بشكل عام

A large percentage of the population lives in cities.

percent
فى المئة (دائمًا تأتى مع رقم محدد تساوى الرمز ٪)

The head teacher said that 20 percent (20%) of the class is absent.

5

comprehensive
شامل / كامل / وافٍ

This is a comprehensive guide to Egyptian hotels and restaurants.

comprehensible سهل الفهم

The rules must be clear and comprehensible to all staff.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "....." means a clear idea or plan for the future that someone hopes to achieve.
   a) pillar b) screening
   c) vision d) initiative
2. The basic systems and services, such as hospitals and roads, means ..... .
   a) initiatives b) infrastructure
   c) pillars d) visions
3. Mona is very interested in ..... and reads about elections every day.
   a) politics b) policy
   c) politician d) policies
4. What you're saying is not ..... at all. I want more clarification.
   a) comprehensive b) comprehensible
   c) complicated d) political
5. The minister announced that about 80 ..... of the students passed the exam.
   a) percentage b) per
   c) percent d) accent
6. The worker went to ..... whether he turned off the machine or not.
   a) check b) investigate
   c) scan d) search

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The local council started a new ..... to clean the streets quickly.
   a) initiative b) pillar c) access d) method
2. Trust and respect are the ..... of any good relationship between people.
   a) projects b) blocks c) regions d) pillars
3. Early cancer ..... saves many lives by finding the disease before serious symptoms appear.
   a) fund b) method c) screening d) vaccination
4. We need ..... solutions that can continue without harming the environment.
   a) loyal b) chronic c) sustainable d) temporary
5. Education is a ..... right that belongs to every child in the world.
   a) universal b) national c) high d) sustainable
6. Countries work hard to improve ..... coverage, so more children survive fatal diseases.
   a) economy b) plan c) vaccination d) infrastructure
7. The new clinic provides ..... medical care for poor families in the village.
   a) wealthy b) expensive c) affordable d) civil
8. Diabetes is a common ..... disease that needs long-term medical care and attention.
   a) chronic b) acute c) temporary d) short-term
9. We need a/an ..... study to understand the country's economic problems.
   a) limited b) comprehensive c) delicious d) aware
10. Governments must ensure ..... access to healthcare for people in rural areas.
    a) international b) equitable c) balanced d) exclusive
11. Good teachers use ..... methods that involve every student in the class.
    a) special b) sustainable c) unequal d) inclusive
12. The country invested in new ..... like roads, bridges, and hospitals to achieve its vision.
    a) screenings b) leaderships c) infrastructure d) privatizations
13. Old people with ..... should avoid enclosed areas أماكن مغلقة so that they can be safe.
    a) headache b) asthma c) diabetes d) flu
14. Men and women should have ..... opportunities to study, work, and live freely.
    a) equal b) different c) fair d) global
15. The younger ..... uses technology more than their parents or grandparents.
    a) generation b) family c) group d) age

16. Modern technology has increased ..... by connecting businesses across the world.
a) religion b) globalization c) security d) justice

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17. The school organized a free ..... program for students to prevent serious diseases.
a) vaccinate b) vaccine c) vaccination d) vaccinated

18. All students must be ..... before joining school to keep everyone safe.
a) vaccinate b) vaccine c) vaccination d) vaccinated

19. All world countries are going through an ..... crisis these days.
a) economic b) economical c) economist d) economics

20. The government announced a new education ..... two days ago.
a) politics b) policy c) politician d) political

21. Students should ..... the most of their study time to learn quickly and excel at school.
a) have b) give c) cause d) make

22. Wise people ..... investments in education because knowledge gives power, success, and many opportunities.
a) do b) carry c) make d) give

23. Many students signed ..... for the summer camp to learn skills and enjoy fun activities.
a) in b) at c) up d) down

24. It's an important meeting. Make sure to get there ..... time.
a) at b) for c) with d) on

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

25. The organization promotes an inclusive environment where everyone is welcome. The two antonyms of the word "inclusive" are ..... .
a) comprehensive b) exclusive c) broad d) excluded e) partial

26. A new city was constructed after they had enhanced the infrastructure. The synonyms of the word "infrastructure" are ..... .
a) superstructure b) foundation c) structure d) base e) instruction

27. Mr. Ayman suffers from chronic backache that has lasted for years. The two synonyms of the word "chronic" are ..... .
a) persistent b) curable c) incurable d) temporary e) sustainable

28. The judge made a/an ..... decision. He treated both sides equally.
a) unjust b) fair c) equitable d) unreasonable e) biased

29. The prices of lots of goods are still affordable despite the economic crisis. The antonyms of the word "affordable" are ..... .
a) difficult b) cheap c) expensive d) reasonable e) costly

B Language

Adjectives vs. Adverbs الصفات والأحوال

1 Adjectives الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع، حتى لو كان الاسم الذى بعدها جمع.

- Samira is a beautiful girl.
- Samira and Nada are beautiful girls.

1 الصفة تأتى قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ V. - to be.

- He is a tall boy. The boy is tall.

2 تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية:

be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.

- She is beautiful.
- The food tastes good.

3 الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.

- They are still alive.

4 الصفات الآتية يجب أن يأتى بعدها اسم:

chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

- I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing, and hiking.

5 بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.

- The rich (rich people) should help and support the poor (poor people).

6 الصفة لا تجمع وإذا جاء اسم قبل اسم فالاسم الأول يعتبر صفة ولا يجمع:

a bus driver	سائق الأتوبيس	bus drivers	سائقو الأتوبيسات
two million pounds	كلمة «مليون» هى اسم ولكن هنا صفة لأن بعدها اسمًا لذلك لم تجمع		
the book fair	معرض الكتاب	book fairs	معارض الكتب
a five-day holiday	إجازة خمسة أيام	five-day holidays	إجازات كل منها خمسة أيام

7 الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف الأشياء والأشخاص والصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف المشاعر:

This book is interesting.
My neighbour is an interesting man.
As the film was boring, we got bored and wanted to leave the cinema.

8 هناك صفات تنتهى بـ ly ويجب حفظها لتجنب التشابه بينها وبين الحال ومنها:

elderly	مُسنّ	lonely	وحيدًا/يشعر بالوحدة	ugly	قَبِيح
fatherly	أَبَوِيّ	lovely	مَحْبُوب	deadly	مُمِيت
friendly	ودود	motherly	أُمومِيّ	heavenly	سماوى
lively	مُفْعَمٌ بِالحَيَوِيَّة	silly	سَخِيف	cowardly	جَبَان
brotherly	أَخَوِيّ	likely	مُتَوَقَّع/مُحْتَمَل	neighbourly	حسن الجوار

9 الصفة تسبق بـ very, so, too, وتأتى قبل enough:

She is being very impolite today!
The car they want to buy is too expensive.
The flat was spacious enough for my family.

10 وعلى الرغم من أن الصفة تأتى قبل الموصوف هناك كلمات تأتى الصفة بعدها وهى:

every	everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
any	anyone	anybody	anything	anywhere
some	someone	somebody	something	somewhere
no	no one	anybody	anything	anywhere

Examples

- Have you ever met anyone important?
- Is there somewhere safe where I can leave my bike?
- I haven't done anything useful for 3 days.

Order of Adjectives ترتيب الصفات

Opinion		Fact adjectives							Noun
		size	age	shape	color	origin	material	Used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

وفى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنين أو ثلاثة صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

2 Adverbs الأحوال/الظروف

الحال أو الظرف يصف: ١- الفعل ٢- الصفة

1. He drives carelessly. (Verb + Adverb)
2. The shirt is terribly expensive. (Adverb + Adjective)

Adverbs

- **Manner** الطريقة
- **Degree** الدرجة

Adverbs of Manner ظروف الطريقة

هى الظروف التى تبين طريقة أو كيفية حدوث الفعل.

▸ He must take his study seriously.

1 يتكون هذا النوع بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
bad	سيئ	badly	بسوء	nervous	قلق	nervously	بقلق
correct	صحيح	correctly	بطريقة صحيحة	nice	لطيف	nicely	بلطف
foolish	أحمق	foolishly	بحماقة	permanent	دائم	permanently	دومًا
loud	عالٍ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ	quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
quiet	هادئ (صوت)	quietly	بهدوء	slow	بطيء	slowly	ببطء
sad	حزين	sadly	بحزن	sudden	مفاجئ	suddenly	فجأة

2 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(l) تضاف (ly) أما إذا انتهت بـ (le) فنحذف e ونضع (y).

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بجمال	careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص
terrible	فظيع	terribly	بفظاعة	horrible	رهيب	horribly	بشكل رهيب
real	حقيقى	really	حقًا/فعليًا	probable	محتمل	probably	من المحتمل

3 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(y) تقلب (i) قبل إضافة (ly).

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
angry	غاضب	angrily	بغضب	easy	سهل	easily	بسهولة
heavy	ثقيل	heavily	بثقل/بشدة	hungry	جوعان	hungrily	بجوع
happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة	lucky	محظوظ	luckily	لحسن الحظ

▸ It was an easy test. (adj)

▸ The students answered the test easily. (adv)

4 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(ic) نضيف (ally).

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
fantastic	رائـع	fantasti**cally**	بشكل رائع	dramatic	درامى	dramati**cally**	بشكل درامى
drastic	قاسٍ/عنيف	drasti**cally**	بشكل عنيف	automatic	أتوماتيك	automati**cally**	أتوماتيكيًا

5 من شواذ تكوين الظروف:

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيـد	well	بشكل جيد	fast	سريع	fast	بسـرعة
long	طويل	long	بشكل طويل	low	منخفض	low	بشكل منخفض
fine	جيـد	fine	جيـدًا	high	مرتفـع	high	بشكل مرتفع
straight	مستقيم	straight	بشكل مستقيم	right	صحيح	right	بشكل صحيح

- Ali is a fast swimmer. (adj)
- Ali swims fast. (adv)

لاحظ بعض الصفات تستخدم كظرف بدون إضافة (ly) مثل الصفات فى الجدول السابق، ولكن إذا أضيفت لها (ly) يكون لها معنى مختلف مثل:

Adjective		Adverb		Adverb	
late	متأخـر	late	متأخـرًا	late**ly**	مؤخـرًا (منذ وقت قريـب)
hard	صلب/صعب/شديد	hard	بجـد/بشـدة	hard**ly**	بالكـاد/تقريبًـا لا
wrong	خاطئ/مخطئ	wrong	بشكل خاطئ	wrong**ly**	بظلـم
near	قريـب	near	بالقـرب	near**ly**	تقريبًـا

- She hardly ever goes out of the house. (She almost never goes out of the house).
- You wrongly accused him. = (unfairly بظلم) not ~~incorrectly~~

6 هناك صفات تنتهى بـ ly ولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال ومنها:

hour**ly**	فى كل ساعة	dai**ly**	يومى/يوميًا	week**ly**	أسبوعى/أسبوعيًا
month**ly**	شهرى/شهريًا	year**ly**	سنوى/سنويًا	ear**ly**	مبكر/مبكرًا

- My father is reading his daily newspaper. (adj)
- My father reads the newspaper daily. (adv)

7 هناك صفات تنتهى بـ ly وعند التحويل إلى حال تكون كالآتى:

in a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

elderly	مسن	lonely	وحيدًا/يشعر بالوحدة	ugly	قبيح
fatherly	أبوى	lovely	محبوب	deadly	مميت
friendly	ودود	motherly	كالأم	heavenly	سماوى
lively	مفعم بالحيوية	silly	سخيـف	cowardly	جبان
brotherly	أخوى	likely	متوقع/محتمل	sisterly	خاص بالأخت

- He is a friendly man. (adj)
- He greets/treats me in a friendly way. (adv)

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. As Samy hasn't eaten anything since the morning, he is waiting ..... for the food.
   a) patient b) impatient c) impatiently d) impatience
2. The teacher shouted ..... at the students who forgot their homework.
   a) angry b) angrily c) anger d) angered
3. Ramy ..... got dressed and took his bag as the school bus was near his house.
   a) quickly b) quick c) quicker d) quickness
4. My father is very ..... to see what the performance is about.
   a) eagers b) eagerly c) eagerness d) eager
5. The waiter talked to me ..... when I called for him.
   a) silly b) in silly c) in a silly way d) in silly way

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. She felt extreme happy after receiving the scholarship. (.....)
2. The teacher explained the lesson clear to all the students. (.....)
3. The new hospital is equipped with devices that work efficient. (.....)
4. He is a carefully planner and always completes his projects successfully. (.....)
5. She speaks fluently English and can express her ideas. (.....)

Adverbs of degree ظروف الدرجة

1 هى الظروف التى تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخرى.

very	جدًا	extremely	للغاية
fairly/slightly	قليلًا	quite	تمامًا

- My little brother speaks English very well.
- The question is slightly difficult.
- Mount Everest is extremely high.
- She is quite good at maths.

2 الأحوال التى تصف الصفة تأتى قبلها وهى تساوى very فى المعنى تقريبًا:

الصفة	الحال		الاسم
long.	very	جدًا	The Nile is
	extremely	للغاية	
	fantastically	بشكل مدهش	
	incredibly	لا يصدق	
	tremendously	جدًا/هائل	

3 وعند تحويل الصفة إلى اسم يتحول الحال إلى صفة ليصف ذلك الاسم ونحذف ly ونضع a/an قبل الصفة.

الاسم	الصفة		الاسم
The Nile has	an extreme ~~ly~~	للغاية	length.
	a fantastic ~~ally~~	بشكل مدهش	
	an incredible ~~y~~	لا يصدق	
	a tremendous ~~ly~~	جدًا/هائل	

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The economic growth is ..... impressive, exceeding all expectations.
   a) extreme b) extremely c) extremeness d) extremer
2. The scientist made a/an ..... important discovery.
   a) incredibly b) incredible c) incredulous d) a & b
3. After the new policy was introduced, the results were ..... than anyone had predicted.
   a) tremendous better b) tremendously better
   c) better tremendously d) better tremendous
4. The Grand Egyptian Museum is a/an ..... building that showcases ancient history in a modern way.
   a) beautiful fantastically b) beautiful fantastical
   c) fantastic beautiful d) fantastically beautiful
5. The teacher thought that Ahmed's project was really ..... .
   a) best b) the better c) good d) well

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The results of the new health initiative were very successful. (extremely)
   .....
2. The new software update works efficiently. (incredibly)
   .....
3. The bridge is a very long structure. (tremendously)
   .....
4. She is a very skilled programmer. (fantastically)
   .....

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Her voice sounds beautiful. She sang the song ..... as it was written.
a) exacting b) exactness c) exact d) exactly

2. The guide was good at showing us the sights, and he spoke very ..... to me.
a) polite b) politely c) politeness d) impolitely

3. Ali won the race because his horse was strong and obeyed ..... .
a) loyally b) loyal c) loyalty d) disloyally

4. I find this novel very interesting. It was ..... written.
a) interested b) interest
c) interestingly d) interesting

5. They beat the enemy because the soldiers fought ..... .
a) braved b) braveness c) brave d) bravely

6. Although he arrived an hour ....., he started work immediately.
a) late b) lately c) a late d) latest

7. The footballer played ..... today. He scored three goals!
a) brilliance b) brilliant c) brilliantly d) brilliancy

8. He was a very ..... person. He acted very ..... .
a) sensibly/sensibly b) sensible/sensibly
c) sensibly/sensible d) sensible/sensible

9. Which one of the following is grammatically correct?
a) The teachers in my school are friendly.
b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly.
c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way.
d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier.

10. You're an ..... and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you.
a) actively b) activate c) action d) active

11. This food tastes .....; you can share the meal with me.
a) delicious b) deliciously c) badly d) bad

12. He performs .....; he is a ..... performer.
a) surprising/surprising b) surprisingly/surprisingly
c) surprisingly/surprising d) surprising/surprisingly

13. It was raining ....., so I took two hours to come home.
a) heavy b) as heavy c) heavily d) heavy that

14. The cost of living has risen ..... all over the world these days.
a) dramatic b) dramatically c) dramatical d) drama

15. The injured victims of the fire were ..... taken to hospital.
a) quickly b) quick c) quickness d) quicker

16. As he was found ..... the scene of the robbery with a gun in his hand, he was arrested.
a) nearest b) near c) nearly d) nearing

17. No ..... homework will be accepted! Make sure to hand it in on time.
a) late b) lately c) latent d) latest

18. At the end of the school year, some students try ..... to make up for the lost time.
a) hardness b) hardly c) hard d) harden

19. He enjoyed designing .....colored clothes.
a) bright b) brightly c) brightness d) brighten

20. The young woman spoke to us ..... .
a) mother b) motherly c) in a motherly way d) motherhood

21. He worked ..... hard throughout his career.
a) very b) terribly c) completely d) totally

22. Playing music too ..... can damage your hearing.
a) loud b) loudly c) slowly d) louder

23. The child waited ..... for his mother to arrive, so she gave him a chocolate cake.
a) more patient b) patience c) patient d) patiently

24. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a) He looked happily last week. b) He looked happy last week.
c) He looked happy at the children. d) He looked happiness at the children.

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. The teacher explained the lesson clear to all the students. (.....)
2. The quick grown sector of renewable energy offers many job opportunities. (.....)
3. The government is absolute committed to achieving sustainable development. (.....)
4. He solved the math problem easily because he had studied good. (.....)
5. The students worked real hard to prepare for the science fair. (.....)

Test Yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The government created a/an ..... for economic reform over the next decade.
   a) debate b) discussion c) schedule d) roadmap
2. The government made new ..... policies to support workers and poor families.
   a) economics b) economic c) economical d) economy
3. All people have the same human ....., like freedom and safety.
   a) rights b) laws c) rules d) principles
4. Education and health are considered the main ..... of national progress.
   a) infrastructure b) weaknesses c) pillars d) systems
5. Fever and cough are common ..... of influenza.
   a) symptoms b) flags c) problems d) signals
6. The child received a/an ..... against measles الحصبة at the local health center.
   a) security b) insurance c) vaccination d) advantage
7. The police will ..... the cause of the fire to know the real criminal.
   a) check b) investigate c) solve d) make
8. The interviewer asked me about my ..... and weaknesses. Luckily, I had prepared them.
   a) strengths b) accounts c) rights d) campaigns
9. The country held a ..... meeting with leaders from nearby states.
   a) regional b) local c) manual d) national
10. After the accident, his ..... took several months in the hospital.
    a) leadership b) development c) recovery d) strength
11. The store is famous for selling ..... clothes made of comfortable materials.
    a) high-quality b) low-quality c) unequal d) social
12. The government's ..... aims at supporting all local companies to improve efficiency.
    a) strategy b) society c) religion d) economy
13. He applied for the ..... of manager at the international company.
    a) career b) location c) position d) work
14. A large ..... of students passed the exam with very high marks.
    a) percentage b) percent c) rate d) part
15. Student ..... in school activities improves teamwork and communication skills.
    a) support b) presence c) participation d) involvement

Language

16. Egypt has ..... vision for the future.
a) clearly b) in a clear way c) a clear d) clear

17. We were happy as our new flat was ..... decorated.
a) color b) colorfully c) colored d) colorful

18. Although I told him a silly joke, my friend laughed quite ..... .
a) loudest b) louder c) loudly d) in a loud

19. You must send payments ..... . We deal on a strict cash basis.
a) regularity b) regularisation c) regular d) regularly

20. He did not pass the course as ..... as he thought he would.
a) easily b) easy c) easier d) easiest

21. The cost of living has risen ..... these days all over the world.
a) dramatic b) dramatical c) dramatically d) drama

22. All my friends speak ..... .
a) fluently English b) fluent English
c) English more fluent d) English fluent

23. As he was found ..... the scene of the robbery السرقة with a gun in his hand, he was arrested.
a) nearest b) nearing c) nearly d) near

24. That's a/an ..... amazing picture.
a) fairly b) hardly c) absolutely d) bit

25. You don't have to answer so ..... if I ask you a simple question.
a) sharp b) sharply c) sharpness d) sharpen

26. Sara thought that the film was ..... interesting.
a) terribly b) extreme c) extremely d) absolute

27. The movie was ..... amazing; I want to watch it again.
a) very b) absolutely c) a bit d) slightly

28. You need to be ..... tall to be a good basketball player.
a) extremely b) fantastic c) extreme d) terrible

29. You can't win team games without working very ..... with the other people on your team.
a) hardly b) harden c) harder d) hard

30. The teacher read my essay and checked everything I had written very ..... .
a) care b) careful c) carefully d) carefulness

Study... Part 2

Lesson 3: Egypt's Ambitious Projects
Lesson 4: Egypt Education Vision 2030
Lesson 5: Writing a Blog Post

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

competitive (adj)	تنافسى	enhance (v) (d)	يعزز/يحسّن	prosperous (adj)	مزدهر/ناجح
cornerstone (n)	حجر الأساس	illiteracy (n)	الأمية	sectors (n)	قطاعات
empower (v) (ed)	يمكّن	memorization (n)	حفظ		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

access (n) (v) (ed)	إمكانية الوصول/يتمكن من الدخول	creativity (n)	إبداع	glorious (adj)	مجيد/عظيم
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز	critical thinking	التفكير النقدى	guides (n)	أدلة/مرشدون
achievement (n)	إنجاز	curricula (n)	مناهج	heritage (n)	تراث
administrative (adj)	إدارى	determination (n)	إصرار/عزم	human capital	رأس المال البشرى (القوى العاملة)
advanced (adj)	متقدم	digital (adj)	رقمى	impressive (adj)	مثير للإعجاب
ambitious (adj)	طَمُوح	display (v) (ed) (n)	يعرض/عرض	including (prep)	مشتملًا على
artifacts (n)	قطع أثرية	effective (adj)	فعّال	industries (n)	صناعات
attract (v) (ed)	يجذب	efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	innovation (n)	ابتكار
beneficial (adj)	مفيد	efforts (n)	جهود	installations (n)	منشآت
blog (n)	مدونة	eliminate (v) (d)	يقضى على/يزيل	intend (v) (ed)	ينوى
bright (adj)	مشرق/ذكى	emphasize (v) (d)	يؤكد/يشدد على	interactive (adj)	تفاعلى
burden (n)	عبء	entire (adj)	بالكامل (أجمع)	knowledgeable (adj)	واسع المعرفة
childhood (n)	طفولة	exchange (n) (v) (d)	تبادل/يتبادل	large-scale (adj)	واسع النطاق
confidently (adv)	بثقة	exist (v) (ed)	يوجد/يوجد	leading (adj)	رائد/بارز/قيادى
congestion (n)	ازدحام	expand (v) (ed)	يوسّع/يتوسع	ongoing (adj)	مستمر
connect (v) (ed)	يربط/يتصل	expansion (n)	توسع	outdated (adj)	قديم/متجاوز
continuous (adj)	مستمر	global stage	الساحة العالمية	outlined (adj)	موضح/محدد

pass (v) (ed) يمر/ينجح	remarkable (adj) ملحوظ/رائع	spaces (n) مساحات
permanently (adv) بشكل دائم	renewable (adj) متجدد	specific (adj) محدد
position (v) (ed) يضع/يحدد	replace (v) (d) يستبدل	strengthen (v) (ed) يعزز/يقوى
present (v) (ed) يعرض/يقدم	responsibility (n) مسئولية	struggle (v) (d) (n) يكافح/صراع
priceless (adj) لا يقدر بثمن	restoration (n) ترميم/استعادة	technical (adj) فنى/تقنى
problem-solving (n) حل المشكلات	rote (n) الصَّمّ (حفظ بدون فهم)	transform (v) (ed) يحوّل
progress (n/v) تقدم	route (n) طريق	trend (n) اتجاه/نزعة
prosper (v) (ed) يزدهر	serve (v) (d) يخدم	visionary (adj) صاحب رؤية/حالم
redesign (v/n) إعادة تصميم	shape (v) (d) (n) يشكل/شكل	vlog (n) مدونة فيديو
reduce (v) (d) يقلل	significantly (adv) بشكل ملحوظ	
reflect (v) (ed) يعكس/يتأمل	smoothly (adv) بسهولة/بسلاسة	vocational (adj) مهنى
reform (n) (v) (ed) إصلاح	solar (adj) شمسى	

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Reading English novels can ..... your vocabulary and grammar skills.
a) enhance b) focus c) decline d) intend

2. The ..... rate is high in this village, that's why people can't find good jobs.
a) pollution b) learning c) illiteracy d) education

3. A/An ..... society offers education, jobs, and good living conditions for all.
a) proud b) outdated c) prosperous d) poor

4. The government invests in health and education ..... to improve people's lives.
a) parts b) sectors c) divisions d) yields

5. The university offers ..... courses in engineering and computer science.
a) increased b) challenged c) advanced d) connected

6. With hard work, students can ..... excellent results in their final exams.
a) lose b) achieve c) drop d) believe

7. The school hired new staff for ..... work like schedules and student records.
a) artistic b) musical c) scientific d) administrative

8. The museum displayed ancient ..... related to the pharaohs in a special exhibition.
a) artifacts b) machines c) installations d) spaces

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

The GEM (Grand Egyptian Museum) المتحف المصرى الكبير	enroll in يسجل فى	move forward يتقدم/يمضى قدمًا
(be) designed with مصمم بـ	from across the globe من جميع أنحاء العالم	position ... on يضع...على
access to الوصول إلى	infer about يستنتج عن	set an example for يضرب مثلًا لـ
accessible to متاح لـ	invest in يستثمر فى	type of نوع من
capable of قادر على	keep up with يواكب/يلحق بـ	
create jobs for يوفر وظائف لـ	key to مفتاح لـ/أساس	

Derivatives — المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
administer يُدير	administration إدارة	administrative إدارى
compete يتنافس	competition منافسة	competitive تنافسى
enhance يُحسِّن/يُطوِّر	enhancement تحسين/تطوير	enhanced مُحسَّن
expand يُوسِّع	expansion توسيع/توسّع	expansive واسع/شاسع expandable قابل للتوسيع
innovate يُبدع/يُجدِّد	innovation ابتكار	innovative مُبتكِر/مُجدِّد
interact يتفاعل	interaction تفاعل	interactive تفاعلى
lead يقود	leader قائد leadership قيادة	leading رائد/بارز/قيادى
prosper يزدهر	prosperity ازدهار	prosperous مزدهر/ناجح
strengthen يُقوِّى	strength قوة	strong قوى

Examples — تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Good food and exercise enhance your health. (v)
- The new update is an enhancement to the phone's camera. (n)
- I bought a phone with an enhanced battery life. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
achievement إنجاز/نجاح	accomplishment/success	failure/defeat فشل/هزيمة
advanced متقدّم	progressive/developed	basic/primitive أساسى/بدائى/بسيط
beneficial مُفيد	advantageous/helpful/useful	harmful/detrimental/useless ضار/عديم الفائدة
continuous مستمر/متواصل	constant/ongoing/uninterrupted	interrupted/discontinuous/occasional متقطع/متباعد
enhance يُحسّن/يُطوّر	improve/boost	diminish/weaken يُضعِف/يُقلّل
illiteracy أُمّية	ignorance/unawareness	literacy/knowledge معرفة القِراءة و الكِتابة/المَعرِفة
impressive مُثير للإعجاب	remarkable/striking/outstanding	unimpressive/ordinary/dull عادى/باهت
outdated قديم/عفا عليه الزمن	old-fashioned/obsolete/antiquated	modern/current/updated حديث/مُعاصر
permanently بشكل دائم	forever/constantly	temporarily/briefly مؤقتًا/لفترة وجيزة
vocational مِهنى/تِقنى	occupational/technical	academic/theoretical أكاديمى/نظرى

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Marwan is ..... to pass his exams and study medicine next year.
a) determination b) determining c) determine d) determined

2. The hotel has an ..... garden where visitors can walk freely and relax.
a) expand b) expansion c) expands d) expansive

3. Teachers should ..... an example for their students through good behavior.
a) have b) set c) get d) cause

4. The new factory will ..... jobs for local people.
a) do b) carry out c) solve d) create

5. The library is accessible ..... all students at the university.
a) for b) with c) to d) by

6. It's hard to keep ..... the latest technology these days.

a) up b) up with c) with d) for

7. Many students choose vocational education to learn practical skills. The synonym of the word "vocational" is ..... .

a) academic b) theoretical c) technical d) obsolete

8. Many people think landlines are outdated and no longer useful today. The antonym of the word "outdated" is ..... .

a) remarkable b) constant c) significant d) modern

Reading Text (1)

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Egypt Education Vision 2030

Education is a cornerstone of Egypt Vision 2030, which aims to create competitive, balanced, and different types of industries or sectors. The vision emphasizes the development of a high-quality education system that is accessible to all Egyptians. Transforming education is a key to empowering citizens and driving sustainable development.

To achieve these goals, several efforts have been introduced. Curricula are being redesigned to focus on creativity, critical thinking, and problem-solving rather than rote memorization. New technologies have been introduced in classrooms to enhance the learning experience. Teachers are receiving continuous training to improve their teaching methods and keep up with global educational trends.

Egypt Vision 2030 also focuses on reducing illiteracy, expanding access to early childhood education, and increasing the number of students enrolled in technical and vocational training. By 2030, the government hopes to build a generation that is not only knowledgeable but also capable of innovation and leadership.

Although challenges such as funding and infrastructure still exist, the responsibility to educational reform reflects Egypt's determination to invest in its human capital. The changes being made today are intended to create a brighter, more prosperous future for the entire nation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

a) Egypt is struggling to fund its education system.
b) Egypt Vision 2030 aims to transform education to support development.
c) Technology is replacing teachers in Egypt and all around the world.
d) Students prefer vocational training over traditional education.

2. What is the key to empowering citizens?

a) The impact of technology on Egypt's economy in general.
b) Transforming education is a key for empowering citizens.
c) The history of education reforms in Africa and Egypt.
d) The challenges of building new schools in rural areas.

3. According to the passage, what is one specific change being made to education?

a) Schools are being closed.
b) Exams are being eliminated.
c) Teachers are given ongoing training.
d) Students are leaving school early.

4. What can be inferred about Egypt's view on education?

a) It is seen as a burden.
b) It is only important for young children.
c) It is considered important for national progress.
d) It is not expected to change soon.

Reading Text (2)

The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum is one of Egypt's most ambitious cultural projects.

Located near the Pyramids of Giza, it is designed to be the largest archaeological museum in the world. The idea behind the museum is to protect Egypt's priceless treasures and present them in a modern way that attracts visitors from across the globe.

The museum will display more than 100,000 artifacts, including the complete collection of King Tutankhamun's tomb for the first time. Advanced technology such as digital screens, interactive guides, and 3D models will help visitors learn about ancient Egyptian history in a new and exciting way.

The GEM is not only a museum but also a research and education center. It includes spaces for restoration, training, and cultural exchange. The project has created jobs for many Egyptians and supports tourism, which is an important part of the national economy.

The Grand Egyptian Museum reflects Egypt's vision to connect its glorious past with the future, making history accessible to new generations while strengthening Egypt's role as a leader in world heritage.

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Egypt has recently launched several ambitious projects that are shaping its future in remarkable ways. One of the most impressive examples is the New Administrative Capital, which is being built carefully to reduce congestion in Cairo. The city is designed with modern buildings, wide green spaces, and advanced technology that will serve citizens efficiently.

Another important project is the Benban Solar Park in Aswan. It is one of the world's largest solar installations and produces clean energy sustainably. Engineers worked hard and skilfully to complete it, making Egypt a leading country in renewable energy.

The Suez Canal expansion is also a notable achievement. The project was finished quickly and has increased international trade routes significantly. Ships can now pass more smoothly, saving both time and money.

These projects are not only large-scale but also highly beneficial. They improve daily life for Egyptians and position the country strongly on the global stage. With such visionary initiatives, Egypt is moving forward confidently and setting a bright example for other nations.

Definitions

	التعريفات
cornerstone حجر الأساس	something that is extremely important because everything else depends on it
competitive تنافسى	determined or trying very hard to be more successful than other people or businesses
enhance يعزز/يحسّن	to increase or improve the quality, value, or extent of something
empower يمكّن	to give someone the authority, power, or confidence to do something
illiteracy الأمية	the inability عدم القدرة to read or write
memorization حفظ	the process of learning something so that you remember it perfectly
prosperous مزدهر/ناجح	successful, flourishing financially
sector قطاع	a part of an area of activity, especially of business, trade, etc.

Notes on Vocabulary

1	**international**	دولى / بين أكثر من دولة	- Surely, the international trade was affected by COVID-19 precautionary measures.
	global	عالمى / كونى / شامل (يؤثر على العالم)	- The rise of temperature is a global climate problem. - We are taking a global view of our business.
2	**route**	مسار مخطط أو خط سير	- The driver chose the fastest route to the airport.
	way	طريق / وسيلة / أسلوب (طريق مادى، أو وسيلة، أو أسلوب عمل شىء)	- Hard work is the only way to success. - Can you show me the way to the train station?
	road	طريق بشكل عام يربط بين منطقتين	- The road to my village is very narrow.
3	**memorize**	يحفظ	Students have different ways to memorize important notes.
	memorialize	يخلد ذكرى	An artist made an impressive mural جدارية to memorialize our great soldiers.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The GPS always chooses the fastest ..... to your destination.
a) sector b) route c) cornerstone d) root

2. Eman found a smart ..... to solve the difficult problem in her math exam.
a) way b) road c) route d) street

3. The two countries signed a/an ..... agreement to protect the environment together.
a) international b) local c) personal d) global

4. Pollution has become a ..... problem that no country can solve alone.
a) local b) regional c) global d) national

5. ..... means "the most important part, on which everything else depends."
a) Stability b) Sector c) Cornerstone d) Rock

6. The state of not knowing how to read or write is called ..... .
a) illiteracy b) memorization c) enhancement d) sector

7. To give someone the power or ability to do something means to ..... them.
a) enhance b) empower c) compete d) prosper

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Trust is the ..... of every successful friendship and human relationship.
   a) block b) cornerstone c) road d) report
2. The new training program aims to ..... workers' skills and confidence.
   a) examine b) strengthen c) struggle d) grow
3. Campaigns to reduce ..... are important for economic and social growth.
   a) illiteracy b) weakness c) employment d) hunger
4. Japan is a/an ..... country with advanced technology and leading education.
   a) poor c) affecting d) international b) prosperous
5. Tourism and agriculture are important ..... of the national economy.
   a) jobs b) work c) sectors d) factories
6. Language learning requires practice, not just ..... of vocabulary and rules.
   a) memorization b) thinking c) creativity d) logic
7. Solar and wind energy are examples of ..... resources.
   a) renewable b) limited c) controllable d) clear
8. Wearing smartwatches is a fashion ..... among teenagers.
   a) habit b) custom c) tradition d) trend
9. The founder of this corporation شركة is a/an ..... leader with great ideas for the future.
   a) ordinary b) common c) visionary d) simple
10. The company started a ..... housing project for thousands of families.
    a) large-scale b) small c) limited d) tiny
11. The school replaced its ..... computers with modern ones.
    a) new b) recent c) outdated d) advanced
12. The coach will ..... the players carefully on the football field.
    a) install b) position c) remove d) push
13. The school offers ..... training for several crafts as a part of its intiative.
    a) academic b) general c) theoretical d) vocational
14. Winning the international award was her greatest career ..... .
    a) mistake b) achievement c) cornerstone d) industry
15. The young man is very ..... and hopes to start his own company soon.
    a) lazy b) weak c) quiet b) ambitious
16. Paying high taxes is a heavy ..... on small businesses and startups.
    a) burden b) gift c) help d) support

17. The modern development ..... our determination to be part of the civilized society.
a) reflects b) absorbs c) hides d) blocks

18. Good teachers encourage ..... thinking when solving difficult problems.
a) priceless b) renewable c) serious d) critical

19. The government is about to inaugurate تفتتح El Dabaa Nuclear Power Plant ..... .
a) installations b) buildings c) machines d) projects

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20. Students should ..... with their teachers to understand the lessons more clearly.
a) interaction b) interact c) interactive d) interacted

21. We seek to make our country ..... with strong industries and high living standards.
a) prosperity b) prosper c) prospered d) prosperous

22. The company decided to ..... forward with its new plan after the meeting.
a) keep b) carry c) move d) stay

23. Thousands of people from ..... the globe came to watch the World Cup.
a) across b) whole c) after d) below

24. The long ..... between the two cities was full of cars and buses.
a) route b) street c) road d) way

25. The city will host a/an ..... conference about climate change in the world next summer.
a) global b) international c) local d) national

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. A healthy diet is beneficial for your body and mind. The two synonyms of "beneficial" are ..... .
a) harmful b) advantageous c) helpful d) mutual e) risky

27. The new engine will enhance the performance of the machine. The two antonyms of the verb "enhance" are ..... .
a) diminish b) strengthen c) forget d) boost e) weaken

28. The player's performance was so impressive that everyone admired it. The two synonyms of the word "impressive" are ..... .
a) outstanding b) usual c) ordinary d) unimpressive e) remarkable

29. The event welcomed people who came from ..... to attend the international conference.
a) all over the world b) all globe c) local world
d) across the globe e) nearly

30. The new hospital is designed with advanced technology to provide better health care. The synonyms of the word "advanced" are ..... .
a) developed b) progressive c) primitive d) imaginary e) quick

B Language

Important Notes

نقاط مهمة على الصفات والأحوال:

1 بالإضافة إلى وصف الفعل والصفة فإن الحال يصف أيضًا الحال مثله أو جملة كاملة:

They started the race slowly.	الحال يصف الفعل
He is an incredibly amazing cook.	الحال يصف الصفة
He cooks really amazingly. (very well)	الحال يصف الحال
Interestingly, he won the first medal.	الحال يصف الجملة

2 نستخدم الظروف التالية قبل الصفات الشديدة بمعنى جدًا أما فى الصفات العادية فنستخدم (very).

(terribly – absolutely – awfully – really – completely – totally – awfully – pretty – entirely – incredibly)

- Mr. Ahmed is a very good teacher.
- Mr. Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

ومن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلى:

Ordinary	Extreme		Ordinary	Extreme	
big	enormous/huge	ضخم	tired	exhausted	منهك
bad	awful/terrible	فظيع	frightened	terrified	هلع
angry	furious	حانق	happy	delighted	مُغتَبِط
surprised	amazed	مذهول	cold	freezing	متجمد
clean	spotless	نظيف جدًا	good	wonderful/excellent	ممتاز
crowded	packed	مُكتَظ	funny	hilarious	مضحك جدًا
hungry	starving	يَموت جوعًا	old	ancient	عتيق
interesting	fascinating	خَلّاب	small	tiny	دقيق
clever	brilliant	بارع	pretty	gorgeous	رائع

لاحظ هناك بعض الظروف التى تُستخدم مع الصفات والظروف الأخرى:

almost	تَقْرِيبًا	partly	إلى حد ما/جُزْئِيًّا	a lot/much	جدًا	a little	قليل
enough	بدرجة كافية	too	أكثر من اللازم/جدًا	just	فَقَط/تَقْرِيبًا/بِصعوبَة	a bit	قليل

- تستخدم too فى الحالات السلبية لبيان عدم استحسان الأمر ويمكن أن يأتى بعدها صفة ثم to + inf.

- Your music is too noisy. I can't focus.
- Your music is too boring to enjoy.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After running the marathon, he was not just tired; he was ..... exhausted.
   a) very b) completely c) real d) complete
2. She didn't just get angry; she was ..... when she saw the broken window.
   a) furious b) very furious c) a furious d) a little furious
3. The tea is ..... hot to drink right now. You will burn your tongue.
   a) very b) incredibly c) too d) absolutely
4. Whoever made the cake did a ..... job.
   a) wonder b) wonderfully c) wonderful d) more wonderfully
5. That's a/an ..... amazing picture.
   a) absolutely b) hardly c) fairly d) bit

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. The test was real difficult, but I think I passed. (.....)
2. After the long marathon, the runner was very exhausted. (.....)
3. I was very terrified during the horror movie. (.....)
4. She quick finished her homework so she could go out. (.....)
5. The new park is too beautiful; everyone loves going there. (.....)

EXTRA POINTS:

تنقسم الأحوال التى تصف الفعل إلى:

1 الطريقة (manner) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How.

They are eagerly بلهفة/بِشَوْق waiting for the e-mail.

2 المكان (place) تجيب عن السؤال بـ Where.

There is a movie theater nearby بالقُرْبِ.

3 الزمن (time) تجيب عن السؤال بـ When.

I'll meet you tomorrow.

4 التكرار (frequency) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How often

She is always ready to help. He often complains about the salary.

لاحظ

- عندما يأتى اثنان أو أكثر من الأحوال يكون الترتيب كالآتى:

(manner + place + time).
Ali is studying quietly in his room now.

- لو كان فى الجملة فعل من أفعال الحركة مثل go/come/leave يكون الترتيب كالآتى:

(place + manner + time).
He came to work by bus this morning.

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After studying for weeks, she felt ..... prepared for the important exam.
a) confident b) confidently c) confidence d) confidential

2. The speaker's argument was ..... and she presented the details of her idea.
a) logical b) logically c) a logical d) in logically

3. The professor responded ..... to the difficult questions from his students.
a) patient b) in patiently c) in a patient d) patiently

4. I'm going to ..... next term, because the exams are getting closer.
a) studying hard b) study hardly c) hardly study d) study hard

5. Sara thought that the movie was ..... interesting.
a) terribly b) extremely c) extreme d) absolute

6. The play was really ..... . We couldn't stop laughing.
a) hilarious b) hilariously c) a hilarious d) a & b

7. The teacher read my essay and checked everything I had written very ..... .
a) carefully b) careful c) care d) carefulness

8. In 2015, Messi was ..... famous and had scored most of the goals for his team.
a) a bit b) a little c) rather d) incredibly

9. He always gets low marks in math. He's ..... hopeless.
a) fairly b) quite c) a bit d) absolutely

10. She looked ..... at the children.
a) happy b) happily c) happiness d) happiest

11. My mother's food always ..... .
a) taste delicious b) tastes delicious
c) delicious taste d) tastes deliciously

12. Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off ..... .
a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically

13. Everyone admires her because she plays the violin very ..... .
a) well b) good c) better d) best

14. We were allowed to walk ..... around the aircraft during the flight.
a) free b) freedom c) freeing d) freely

15. As there was still much time, we walked ..... to school.
a) slowly b) slow c) quick d) quickly

16. ....., I have found my lost wallet under my desk.
a) In fortunate way b) Fortunate
c) Fortunately d) Really fortunate

17. I haven't eaten for 5 hours, so I'm getting quite ..... .

a) hungrily b) hungriest c) hungry d) hunger

18. They performed the experiment ..... .

a) scientific b) scientifically c) science d) scientifical

19. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) He works hard. b) He works hardly.

c) He arrived lately at the party. d) The bird flew highly in the sky.

20. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Yasser has a good chance to win the game.

b) Yasser has a well chance to win the game.

c) Yasser has a better chance to win the game than others.

d) Yasser has the best chance to win the game.

21. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) I speak English fluently now.

b) I speak fluent English now.

c) I speak fluently English now.

d) I speak English more fluently now than last year.

22. Which sentence is correctly structured?

a) The food looked perfect good to me.

b) The food looked perfectly well to me.

c) The food looked perfect well to me.

d) The food looked perfectly good to me.

23. Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

a) Hatem is a fast runner. b) This soup smells badly.

c) You should speak politely with others. d) What a wonderful book!

24. Your bag is ..... my bag. It is the same color, size, and price.

a) slightly different from b) almost as expensive as

c) exactly the same as d) not similar to

25. My friend was ..... furious when we laughed at him/her.

a) very b) slightly c) a little d) absolutely

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Mr. Khaled treats us very well. (good)
2. Mom spoke in an angry way when she saw the mess in our room. (angrily)
3. The shelf is very high, no one can touch it. (too)
4. The teacher used the smart board effectively through the lesson. (effective)
5. Your performance is amazing; you will be a great person. (amazingly)

Test Yourself | Part 2 | Lessons 3, 4 & 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Using technology in class will ..... students' learning and understanding.
   a) build b) enhance c) damage d) deduce
2. Governments fight ..... by building schools and offering free education.
   a) knowledge b) poverty c) education d) illiteracy
3. The country's economy has many ....., such as transportation, banking, and energy.
   a) sectors b) sections c) branches d) areas
4. Education of the citizens is the ..... of the country's progress.
   a) cornerstone b) principle c) rule d) law
5. Bright colors and lights can ..... children to the new toy shop.
   a) attract b) ignore c) attach d) reject
6. The classroom looked ..... after the walls were painted and the lamps were changed.
   a) dark b) gloomy c) bright d) advanced
7. Many students use flashcards to help with the ..... of main points.
   a) prosperity b) competition c) memorization d) empowerment
8. She spent her ..... happily playing in the gardens of her village.
   a) youth b) childhood c) adulthood d) old age
9. Football is a very ..... sport where teams fight hard to win.
   a) quiet b) easy c) competitive d) affordable
10. She spoke ..... during the interview and impressed all the teachers.
    a) shyly b) nervously c) silently d) confidently
11. Traffic ..... in big cities is an issue that causes delays every morning.
    a) congestion b) movement c) silence d) peace
12. Drawing and painting lessons help students show their ..... .
    a) memory b) logic c) rote d) creativity
13. Modern school ..... have been developed to keep up with the age of technology.
    a) memorization b) curricula c) programs d) roadmaps
14. Students now use ..... devices like tablets and laptops for their lessons.
    a) manual b) mechanical c) digital d) paper
15. The new campaign aims to ..... hunger in poor areas.
    a) eliminate b) create c) increase d) take off

Language

16. They were ..... delighted with the service in this hotel.

a) very b) a bit c) extreme d) absolutely

17. Mona did ..... on her exam. She was sick that day.

a) terrible b) terribly c) good d) well

18. The children are very ..... . What are they doing?

a) quiet b) quietness c) quietly d) quieter

19. She didn't play ..... in the last game due to her injury.

a) competitive b) in a competitively way

c) competitively d) in competitive way

20. It's ..... hot in the desert in August, sometimes up to 50°C.

a) rather b) quite c) extremely d) slightly

21. How ..... can Ahmed Elgendy run?

a) quick b) quicker c) quickest d) quickly

22. It's a pretty village, but there's ..... anything to do here.

a) hardly b) harden c) hard d) hardship

23. Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives ..... .

a) rashly b) rash c) carefully d) in a carefully way

24. He looked at me ..... when I interrupted him.

a) angrily b) angry c) anger d) angered

25. She speaks ..... English.

a) fluent b) fluently c) fluency d) flute

26. There is ..... any water in the bottle; I need some, please.

a) almost b) hard c) hardly d) a hardly

27. As Ali loves nature, he paints forests and trees ..... .

a) well b) better c) good d) best

28. My daughter is ..... in English and wants to work as an interpreter.

a) the best fluent b) more fluent c) fluently d) fluent

29. Everyone admires Osama as he always works ..... .

a) hardness b) hardly c) hard d) a hard

30. Alaa is a friend of our family and he treats us ..... .

a) friendly b) in a friendly way c) friend d) friendship

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Writing a Blog Post كتابة منشور فى مدونة

A blog post is a piece of writing that is published on a website (called a "blog," which is short for "weblog"). It's like telling a story to a friend.

منشور المدوَّنة هو قطعة كتابية تُنشَر على موقع إلكترونى يُسمَّى «مدوَّنة»، إنه يشبه رواية قصة لصديق.

The elements of a blog post:

Introduction: المقدمة:

- Introduce your main topic and why it's important to you. قدم موضوعك وسبب أهميته بالنسبة لك.
- Share a personal connection that explains why you care about this topic.

شارك قصة شخصية تفسر اهتمامك بالموضوع.

Body Paragraphs: فقرات الموضوع:

- Explain your main ideas with details and examples. اشرح أفكارك الرئيسية بالتفاصيل وإعطاء الأمثلة.
- Share what has been challenging or rewarding about this topic.

شارك التحديات أو الأشياء المجزية فى الموضوع.

- Be specific and use examples. كن محددًا واستخدم أمثلة.

Conclusion: الخاتمة:

- Summarize your main point and leave the reader with a final thought.

لخص فكرتك الرئيسية واترك للقارئ الفكرة النهائية.

- You can end with a question to encourage readers to think about their own goals.

يمكن أن تختم بسؤال لتشجع القارئ ليفكروا فى أهدافهم الشخصية.

MODEL BLOG POST

My Vision for My Future Life

I believe education is the cornerstone of a prosperous future. My vision is to become a software engineer who contributes to Egypt's digital transformation. Currently, I'm enhancing my skills through online courses in programming and participating in school tech clubs. What excites me most is how technology can solve real-world problems—like creating apps that support healthcare or education. Although learning to code يبرمج is challenging, every small success feels rewarding. I'm also working on improving my English, as it will help me collaborate globally. My goal is to study computer science at university and eventually empower others through technology.

I'm confident that with hard work and focus, I can turn this vision into reality.

Practice Skills Exercises

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Egypt's future vision gives great attention to education and healthcare because they are the main pillars of progress. A strong education system helps young people gain knowledge and skills. This prepares them for jobs and encourages creativity. Good schools and universities also teach students about responsibility, teamwork, and respect for others. When students are well-prepared, they can contribute to building a modern and successful country.

Healthcare is equally important. A healthy population is more active and productive. Egypt's vision includes building new hospitals, improving medical services, and training doctors and nurses. The government also works on spreading health awareness so that people live better lives. Without good healthcare, even educated people may not be able to achieve their goals.

Education and healthcare are connected. If children are healthy, they can learn better. If adults are well-educated, they understand how to take care of their health. Together, these two sectors support social and economic growth.

Egypt believes that investing in people is the best way to secure a bright future. By focusing on education and healthcare, the country hopes to reduce poverty, create more jobs, and improve the quality of life for all citizens. This vision shows that Egypt is preparing not only for today, but also for the coming generations.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Education helps young people to ..... .
- a) become wealthy
- b) gain knowledge and skills
- c) forget their culture
- d) travel abroad only

2. The underlined word "they" refers to ..... .
- a) teachers
- b) doctors
- c) students
- d) hospitals

3. Why does the government train doctors and nurses?
- a) To increase health awareness.
- b) To improve medical services.
- c) To build schools.
- d) To reduce teamwork.

4. The passage suggests that without good healthcare, people ..... .
- a) may not reach their goals
- b) can be more productive
- c) work harder
- d) become rich easily

5. The main idea of the passage is "..... ".
- a) The importance of teamwork
- b) The role of education and healthcare in Egypt's future vision
- c) The value of hospitals only
- d) The role of teachers

6. Which of the following best sums up paragraph 2?

a) Education only matters.
b) The importance of healthcare in Egypt's vision.
c) Students need teamwork.
d) Doctors should not study more.

7. Why does Egypt invest in education and healthcare together?

a) To reduce the role of teachers.
b) To prepare for the future generations.
c) To avoid teamwork.
d) To increase problems.

8. What is one goal of Egypt's vision?

a) To reduce poverty.
b) To increase ignorance.
c) To stop hospitals.
d) To reduce schools.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

African lions are larger than other big wild cats, including leopards, cheetahs, and jaguars. In fact, only Asian tigers are bigger. The African lion is the only cat to live in cooperative groups. These groups are called prides. A pride usually has no more than three unrelated adult males. Together with adult females (lionesses) and young cubs, a pride has from three to over 30 members. The females are related, and they usually stay together for life.

Living in a pride gives African lions benefits other cats don't have. Other cats live alone, coming together only to mate. This means the mother must raise the young and provide all protection and food. African lion mothers, however, have a pride of lions to help. Pride members communicate vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling.

They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking. The largest male lion's job is to protect the pride, especially the cubs. Males are usually gentle with cubs in their own pride, but not with the cubs in other prides.

Females, meanwhile, do most of the hunting. With their smaller size, they can sneak closer to prey through tall savannah grasses. They hunt mostly during the night and in the early morning when light is poor. Large, fast animals like zebras, buffalo, wild hogs, and gazelles are the lions' favorite prey.

However, these fast animals often escape. So, lions also hunt smaller animals, such as hares, birds, and reptiles. They also use their size and numbers to steal dead prey from other predators, including cheetahs and leopards. That's why cheetahs drag their kills to hiding places and leopards pull theirs into trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. According to the article, how are lions different from any other wild cats?

a) Lions are the largest wild cat species on earth.
b) Lions are the only wild cats that live in Africa.
c) Lions are the only wild cats that are endangered.
d) Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.

2. What is one reason why female lions, the lionesses, do the hunting instead of the males?

a) The females run faster than the males and can catch up to their prey quicker.
b) The females are stronger than the males and can take down their prey easier.
c) The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
d) The females have better eyesight than the males to spot prey easier.

3. Lions hunt ..... .

a) large, fast animals only
b) smaller animals only
c) dead animals
d) both small and large animals

4. The synonym of the word "prey" is "..... ".

a) friend
b) victim
c) companion
d) violent

5. Living in groups is good for African mother lions because ..... .

a) the members of the group help them raise the cubs
b) the males are kind to them
c) they don't hunt, so they don't run
d) males take care of them

6. Cheetahs and leopards may hide their prey ..... .

a) to keep them fresh
b) to eat them with their families
c) to preserve them
d) because lions can eat the prey by force

7. The pride members can communicate through many ways except ..... .

a) odor
b) facial expressions
c) drawing
d) licking

8. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The Life of the Lioness
b) The Species of Cats
c) The Prey
d) Prides and Individuals

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt's Vision 2030 represents an ambitious national strategy to achieve comprehensive sustainable development. Its pillars focus on building a competitive economy, and a just society that fosters innovation.

(a) تمثل رؤية مصر ٢٠٣٠ استراتيجية وطنية طموحة لتحقيق تنمية مستدامة شاملة. وتُركز ركائزها على بناء اقتصاد تنافسى، ومجتمع عادل يُعزز الابتكار.

(b) تمثل رؤية مصر ٢٠٣٠ خطة محلية بسيطة لتحقيق إصلاحات محدودة. وتُركز ركائزها على بناء اقتصاد مغلق، ومجتمع تقليدى يقاوم التغيير.

(c) تمثل رؤية مصر ٢٠٣٠ استراتيجية وطنية طموحة لتحقيق تنمية مستدامة شاملة. وتُهمل ركائزها بناء اقتصاد تنافسى، ومجتمع عادل يُعزز الابتكار.

(d) تمثل رؤية مصر ٢٠٣٠ استراتيجية وطنية طموحة لتحقيق تنمية اقتصادية فقط. وتُركز ركائزها على بناء اقتصاد تنافسى، ومجتمع عادل يُعزز التقاليد.

2. Organizing your life is a necessity if you want to achieve your most valuable goals. Well-organized people are the most successful and effective members in life.

a) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ضروريًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

b) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا فرعيًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر ثمنًا فالأشخاص المنظمون بجد هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

c) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا قانونيًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص الرياضيون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

d) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ثانويًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء ثراءً وفاعلية فى الحياة.

3. We should encourage young people to do voluntary work so that they could take part in solving the problems of society and help people in need.

a) يجب أن نقنع الشباب للقيام بالأعمال التطوعية حتى يتمكنوا من المشاركة فى حل مشاكل المجتمع ومساعدة الجيران.

b) يجب أن نشجع الشباب على القيام بالأعمال التطوعية حتى يتمكنوا من المشاركة فى حل مشاكل المجتمع ومساعدة المحتاجين.

c) يجب أن نشجع الطلاب على القيام بالأعمال التطوعية حتى يتمكنوا من المشاركة فى حل مشاكل المجتمع ومساعدة الآخرين.

d) يجب أن نكافئ الشباب على القيام بالأعمال التطوعية حتى يتمكنوا من المشاركة فى التعرف على مشاكل المجتمع ومساعدة المحتاجين.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. تعمل مصر بجد لتحقيق تقدم حقيقى من خلال تنفيذ مشاريع ضخمة بكفاءة عالية لضمان مستقبل مشرق للأجيال القادمة.

a) Egypt works diligent to achieve really progress by implementing massive projects with high efficiency to ensure a bright future for coming generations.

b) Egypt functions diligently to achieve real progress by implementing small projects with high efficiency to ensure a bright future for coming generations.

c) Egypt works diligently to achieve real progress by implementing massive projects with high efficiency to ensure a bright future for coming generations.

d) Egypt works diligently to achieve real progress by implementing high projects. with low efficiency to ensure a brightly future for coming generations.

5. تُولى مصر أولوية قصوى لتحسين جودة التعليم الفنى وتوسيع نطاقه لتأهيل الشباب لمتطلبات سوق العمل المحلى والدولى.

a) Egypt ignores the low priority of deteriorating the quality of technical education and limiting its scope to disqualify youth for the requirements of the local and international job market.

b) Egypt places the highest priority on improving the quality of technical education and expanding its scope to qualify youth for the requirements of the local and international job market.

c) Egypt places a low priority on discussing the quality of academic education and limiting its scope to qualify youth for the requirements of the local job market only.

d) Egypt places the highest priority on improving the quality of private education and expanding its scope to qualify youth for the requirements of the international job market only.

6. يُعد المتحف المصرى الكبير أحد أهم المشـاريع الثقافية فى العالم، حيث سـيضم آلاف القطع الأثرية الفريدة وسيساهم بشكل كبير فى دعم السياحة والاقتصاد المصرى.

a) The GEM is considered one of the least important cultural projects in the world, as it will invite thousands of unique artifacts and will significantly harm tourism and the Egyptian economy.

b) The GEM is considered one of the most important commercial projects in the world, as it will house thousands of modern artworks and will contribute solely to supporting tourism.

c) The Grand Egyptian Museum is considered one of the most important cultural projects in the world, as it will export hundreds of common artifacts and will contribute minimally to supporting tourism and the Egyptian economy.

d) The GEM is considered one of the most important cultural projects in the world, as it will house thousands of unique artifacts and will significantly contribute to supporting tourism and the Egyptian economy.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of (150–180) words on the following:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

Enrich your vocabulary

ambitious	طموح	pillars	ركائز	priority	أولوية
technical	فنى	artifacts	قطع أثريه/تحف	implement	ينفذ

Student's Book Corner

Vocabulary

1 Match the words to their meanings:

(A)	(B)
1. sustainable	a) important parts or strong supports of a system, idea, or structure
2. vision	b) complete and covering all or nearly all aspects of something
3. comprehensive	c) able to continue over time without causing harm to the environment, economy, or society
4. economic	d) a clear idea or plan for the future; something someone hopes to achieve
5. pillars	e) related to money, trade, jobs, or the production and use of goods and services
6. affordable	f) a new plan or program started to solve a problem
7. universal	g) not too expensive
8. chronic disease	h) the percentage of people who have received vaccines
9. equitable access	i) relating to or done by all people or things in the world
10. screening	j) fair and equal opportunities for all to get the same services
11. initiative	k) basic systems and services, such as hospitals and roads
12. vaccination coverage	l) checking people for diseases before they show symptoms
13. infrastructure	m) a long-term disease, like diabetes or asthma

Language

2 Fill in the blank: choose Adjective or Adverb:

1. She sings ..... . (beautiful/beautifully)
2. She speaks ..... (fluent/fluently) English.
3. He ran ..... to catch the bus. (quick/quickly)
4. The soup tastes ..... . (delicious/deliciously)
5. This is a very ..... room. (bright/brightly)
6. He speaks English very ..... . (fluent/fluently)

3 **Rewrite the following sentences, using the words between brackets without changing the meaning of the sentences:**

1. The teacher explained the lesson. (clear)

.....

2. It was a (rain) day, so we stayed inside.

.....

3. He plays the piano. (skillful)

.....

4. The cat moved (silent) through the room.

.....

5. I felt very (happily) when I saw my results.

.....

4 **Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

1. She looked sadness at the broken vase. (.....)

2. He quick ran to the car. (.....)

3. The flowers smell sweetly. (.....)

4. He is a carefully driver. (.....)

Unit 3 Al-Azhar Corner

1 Finish the following dialog:

Samir is talking to his cousin Ehab after getting his university degree.

Ehab : Congratulations, Samir. You finally got your degree.

Samir: Thank you.

Ehab : It must have been hard to pass all these exams.

Samir: (1)..... . I worked very hard.

Ehab : What do you plan to do after that?

Samir: I don't know. What do you think?

Ehab : (2)..... .

Samir: A governmental job! No, I don't like that. I'm going to start a private business.

Ehab : That's great. (3).....?

Samir: I'm going to borrow money from my father.

Ehab : You seem to have a plan.

Samir: (4)..... .

Ehab : Great! I wish you good luck.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. After his parents' death, by whom was Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) first raised?
2. Who were the first people to believe in Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and accept Islam?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. What was Prophet Muhammad's (PBUH) profession in his early 20s?

a) A shepherd. b) A trader. c) A farmer. d) A soldier.

4. Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) began to call people to Islam ..... .

a) publicly b) in groups c) in his travels d) secretly

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Egypt will remain an oasis of security and safety in the Middle East region.

(B) Translate into English:

- يعتقد الخبراء أن مصر بها جميع مقومات السياحة التى يمكن أن تجعلها فى مقدمة دول العالم السياحية.

General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt focuses on three main .....: the economy, society, and the environment.
   a) pillars b) superstructures c) illnesses d) weaknesses
2. The vision ..... the sustainable development of all sectors of the government.
   a) emphasizes b) memorizes c) connects d) links
3. The government launched a new campaign to fight ..... by teaching adults how to read and write.
   a) enhancement b) sector c) illiteracy d) memorization
4. Learning a new skill can ..... your confidence and give you the power to achieve your goals.
   a) empower b) compete c) memorize d) prosper
5. She works in the healthcare ....., which is a specific part of the economy focused on medical services.
   a) cornerstone b) sector c) illiteracy d) route
6. The ..... nation will support the idea of free education for all citizens.
   a) included b) rural c) entire d) restored
7. The two countries agreed on several programs for cultural ..... .
   a) exchange b) market c) sale d) deal
8. My father was ..... respected by those who worked with him.
   a) great b) greatness c) greatly d) greatest
9. Train services have been ..... affected by the heavy snow.
   a) a bit b) very c) extreme d) seriously
10. The witness ..... recounted everything that had happened during the robbery.
    a) accurately b) accurate c) accurateness d) accrete
11. **A:** How does my son react to the lessons? **B:** He reacts ..... .
    a) active b) in an actively way c) actively d) in active way
12. The global birth rate has increased ..... over the past 20 years.
    a) dramatic b) dramatically
    c) very dramatic d) real dramatically
13. You can't win team games without working very ..... with the other people on your team.
    a) hardly b) harden c) harder d) hard

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You are a citizen of the country you were born in. Usually, citizens live in their country as loyal members of society. Many countries also have options, so people who are not natural-born citizens can become citizens of those countries. When they complete the requirements, they are called naturalized citizens. As a citizen of your country, you have some rights, duties, and responsibilities. The law of any country should guarantee the rights of all citizens, and the rights should be the same for all citizens. The rights of citizens are protected by the constitution.

A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom. A citizen who is accused of a crime has a right to a fair trial. In exchange for their rights, citizens have duties and responsibilities. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime, they must serve in the Armed Forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programs of the government. Good citizens vote in elections to express their opinions on how the government should be run.

In addition to national citizenship, people are citizens of a state and a city. They have similar rights and responsibilities at each level of citizenship.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. What protects the rights of the citizen in any country?
a) The citizenship. b) The responsibilities.
c) The constitution. d) The trial.

15. The best title for the passage is "……".
a) Asking the rights b) Paying taxes
c) The responsibilities of the citizenship d) Citizens' rights and responsibilities

16. "Doing what you are told" means …… .
a) obeying b) agreement
c) voting d) exchanging

17. People who vote in elections to express their opinions are …… .
a) volunteers b) respectable and noble
c) greedy d) selfish and noble

18. Naturalized citizens are those who …… .
a) were born in the same country b) participate in the elections
c) have duties not rights d) are asked for a set of requirements

19. When we pay taxes, we perform one of our …… .
a) duties b) rights
c) abilities d) advantages

20. What is not mentioned about the citizens' rights?
a) To speak freely. b) To adopt any religion.
c) To practice sports. d) To be judged fairly.

21. The underlined word "taxes" means …… .
a) money given to the bank b) money given to the prisoners
c) money given to the government d) services done to the state men

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilized society.

a) يحتـاج مجتمعنـا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يبنون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة مـن أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

b) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا أسباب جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

d) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة السريعة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

ـ لقد فشلت كل محاولات هدم المجتمع المصرى بسبب الوحدة الوطنية التى تمثل عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

a) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unit, which represents a major step in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

b) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which presents a minor obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

c) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which represents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

d) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the international unity, which presents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the steadiness of the Egyptian people.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around The World In Eighty Days)

1. Do you think Detective Fix was right to be suspicious of Fogg? Why or why not?
2. Do you think traveling without enjoying the scenery, like Fogg, is a waste of time? Why?
3. In your opinion, how does the author use Fix to build suspense?

25. Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"The great projects established in Egypt."

.....

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★ < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

(A) Vocabulary

1 Choose the (TWO) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. He works for a company that manufactures car parts. The synonyms of the word "manufactures" are ..... .
   a) produces b) makes c) cracks d) joins e) cleans
2. She is the founder and managing director of the company. The synonyms of the word "founder" are ..... .
   a) client b) agent c) employee
   d) originator e) establisher
3. There was a partnership based on mutual respect, trust, and understanding. The antonyms of the word "mutual" are ..... .
   a) common b) shared c) one- sided
   d) joint e) unilateral
4. This small apartment is not only cozy, but also affordable, making it a great choice for me. The antonyms of the word "affordable" are ..... .
   a) inexpensive b) expensive c) reasonable
   d) costly e) cheap
5. The successful branding and marketing of the new product has already boosted sales and increased profits. The synonyms of the word "boosted" are ..... .
   a) increased b) worsen c) improved
   d) decreased e) reduced

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. Egypt serves as a strategic ..... between Africa, the Middle East, and Europe.
   a) barrier b) gateway c) border d) economy
7. Egyptian companies are offering ..... to African students.
   a) funding b) scholarships c) procedures d) integration
8. Trade between Egypt and the Sudan is ..... rapidly.
   a) limiting b) declining c) expanding d) reducing
9. The solar project is a ..... in Egypt's renewable energy cooperation.
   a) limitation b) yield c) procedure d) milestone
10. Egyptian universities ..... scholarships every year.
    a) enhance b) offer c) highlight d) target
11. Farmers in dry regions benefit from ..... crops developed by scientists.
    a) stable b) hybrid c) rural d) annual

12. Talaat Harb founded Bank Misr with completely Egyptian ..... .
a) independence b) institutions c) capital d) setbacks

13. Language games are usually intended to encourage students' ..... .
a) interactive b) interaction c) interact d) interactively

14. A successful entrepreneur must be able to solve real ..... problems.
a) social b) foreign c) minor d) trivial

15. The government supports small businesses through financial ..... .
a) evolution b) investment
c) setbacks d) independence

16. "Think outside the box" means to ..... in a creative way.
a) follow rules b) avoid problems c) think differently d) work slowly

17. Flax is a plant used to make ..... .
a) fuel b) paper c) fabric d) medicine

18. Organic farming avoids the use of harmful ..... .
a) profits b) pesticides c) capital d) risks

19. Many villages are being turned from consumers into ..... .
a) exporters b) producers c) tourists d) investors

20. Egypt Vision 2030 is a long-term plan for ..... development.
a) sustainable b) temporary c) limited d) random

21. The strategy aims to improve people's lives in a ..... and balanced way.
a) unfair b) fair c) sudden d) secret

22. The education system is being redesigned to reduce ..... .
a) creativity b) fun c) technology d) illiteracy

23. The government is introducing new technologies to ..... learning.
a) reduce b) enhance c) ignore d) stop

24. Egypt's ..... position helps it lead regional development.
a) weak b) unique c) hidden d) small

25. Balanced development means using resources ..... .
a) carelessly b) wisely c) rarely d) slowly

(B) Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

26. Every year, Egypt ..... the African Development Forum.
a) hosts b) is hosting c) has hosted d) hosted

27. Right now, engineers ..... a new highway to the Sudan.
a) build b) are building c) have built d) built

28. The conference ..... next Monday at 10 a.m.
a) starts b) is starting c) has started d) started

29. The delegation ..... Paris next month.
a) visits b) is visiting c) has visited d) visited

30. Egyptian companies ..... goods to Africa for decades.
a) export b) are exporting
c) exported d) have been exporting

31. The construction project ..... longer than expected.
a) takes b) is taking c) has taken d) took

32. She felt sad because she ..... her wallet.
a) loses b) lost c) had lost d) was losing

33. By the time we arrived at the theater, the movie ..... .
a) starts b) started c) had started d) has started

34. When I got home, I realized I ..... my keys at the office.
a) leave b) left c) had left d) am leaving

35. They took the train because they ..... the bus.
a) miss b) missed c) had missed d) have missed

36. After he ..... dinner, he watched TV.
a) eats b) ate c) had eaten d) was eating

37. I couldn't enter the house because I ..... my keys at work.
a) forget b) forgot c) had forgotten d) forgets

38. When she called me, I ..... already ..... to bed.
a) had/been b) have/been c) had/gone d) have/gone

39. She speaks English ..... .
a) clear b) clearly c) clarity d) clears

40. He is a ..... student. He always gets high grades.
a) successful b) successfully c) succeed d) success

41. The teacher explained the lesson ..... .
a) careful b) carefully c) care d) cares

42. The team worked ..... to finish the project on time.
a) hard b) hardly c) hardness d) harder

43. The new curriculum is ..... designed to improve thinking skills.
a) careful b) carefully c) care d) cares

44. It is ..... cold outside.
a) few b) many c) too d) a lot

45. She answered the question in a ..... way.
a) logical b) logically c) logic d) logics

46. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he finished the meal.
b) He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he has finished the meal.
c) He realized he forgot his wallet after he had finished the meal.
d) He realized he had forgotten his wallet after he had finished the meal.

47. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) The tickets were sold out before we had reached the box office.
b) The tickets had been sold out before we reached the box office.
c) The tickets have been sold out before we reached the box office.
d) The tickets was sold out before we had reached the box office.

48. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) She go to the gym every morning.
b) She goes to the gym every morning.
c) She is going to the gym every morning.
d) She going to the gym every morning.

49. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) The children are playing outside right now.
b) The children is playing outside right now.
c) The children plays outside right now.
d) The children were playing outside every day.

50. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) She sings beautiful at the school concert.
b) She sings beautifully at the school concert.
c) She sings beauty at the school concert.
d) She sings more beautiful at the school concert.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

51. I was shocked when I saw the results. I didn't expect them to be so bad. (because)
52. The concert started after the audience took their seats. (before)
53. The documents were missing. Someone took them earlier. (had been taken)
54. He had left the office before it rained. (been)
55. After she had checked the engine, she wrote a report. (was)
56. She cleans her room every weekend. (usually)
57. Right now, the students are working on a science project. (at the moment)
58. He speaks very quietly. (in a quiet way)
59. The movie was boring, so I fell asleep. (bored)
60. We go to the beach every summer. (always)

61. It rains a lot in this city. (frequently)
62. He is very slow when he does his homework. (slowly)
63. My sister speaks French very well. (fluent)
64. She always arrives on time for work. (punctual)
65. They don't often go to the movie theater. (rarely)

(C) Translation

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

66. Egypt maintains strong political and economic ties with African nations through its active participation in the African Union and regional development initiatives.

a) تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واجتماعية قوية مع الدول الإفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة فى الاتحاد الإفريقى ومبادرات التنمية العالمية.
b) تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واقتصادية قوية مع الدول الإفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة فى الاتحاد الإفريقى ومبادرات التنمية الوطنية.
c) تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واقتصادية قوية مع الدول الإفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة فى الاتحاد الإفريقى ومبادرات التنمية الإقليمية.
d) تحافظ مصر على علاقات سياسية واجتماعية قوية مع الدول الإفريقية من خلال مشاركتها الفعالة فى الاتحاد الأوروبى ومبادرات التنمية الإقليمية.

67. Successful entrepreneurs take calculated risks, adapt to challenges, and turn their ideas into sustainable businesses.

a) رواد الأعمال الناجحون لا يُخاطرون بحذر، ويتكيفون مع التحديات، ويُحوّلون أفكارهم إلى مشاريع مؤقتة.
b) رواد الأعمال الناجحون يُخاطرون بحذر، ويتبنون مع التحديات، ويُحوّلون أموالهم إلى مشاريع مستدامة.
c) رواد الأعمال الناجحون يُخاطرون بحذر، ويتكيفون مع التحديات، ويُحوّلون أفكارهم إلى مشاريع مستدامة.
d) رواد الأعمال الناجحون يُخاطرون بحذر، ويتغاضون عن التحديات، ويُحوّلون أموالهم إلى مشاريع مستدامة.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

68. بصفتها جسرًا استراتيجيًا بين إفريقيا والشرق الأوسط، تُعزز مصر التبادل الثقافى والتعاون مع الدول الإفريقية فى مجالات مثل التجارة والتعليم والبنية التحتية.

a) As a strategic bridge between Africa and the Middle East, Egypt fosters cultural change and cooperation with African countries in areas like trade, education, and infrastructure.
b) As a strategic bridge between Africa and the Middle East, Egypt fosters cultural exchange and cooperation with African countries in areas like trade, education, and infrastructure.
c) As a strategic bridge among Africa and the Middle East, Egypt foresters cultural exchange and cooperation with African countries in areas like trade, education, and infrastructure.
d) As a strategic bridge between Africa and the Far East, Egypt fosters cultural change and cooperation with African countries in areas like carpentry, education, and infrastructure.

(D) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Entrepreneurship is the dynamic process of identifying opportunities, taking risks, and creating new ventures. It's not just about starting a business; it's a mindset characterized by innovation, adaptability, and a continuous drive to solve problems. At its core, entrepreneurship involves transforming a simple idea into a tangible product or service that adds value to society. This journey is often full of challenges, from securing funding and navigating market uncertainties to managing a growing team.

Entrepreneurs are catalysts for economic growth. They introduce new technologies, create jobs, and stimulate competition, which ultimately benefits consumers through better products and services. While some entrepreneurs are driven by the desire for financial gain, many are motivated by a passion to make a difference or a vision to revolutionize an industry. This intrinsic motivation fuels their perseverance and resilience, enabling them to overcome setbacks and learn from failures.

The success of a new venture often depends on a few key factors: a strong business plan, a deep understanding of the target market, and the ability to adapt to changing circumstances. Furthermore, building a supportive network of mentors, advisors, and collaborators is crucial. In today's interconnected world, entrepreneurship is more accessible than ever, thanks to advancements in technology and a global marketplace. It represents a powerful force for change, fostering creativity, and empowering individuals to shape their own destiny and, in turn, contribute to a more prosperous future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is that entrepreneurship is "……".

a) A simple way to get rich quickly
b) A complex process of risk- taking and innovation
c) Only for people with technical skills
d) Not important for economic development

2. Entrepreneurship is described as a process of ……

a) starting a large corporation
b) identifying opportunities and creating new ventures
c) securing bank loans for a business
d) working for a tech company

3. A key characteristic of an entrepreneurial mindset is .....
- a) avoiding all risks
- b) following established rules
- c) innovation and adaptability
- d) waiting for opportunities to arise

4. The passage suggests that the journey of an entrepreneur is often .....
- a) guaranteed to be profitable
- b) free of any challenges
- c) strictly guided by a business plan
- d) filled with uncertainties and setbacks

5. According to the passage, entrepreneurs contribute to economic growth by .....
- a) reducing consumer choices
- b) limiting competition
- c) introducing creating jobs
- d) increasing government regulations

6. The passage indicates that the success of a new venture depends on .....
- a) a supportive network and a strong business plan
- b) a large initial investment
- c) having no competitors
- d) avoiding all market uncertainties

7. The passage implies that in today's world, entrepreneurship is .....
- a) more difficult than in the past
- b) limited to a few specific countries
- c) more accessible due to technology
- d) primarily for large corporations

8. The ability to "adapt" means .....
- a) sticking to the original plan at all costs
- b) being flexible and changing direction when needed
- c) hiring new employees frequently
- d) focusing on a single, unchanging product

(E) Writing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following is the most effective way to improve the readability of a long blog post?
- a) Using complex technical terms.
- b) Breaking up content with subheadings, short paragraphs, and bullet points.
- c) Using one large block of text.
- d) Ignoring formatting and focusing solely on the text.

2. Why is it important to include relevant key words in your blog post?

a) They are a way to hide spam from search engines.

b) They help search engines understand the topic of your content, which can improve your ranking.

c) They are a mandatory part of every blog post template.

d) They make the post longer and more detailed.

3. Which phrase is appropriate for stating the purpose of an email?

a) "I don't know why I'm writing".

b) "I am writing to request a meeting."

c) "Maybe you'll read this".

d) "Just wanted to say hi".

4. To politely ask for information, you should say ..... .

a) "Tell me now"

b) "Give me the report"

c) "I need it yesterday"

d) "Could you please send the report?"

5. Which closing is most appropriate for a formal business email?

a) "Love, Sarah"

b) "Bye!"

c) "Best regards, Ali Hassan"

d) "See you!"

6. Which phrase is commonly used to express belief or opinion in a blog?

a) I don't care.

b) I think / I believe.

c) Maybe someone will.

d) It's not important.

7. "Students will learn to solve problems by using technology, not just memorize facts". This shows a focus on improving ..... skills.

a) computing b) critical thinking c) sleeping d) copying

8. A strong blog post about education reform should include ..... such as communication and teamwork.

a) soft skills b) video games c) holidays d) punishments

9. The word " ....." refers to building students' abilities and knowledge for the future.

a) tradition

b) human capital

c) silence

d) entertainment

2 Write a blog post about of about (150-180) on:

"Enhancing brand reputation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 4
Natural Disasters

Learning Outcomes

Reading	- Explore how to predict/prepare for natural disaster. - Identify the main idea and supporting details from texts on weather prediction.
Listening	- Identify specific information in audio on emergency preparedness, evaluate true/false statements, and complete sentences with vocabulary from the audio.
Speaking	- Participate in a role-play as a city planning team to discuss past mistakes after a natural disaster and create a five-point emergency plan.
Writing	- Identify the features of a formal report and compose one with clear findings and recommendations, use formal language, avoiding contractions.
Language	- Use comparative adjectives to compare between two persons or things. - Use superlative adjectives to compare between more than two persons or things.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

accuracy (n) دقة	kit (n) حقيبة/عدة	seismic (adj) زلزالى/مزلزل/مدوى
documents (n) وثائق	meteorologists (n) خبراء الأرصاد الجوية	supplies (n) إمدادات
drill (n) تدريب (كيفية التصرف فى حالة الطوارئ)	perishable (adj) قابل للتلف	tectonic plates الصفائح التكتونية
humidity (n) رطوبة	pose (v) (d) يشكّل/يطرح (خطر/تحدى..)	track (v) (ed) يتتبع/يتعقّب
intensity (n) شدة	preparedness (n) تأهب/استعداد	waterproof (adj) مضاد/مقاوم للماء

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ability (n) قدرة	flashlight (n) مصباح يدوى	particular (adj) معين/خاص
artificial (adj) اصطناعى	flood (n) فيضان	prepare (v) (d) يعد/يجهز
atmospheric (adj) جوى	forecasting (n) التنبؤ (بحالة الجو)	practice (v) (d) (n) يمارس/ممارسة
attacks (n) هجمات	hindrance (n) مانع/عائق	patterns (n) أنماط
battery (n) بطارية	hurricane (n) إعصار	predict (v) (ed) يتنبأ/يتوقع
beneath (prep) تحت	identify (v) (~~y~~ied) يحدد/يتعرف على	prediction (n) تنبؤ/توقع
container (n) حاوية/صندوق/وعاء	issue (v) (d) يصدر/يطلق	pressure (n) ضغط
contacts (n) معارف/أشخاص مقربون	long-distance (n) بعيد المدى	quake (n) (v) (d) اهتزاز/زلزال/يهتز بشدة/يتزلزل
data (n) بيانات	misunderstanding (n) سوء فهم	radar systems (n) أنظمة الرادار
defenses (n) دفاعات	models (n) نماذج	readiness (n) جاهزية/استعداد
direction (n) اتجاه	monitor (v) (ed) يراقب	region (n) منطقة
disaster (n) كارثة	non-local (adj) غير محلى	relatives (n) أقارب
earthquake (n) زلزال	non-perishable (adj) غير قابل للتلف	remain (v) (ed) يظل/يبقى
emergency (n) طوارئ	observe (v) (d) يلاحظ/يرصد	remarkable (adj) رائع/لافت للنظر
events (n) أحداث	occur (v) (red) يحدث	rules (n) قواعد

satellite (n) قمر صناعى	strike (v) يضرب / يقع	unpredictable (adj) غير متوقع / لا يمكن التنبؤ به
state (n) حالة	suddenly (adv) فجأة	warning (n) تحذير
storm (n) عاصفة	true (adj) حقيقى / صحيح	weather (n) طقس
store (v) (d) يخزن	tool (n) أداة	

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The scientist checked the ..... of his measurements before publishing the results.
a) humidity b) mystery c) creativity d) accuracy

2. Milk is a/an ..... product, so it must be kept in the refrigerator.
a) inexpensive b) perishable c) common d) stable

3. The new law may ..... a serious challenge for small businesses.
a) propose b) prevent c) pose d) present

4. Fateema has the ..... to learn new languages very quickly.
a) ability b) supply c) atmosphere d) hesitation

5. The strong ..... protected the villagers from enemy attacks.
a) decorations b) defenses c) flashlights d) containers

6. The teacher ..... the students as they worked on their project.
a) invented b) disregarded c) observed d) looked

7. It's a/an ..... achievement for the company; they have achieved very high profits.
a) unknown b) minor c) insignificant d) remarkable

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a call for adaptation دعوة للتكيف	issue a warning يطلق تحذيرًا	emergency kit حقيبة الطوارئ
as a result كنتيجة لذلك	damage from الضرر الناتج من	emergency preparedness الاستعداد للطوارئ
contact list قائمة جهات الاتصال فى الهاتف	problem with مشكلة فى	first aid supplies لوازم الإسعافات الأولية
create emergency plans وضع خطط طوارئ	forget about ينسى بخصوص	beneath the Earth's surface تحت سطح الأرض
in particular على وجه الخصوص	keep something in يحتفظ بشىء فى	in recent decades فى العقود الأخيرة

waterproof container	حاوية/صندوق مقاوم للماء	long-distance calls	مكالمات لمسافات طويلة	important in	مهم فى
ready for	جاهز لـ	non-local contacts	جهات اتصال غير محلية	difficult to	صعب أن
rely on	يعتمد على	non-perishable food	طعام غير قابل للتلف	monitor for	يراقب من أجل
contact with	اتصال مع	out-of-state contact	شخص معرفة من خارج الولاية/المدينة	evacuate from	يخلى من
prepared for	مستعد لـ	practice drills	تدريبات عملية (كيفية التصرف فى وقت الطوارئ)	store in	يخزن فى
responsible for	مسئول عن	thanks to	بفضل	warn about	يحذر بخصوص

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
attack	يهاجم	attack	هجوم	attacking	مهاجم
contain	يحتوى	container	حاوية	containing	حاوٍ/محتوٍ
defend	يدافع	defense defender	دفاع مدافع	defensive	دفاعى
direct	يوجه	direction	اتجاه	directional direct	توجيهى مباشر
enable	يمكن	ability	قدرة	able	قادر
identify	يحدد/يعرّف	identification identity	تعريف/تحديد هوية	identifiable	قابل للتعريف/التحديد
observe	يلاحظ	observation observatory	ملاحظة مرصد	observational observed	رصدى ملحوظ
occur	يحدث	occurrence	حدوث	occurring	جار/حاصل
perish	يهلك	perishables	أطعمة قابلة للتلف	perishable	قابل للتلف
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	متوقع/قابل للتنبؤ
remark	يلاحظ/يعلق	remark	ملاحظة/تعليق	remarkable	ملحوظ/جدير بالذكر
supply	يزود	supply	إمداد	supplied	مزود
track	يتتبع	track	مسار	tracked	متتبع

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The scientist used a telescope to observe the movement of the distant planets. (v)
- Her careful observation of the patient's symptoms helped the doctor make the right diagnosis. (n)
- The documentary was based on observational research of animals in their natural habitat. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
accuracy دقة	precision/exactness	inaccuracy/imprecision عدم دقة/عدم ضبط
perishable قابل للتلف	spoilable/decomposable	durable/lasting/non-perishable متين/يدوم طويلًا/قابل للتلف
ability قدرة	capability/skill	inability/incompetence عجز/عدم كفاءة
artificial اصطناعى	synthetic/man-made	natural/genuine طبيعى/أصيل
beneath تحت	under/below	above/over فوق/أعلى
defenses دفاعات	protection/safeguards	attacks/assaults هجمات
observed مُلاحَظ	noticed/seen	overlooked/missed/unnoticed متجاهل/غير ملاحظ
particular خاص/معين	specific/certain	general/ universal عام/شامل
remarkable رائع/جدير بالملاحظة	extraordinary/notable	ordinary/unremarkable عادى/غير لافت للنظر
unpredictable غيرمتوقع	erratic/random	predictable/consistent متوقع/متناسق
suddenly فجأة	unexpectedly/abruptly	expectedly/deliberately بشكل متوقع/متعمد

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's wise to have an out-of-state ..... in case local lines are down.
   a) contact b) kit c) drill d) aid
2. Schools must use practice ..... to teach students how to respond to emergencies like fires and earthquakes.
   a) calls b) kits c) drills d) plans
3. It is important to store your emergency supplies ..... a cool, dry place.
   a) from b) in c) about d) for

4. Her situation became ..... as soon as the discussion turned to her personal life.
a) defend b) defensive c) defender d) defense

5. The ground shook suddenly, and we started to shout hysterically. The synonym of the word "suddenly" is ..... .
a) deliberately b) unexpectedly c) excitedly d) expectedly

6. An astronomer's detailed ..... revealed new information.
a) observant b) observe c) observation d) observatory

7. All measurements must be taken with extreme accuracy to avoid errors. The antonym of "accuracy" is ..... .
a) hesitation b) unawareness c) inaccuracy d) fear

8. These are artificial decorations, not real plants. The antonym of "artificial" is ..... .
a) imitation b) man-made c) false d) natural

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

A CALL FOR ADAPTATION

Scientists have made remarkable progress in weather prediction over the past century. Thanks to advanced technology and improved understanding of atmospheric science, modern forecasting systems can now predict many weather patterns with impressive accuracy—sometimes days or even weeks in advance. Meteorologists use hi-tech tools like satellites, radar systems, and computer models to monitor temperature, wind, pressure, and humidity. This data helps them track storms, predict rainfall, and issue early warnings. For example, the ability to forecast a hurricane's path has improved greatly in recent decades. As a result, governments can organize evacuations, hospitals can prepare for emergencies, and lives can be saved.

However, while weather events are becoming easier to predict, the exact intensity and timing of natural disasters still pose major challenges. A storm might change direction suddenly, or a flood could be worse than expected. Even with advanced models, uncertainty remains.

Earthquakes, in particular, remain largely unpredictable. Unlike storms, which develop over time and can be observed, seismic activity occurs deep beneath the Earth's surface. Tectonic plates shift silently, and there are usually no clear warning signs before a quake strikes. Scientists can identify regions—like parts of the Middle East and North Africa—that are at higher risk, but they cannot say exactly when an earthquake will happen.

We cannot stop natural disasters, but we can reduce their impact. We should have had strong building rules, health and safety lessons, and practice drills many years ago. Lives could have been saved if cities were better prepared.

Eventually, while science continues to advance, readiness and planning remain our strongest defenses.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
- a) Earthquakes are the most dangerous natural disasters.
- b) Science can now predict all natural disasters with perfect accuracy.
- c) While weather prediction has improved, readiness is key to reducing the impact of unpredictable disasters.
- d) Governments are not doing enough to prepare for emergencies.

2. According to the text, which tool do meteorologists NOT use?
- a) Satellites.
- b) Computer models.
- c) Thermometers.
- d) Radar systems.

3. Why are earthquakes hard to predict?
- a) They happen deep underground without clear warnings.
- b) They are not dangerous.
- c) Scientists don't study them.
- d) They only happen in one country.

4. If a city has good weather tools, what can it do? It can .....
- a) make hurricanes disappear
- b) tell people to evacuate their homes in time
- c) know exactly where an earthquake will hit
- d) make it rain when there's a drought

Scan & listen

Listening Text

Welcome to "Stay Safe", your emergency preparedness guide. I'm Janet Ferrag, and today we're talking about creating family emergency plans. With me is Fire Chief Sami Nagib.

Janet : Sami, what's the most important thing families should do?

Sami : Well, Janet, people should have prepared better for disasters before they happened. You could have avoided many problems with simple preparation. Every family might have prevented serious issues by having an emergency kit ready.

Janet : What should be in this kit?

Sami : You should have stored water: four liters per person per day for at least three days. You could have included flashlights, batteries, first aid supplies, and non-perishable food. People might have forgotten about important documents, so keep copies in a waterproof container.

Janet : What about communication plans?

Sami : Families should have chosen a non-local contact person during disasters. Long-distance calls often work when local calls don't. You could have written down important phone numbers. Don't rely only on your cell phone contact list.

Definitions التعريفات

accuracy	دقة	how correct or exact something is
meteorologists	علماء الأرصاد الجوية	scientists who study and predict the weather
humidity	رطوبة	the amount of water in the air
track	تتبع	to follow or watch the movement of something
intensity	شدة	how strong or powerful something is
pose	تشكل	to cause something to start or happen
tectonic plates	الصفائح التكتونية	huge pieces of Earth's surface that move and cause earthquakes
drills	تدريبات	practice activities to prepare for real emergencies
preparedness	استعداد	the state of being ready for something, especially an emergency or difficult situation
kit	حقيبة/عدة	a set of articles or equipment needed for a specific purpose
supplies	إمدادات	things that are needed for a particular purpose and are provided or stored
perishable	قابلة للتلف	likely to decay or go bad quickly; usually refers to food items
documents	وثائق	official papers or records that provide information or proof
waterproof	مضاد/مقاوم للماء	not allowing water to pass through it

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

predict
يتنبأ بشكل عام (بدون أدلة ملموسة)

It's difficult to predict the outcome of the football game.

foretell
يتنبأ/يتكهّن (بناءً على حدس/رؤية/نبوءة) وتستخدم في الروايات والقصص الخيالية

The old woman foretold that a great war would come.

forecast
يتنبأ/يتوقع (بناءً على أدلة أو بيانات)

- Economists forecast higher unemployment next year.
- The ability to forecast a hurricane's path has improved greatly.

2	**track** يتعقب/يتتبع (حركات، تقدمًا، بيانات، شحنات) غالبًا باستخدام أجهزة	They used radar to track the path of the approaching storm.
	observe يلاحظ	The scientist will observe the chemical reaction in the lab.
	follow يتابع/يتبع (أشخاصًا/أفكارًا/أخبارًا/تعليمات)	- I followed the company's car until I reached there. - You should follow the rules in your school.
4	**meteorologist** خبير أرصاد جوية	Meteorologists use hi-tech tools like satellites to monitor temperature.
	astrologer مُنَجِّم (خبير الأبراج)	We shouldn't believe the claims of astrologers about the future.
	astronomer عالم فلك	Astronomers all over the world will be observing the eclipse كسوف.
	astronaut رائد فضاء	Sending astronauts into space can take years of hard work.
5	**disaster** كارثة (عدد الضحايا كبير ومفزع)	The train crash was the biggest disaster this year.
	accident حادثة (عدد الضحايا قليل أو لا يوجد)	I had an accident yesterday; the car was damaged.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "....." means to follow or watch the movement of something.
   a) Track b) Trick c) Ignore d) Stop
2. ..... is the state of being ready for something, especially an emergency.
   a) Relaxation b) Confusion c) Laziness d) Preparedness
3. ..... decribes something which is likely to decay or go bad quickly.
   a) Durable b) Perishable c) Non-perishable d) Lasting
4. ..... are official papers or records that provide information or proof.
   a) Kits b) Plates c) Documents d) Drills
5. "....." means not allowing water to pass through it.
   a) Waterproof b) Prepared c) Intense d) Tracked
6. The weather station used its advanced computer models to ..... the path of the storm.
   a) forecast b) prevent c) imagine d) remeber
7. The fire in the building was a/an .....; many people lost their possessions.
   a) occasion b) disaster c) accident d) event

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The warm ..... is perfect for our picnic this afternoon.
   a) atmosphere b) storm c) forecast d) weather
2. Meteorologists use advanced instruments to ensure the ..... of the weather forecast.
   a) warning b) symbol c) accuracy d) inaccuracy
3. It's important to keep your personal ..... in a safe place, like a fireproof box.
   a) batteries b) systems c) satellites d) documents
4. The company conducts fire ..... to teach all employees evacuation procedures.
   a) parties b) drills c) meetings d) vacations
5. The high level of ..... in the air made the weather hotter.
   a) humidity b) air c) coolness d) evacuation
6. The ..... of the hurricane was so great that it caused power outages انقطاع كهربائي.
   a) weakness b) forecasting c) intensity d) gentleness
7. An emergency ..... should contain items such as first-aid and medications.
   a) kit b) collection c) group d) pot
8. ..... use advanced tools and satellites to study atmospheric conditions.
   a) Historians b) Dentists c) Meteorologists d) Astrologers
9. It is best that you pack only non-..... food items in your emergency supplies.
   a) edible b) perishable c) usable d) biodegradable
10. The sudden storm could ..... a serious risk to the boats sailing near the coast.
    a) pose b) shape c) remove d) avoid
11. The town's ..... was clear before the storm hit the coasts. They had no losses.
    a) disorganization b) unwillingness c) preparedness d) reason
12. The scientist used special equipment to measure the ..... waves and determine the earthquake's magnitude قوة.
    a) perishable b) remarkable c) auditory d) seismic
13. The shelter was in urgent need of ..... to help the flood victims.
    a) accessories b) supplies c) warnings d) patterns
14. The movement of tectonic ..... is responsible for most of the world's earthquakes.
    a) storms b) currents c) masses d) plates
15. Radar systems and satellites help ..... the path and speed of hurricanes.
    a) track b) rule c) support d) trap
16. It's essential to wear a/an ..... jacket when going out in this bad weather.
    a) fashionable b) expensive c) waterproof d) watering

17. The meteorologist made a/an ..... forecast about the storm's path, saving many lives.
a) terrible b) remarkable c) average d) artificial

18. His accurate ..... helped us prepare for the heavy rainfall in advance.
a) guess b) attack c) prediction d) contact

19. The study of ..... pressure is crucial for understanding how storms form.
a) atmospheric b) ground-level c) ocean-based d) soil-related

20. The urgent ..... prompted دفعت residents to evacuate their houses.
a) compliments b) questions c) warnings d) suggestions

21. The science of ..... has improved greatly with the use of advanced technology.
a) guessing b) narrating c) foretelling d) forecasting

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22. Technology helps us in the field of weather prediction, ... particular, earthquakes.
a) at b) of c) on d) in

23. We are prepared ..... the trip with food and drinks.
a) to b) on c) about d) for

24. The announcement was like a call ..... adaptation from the government officials.
a) about b) on c) for d) of

25. Don't ..... only on your job for income. You should start a project.
a) interest b) talk c) rely d) think

26. Keep ..... supplies in your car to be ready for emergencies.
a) electronics b) first aid c) toys d) snacks

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. I found my keys hidden beneath the carpet. The two synonyms of the word "beneath" are ..... .
a) under b) below c) over d) above e) on

28. Mido has a particular interest in football. The two antonyms of the word "particular" are ..... .
a) specific b) certain c) random d) general e) universal

29. Mr. Ayman is always praised for his high accuracy in handling information. The two synonyms of the word "accuracy" are ..... .
a) mistake b) exactness c) precision d) error e) guess

30. A good teacher is the one who can observe the behavior of students carefully. The opposites of the word "observe" are ..... .
a) see b) forget c) overlook d) miss e) notice

31. I enjoy reading short stories, ... the mystery ones.
a) especially b) in contrast c) privately d) in particular e) in practical

B Language

Comparative and superlative adjectives — صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

Degrees of adjectives
درجات الصفات

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
الصفة	المقارنة بين طرفين	صيغة التفضيل (للمقارنة بين فرد/شيء ومجموعة)

One-syllable adjectives: — صفات المقطع الواحد:

Adjective		Comparative		Superlative	
tall	طويل	taller	than	the	tallest
young	صغير السن	younger	than	the	youngest
soft	ناعم	softer	than	the	softest
short	قصير	shorter	than	the	shortest
cheap	رخيص الثمن	cheaper	than	the	cheapest
large	واسع	larger	than	the	largest
wide	عريض	wider	than	the	widest

في المقارنة نضع
adj.+ er + than
في التفضيل نضع
the + adj. + est

إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف e
نضع r/ st

Adjective		Comparative		Superlative	
big	كبير الحجم	bigger	than	the	biggest
hot	ساخن	hotter	than	the	hottest
low	منخفض	lower	than	the	lowest
few	قليل	fewer	than	the	fewest

إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضعف الساكن.

إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف w قبله o أو e نضع er /est دون تضعيف.

Two- or more-syllable adjectives ending in y

ugly	قبيح	uglier	than	the	ugliest
easy	سهل	easier	than	the	easiest
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the	heaviest
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the	happiest
lucky	محظوظ	luckier	than	the	luckiest
healthy	سليم/صحى	healthier	than	the	healthiest

إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين أو أكثر وتنتهى بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/ iest.

صفة المقارنة	+	than	صفة التفضيل	+	of/ in

Examples

- Shady is a young boy.
- Shady is younger than Ehab.
- Shady is the youngest boy in class / of all students.

Adjective
Comparative
Superlative

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This exam is ..... than the previous one.
   a) more hard b) hardest c) harder d) hard
2. Of all the students, she is the ..... in class.
   a) most tall b) taller c) tall d) tallest
3. The English exam was the ..... one.
   a) easy b) more easy c) easiest d) most easy
4. The weather in Aswan is ..... than in Alexandria during the summer.
   a) hot b) hotter c) more hot d) the hottest
5. My backpack is ..... than yours because I have more books in it.
   a) heavy b) heavier c) more heavy d) the heaviest

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. My sister is more taller than me. (.....)
2. She is smartest student in the class. (.....)
3. That was the happy day of my life. (.....)
4. Look at those two dogs! Which one is the big? (.....)
5. This is the cheaper bag in the shop. (.....)

More than two-syllable adjectives: صفات ذات أكثر من مقطع:

Adjective		Comparative			Superlative
الصفة		more + الصفة		+ than	the most + الصفة
modern	عصرى	more	modern	than	the most modern
careful	حريص	more	careful	than	the most careful
expensive	غالى الثمن	more	expensive	than	the most expensive
exciting	مثير	more	exciting	than	the most exciting
difficult	صعب	more	difficult	than	the most difficult
dangerous	خطير	more	dangerous	than	the most dangerous
dependent	معتمد	more	dependent	than	the most dependent
frightened	خائف	more	frightened	than	the most frightened

Examples

- English is an interesting subject. — Adjective
- English is more interesting than Spanish. — Comparative
- English is the most interesting subject of all languages. — Superlative

لاحظ يمكن استخدام less/the least بدلًا من more/the most وتعنى الأقل/أقل، مثل:

- Ali is less careful than Ahmed, so he shouldn't drive.
- The blue couch is the least comfortable one.

Irregular comparatives and superlatives: الصفات غير المنتظمة:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good/well جيد / حسن	better than	the best
bad سيئ / ردىء	worse than	the worst
little قليل	less than	the least
much/ many/ a lot of كثير	more than	the most
far بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

Examples

- Lying الكذب is a bad habit. — Adjective
- No habit is worse than lying. — Comparative
- Lying is the worst habit in anyone's life. — Superlative

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This is ..... problem I have ever had to solve. I don't know what to do.

a) the most difficult b) difficulter
c) the most difficult d) more difficult

2. This story is ..... than the one we read yesterday.

a) more interesting b) most interesting
c) as interesting d) interesting

3. Her health is ..... today than it was last week.

a) good b) better c) best d) more good

4. Of all the desserts, the chocolate cake was the ..... .

a) delicious b) more delicious c) best delicious d) most delicious

5. This problem is ..... to solve than I thought.
   a) more complicated b) complicated
   c) complicating d) most complicated
6. Waleed is ..... boy in the class.
   a) the funnier b) funniest c) funnier d) the funniest

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. No river in the world is longer than the Nile River. (longest)
2. Modern weather satellites are more advanced than those used twenty years ago. (most)
3. The 1992 Cairo earthquake was one of the most destructive in Egypt's recent history. (more)
4. The Sahara is the hottest desert on Earth. (than)
5. The countryside is quieter than the city. (The city ...)

Note the following: لاحظ الآتى:

1 نستخدم المقارنة:

- لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشيئين حتى مع عدم ذكر أحد طرفى المقارنة:

We need a bigger garden.
Ali's car is certainly better, but it's much more expensive.

- لوصف كيف يتغير الشىء وبيان الفرق بين شىء قديم وآخر حديث:

Hala is getting taller.
Ali is getting older and more intelligent.

2 لاحظ استخدام هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative للمبالغة فى الوصف.

Cars are getting faster and faster.
Everything is getting more and more expensive.

3 يمكن أن يأتى ضمير بعد than ويمكن أيضًا أن يأتى جملة بها فاعل وفعل، كالتالى:

My brother is older than me.
My brother is older than I am.

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This is the ..... movie for this actor.
a) interesting b) more interesting
c) most interesting d) interesting than

2. Shady is the ..... student in the class. He's really smarter than all of them.
a) smart b) smarter c) smartest d) most smart

3. The weather is ..... today than it was yesterday.
a) good b) better c) best d) more good

4. Ali is ..... than his competitor.
a) strongest b) a stronger c) stronger d) more stronger

5. I was feeling ..... than usual, so I went to bed early.
a) tired b) more tired c) most tired d) so tired

6. A: Why are you sitting there? B: Actually, this is ..... place.
a) comfortable b) the comfortable
c) the most comfortable d) the more comfortable

7. It's too noisy here. Can we go to a ..... cafe?
a) more quiet b) much quieter than
c) most quiet d) quieter

8. My brother is faster ..... .
a) me b) than am c) than I am d) than I will

9. This task is ..... Akram's.
a) easier than b) the easiest c) easy d) easily

10. What's ..... achievement in your life?
a) the more important b) the most important
c) most important d) important

11. I regret selling my car. It was ..... the one I plan to buy.
a) the economical b) the most economical
c) as economical d) more economical

12. This box is ..... than the one I bought last week.
a) heaviest b) heavier c) heavy d) more heavy

13. The ..... way to keep fit is to do exercise regularly.
a) most simplest b) simpler c) simplest d) more simple

14. Vegetables are ..... than pasta if you want to go on a diet.
a) much healthy b) healthier c) healthy d) more healthy

15. All the movies in the library are ..... than the one I'm watching.
a) exciting b) much exciting c) more exciting d) most exciting

16. The exam was ..... than I had expected.
a) less difficult b) difficult c) least difficult d) as difficult

17. Marwa's performance was ..... than Mona's in the final match.
a) good b) better c) best d) more good

18. The new route is ..... than the previous one.
a) far b) farthest c) the furthest d) farther

19. A lot of people prefer Spain for their vacation as it is ..... than England.
a) warmer b) warm c) the warmest d) more warm

20. Hany had three big sandwiches. He was ..... of all his friends.
a) hungrier b) hungry c) the hungriest d) much hungrier

21. Mona was not as intelligent as the others, but she was ..... .
a) more prettier b) pretty c) most pretty d) the prettiest

22. Although we aren't rich, our children go to ..... schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better

23. Unfortunately, her illness was ..... we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious
c) more serious than d) the most serious

24. We live in a ..... house, but my uncle lives in a ..... one.
a) big / big b) big / biggest
c) big / bigger d) bigger / biggest

25. Out of all my friends, my house is ..... from school.
a) the farthest b) far
c) farther d) the further

26. When I learned a lot of grammar and vocabulary, English became ..... .
a) the easiest b) much more easier
c) more and more easier d) easier and easier

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. This bag is more heavy than that one. (.....)
2. She is smartest person I know. (.....)
3. It was the baddest storm of the year. (.....)
4. His new phone is more faster than his old one. (.....)
5. Out of all my subjects, I find math harder. (.....)

Test Yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Scientists can now ..... the movement of a hurricane with great accuracy.
   a) look b) predict c) guess d) understand
2. Some people think we can identify certain ..... in animal behavior before a natural disaster occurs.
   a) colors b) drawings c) patterns d) rules
3. They used special ..... to measure the temperature and humidity.
   a) issues b) tools c) utensils d) contacts
4. ..... orbit the Earth to send back images and data for weather forecasting.
   a) Planets b) Stars c) Meteorologists d) Satellites
5. Radar ..... are essential for tracking the location and intensity of storms.
   a) instruments b) systems c) phones d) machines
6. Computer ..... are used to monitor temperature, wind, and pressure.
   a) theories b) examples c) models d) scenarios
7. They will ..... the situation to see if the floodwaters continue to rise.
   a) monitor b) ignore c) overlook d) think
8. Air ..... decreases when we go higher, that's why we can't breathe well on top of mountains.
   a) weight b) pressure c) tension d) density
9. We need to analyze all the ..... collected from the sensors to understand the phenomenon.
   a) thoughts b) feelings c) data d) guesses
10. The ..... caused widespread damage throughout the region.
    a) directions b) predictions c) breezes d) storms
11. The government will ..... a warning if the situation becomes dangerous.
    a) create b) issue c) receive d) hide
12. Her ..... to remain calm under pressure helped her lead her team during the crisis.
    a) ability b) degree c) ambition d) mark
13. In the past, farmers relied on water from ..... to irrigate their lands.
    a) taps b) earthquakes c) floods d) hurricanes
14. The team's journey was .....; they achieved all their goals.
    a) known b) watched c) recyclable d) remarkable
15. My father used to keep his important ..... in a safe خزنة inside his closet.
    a) plates b) documents c) patterns d) supplies

Language

16. She is ..... than her sister at solving problems.
a) creative b) more creative c) so creative d) most creative

17. Of the two proposals, hers was undoubtedly the ..... . I felt comfortable with it.
a) more persuasive b) most persuasive
c) little persuasive d) less persuasive

18. His latest novel is ..... than his previous one, but still not his best work.
a) more valuable b) much valuable
c) far valuable d) most valuable

19. Earthquakes are ..... to predict than hurricanes.
a) difficult b) more difficult c) most difficult d) much difficult

20. This puzzle is ..... than it looks. Only a genius can do it.
a) a difficult b) more difficult c) difficult d) most difficult

21. Horses are faster than dogs, but cheetahs are ..... land animals.
a) the fastest b) faster c) the faster d) fast

22. This is ..... game on my computer. It's even more difficult than the one you're talking about.
a) more difficult b) the least difficult
c) most difficult d) the most difficult

23. Your homework is ..... than last week. You need to work harder.
a) better b) worse c) good d) bad

24. Which is ..... in the summer: Cairo or Alexandria?
a) as hot b) more hot c) hottest d) hotter

25. What is the ..... mountain in Europe?
a) highly b) highest c) high d) much high

26. This exam seems ..... than the previous one; you don't have to worry.
a) much difficult b) the easiest c) more difficult d) easier

27. I think physics is the ..... of all subjects; a lot of students don't like it.
a) most difficult b) easier c) more difficult d) easiest

28. There is not ..... mountain in the world than Everest.
a) height b) higher c) a higher d) high

29. This exercise is too difficult. I think you should make it ..... .
a) as simple b) most simple c) more simpler d) simpler

30. Which sentence uses the correct comparative form of "far"?
a) This place is further than the other one.
b) This place is more far than the other one.
c) This place is farther than the other one.
d) Both a and c.

Study... Part 2

Lesson 3: The Power of Earthquakes
Lesson 4: Learning from the Past
Lesson 5: Reporting Disasters

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

blocked (adj)	مسدود/محجوب	in advance	مقدمًا/مسبقًا	trapped (adj)	محاصر/عالق
evacuated (adj)	تم إخلاؤه	strike (v) (n)	يضرب/يهاجم/هجوم/ضرب		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

accurate (adj)	دقيق	frightening (adj)	مخيف	save (v) (d)	ينقذ
action (n)	إجراء/فعل	heading (n)	عنوان	season (n)	موسم
awareness (n)	وعي	lack (v)	نقص/يفتقر إلى	serious (adj)	خطير
belongings (n)	ممتلكات/أغراض	landslides (n)	انهيارات أرضية	shake (v)	يهتز
coastal (adj)	ساحلي	pass (v) (d)	يمرُّ/يجتاز	suffer (v) (ed)	يعاني
community (n)	مجتمع	planning (n)	تخطيط	summarize (v) (d)	يلخص
contact (n) (v) (ed)	اتصال/يتصل	powerful (adj)	قوي	trigger (v) (ed)	يسبب/يطلق
deadly (adj)	مميت/فتّاك/مهلك	preparation (n)	إعداد/تحضير	tsunami (n)	طوفان (تسونامي)
earthquake-prone (adj)	معرض للزلازل	purpose (n)	غرض/هدف	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
evacuation (n)	إخلاء	realize (v) (d)	يدرك	valuable (adj)	ثمين/قيم
formal (adj)	رسمي	recent (adj)	حديثًا/مؤخرًا	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
frequency (n)	تكرار/تردد	record (v) (ed) (n)	يسجل/سجل	wildfires (n)	حرائق الغابات

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The experts warned that a tsunami can ..... soon.
a) evacuate b) strike c) celebrate d) pass

2. The villagers had been ..... to a safe shelter before the flood damaged their homes.
a) evacuated b) stayed c) delayed d) trapped

3. The small kitten was ..... inside a wooden box unable to find its way out.
a) recorded b) freed c) trapped d) contacted

4. To ensure we find seats in the stadium, we should buy our tickets in ..... .
a) duration b) random c) lateness d) advance

5. The dry summer heat caused ..... that threatened nearby homes and wildlife.
a) rainstorms b) floods c) wildfires d) awareness

6. Living in a small, quiet ..... town is wonderful, as you can enjoy the beautiful view of the sea from your window.
a) blocked b) coastal
c) desert d) earthquake-prone

7. ....., many people ignored the warnings before the disaster occurred.
a) Unfortunately b) Luckily
c) Hopefully d) Fortunately

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

strike at any time يضرب/يحدث فى أى وقت	listen to يستمع لـ	pack emergency kits يجهز حقائب الطوارئ
poor planning سوء التخطيط	take action يتخذ إجراءات	teach a valuable lesson يعلّم درسًا قيمًا
lack of awareness نقص الوعى	save lives ينقذ الأرواح	play a role يلعب دورًا
hit a small town ضربت بلدة صغيرة	stay informed يبقى على اطلاع	better safe than sorry الوقاية خير من العلاج (أو أن تكون آمنًا خير من أن تكون نادمًا).
before it's too late قبل فوات الأوان	learn from يتعلم من	in time فى الوقت المناسب
in recent decades فى العقود الأخيرة	over time بمرور الوقت	at higher risk فى خطر أكبر
for emergencies لحالات الطوارئ	compared to بالمقارنة مع/تشبيهًا بـ	from the past من الماضى
roads were blocked سُدت الطرق	trapped for too long محاصرون لفترة طويلة جدًّا	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف	action	فعل/تصرف	active	نشيط
avoid	يتجنب	avoidance	تجنب	avoidable	يمكن تجنبه
block	يسد/يعيق	block	عائق/سد	blocked	مسدود
evacuate	يُخلي	evacuation	إخلاء	evacuated	خالٍ من الناس
inform	يُبلغ	information informer	معلومات مخبر/مرشد	informative informed	تثقيفي/مفيد مُطَّلِع
practice	يتدرب	practice	تدريب	practical	عملي
predict	يتنبأ	predictability prediction	قابلية التنبؤ تنبؤ	predictable	مُتوقَّع
prepare	يجهِّز/يحضِّر	preparation preparedness	تحضير تأهب	prepared	مُستعد
realize	يدرك	reality realization	حقيقة/واقع إدراك	realistic	واقعي
save	ينقذ/يدخر	save	إنقاذ/ادخار	saved	مُنقَذ
start	يبدأ	start	بداية	starting	مُبتدِئ
trap	يحاصر	trap	فخ/مصيدة	trapped	محاصر

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- We were ordered to evacuate the building immediately because of the fire. (v)
- The evacuation was successful, and everyone reached the safe zone. (n)
- The whole neighborhood was evacuated safely. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
awareness	وعي	understanding/ consciousness		unawareness/ignorance	عدم وعي/جهل
contact	اتصال	communication/interaction		disconnection/interruption	عزلة
disasters	كوارث	catastrophes/calamities		blessings/successes	هِبات/نجاحات
evacuation	إخلاء	removal/clearing		occupation/entry	إشغال

lack	نقص	shortage/scarcity	sufficiency/plenty	كمية/وفرة
pass	يجتاز	proceed/succeed	cease/fail	يتوقف/يفشل
realize	يدرك	perceive/grasp	misunderstand/mistake	يغفل عن
suffer	يعانى	endure/undergo	thrive/flourish	يزدهر
valuable	ثمين	priceless/valued/beneficial	cheap/worthless	رخيص/بلا قيمة

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When a hurricane approaches, residents living along the coast are ..... higher risk.
a) at b) of c) on d) with

2. You should have ..... well for this presentation. You wasted your time.
a) prepared b) preparedness
c) preparation d) prepare

3. The new sports car was much faster compared ..... the old one.
a) of b) for c) to d) on

4. The weather forecast's ..... of heavy rain was correct.
a) prediction b) secret
c) opinion d) mistake

5. The community worked together to recover after the natural disasters of the flood. The synonym of the word "disasters" is ..... .
a) solutions b) catastrophes
c) issues d) miracles

6. A mandatory إلزامى evacuation was ordered for all residents. The antonym of the word "evacuation" is ..... .
a) departure b) contact
c) occupation d) withdrawal

7. This watch was a valuable gift from my father. The synonym of the word "valuable" is ..... .
a) high-quality b) priceless
c) ranked d) worthless

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Natural disasters—earthquakes, floods, wildfires, or storms—can strike at any time. While we can't always stop them, we can prepare for them. Unfortunately, many communities around the world still suffer because of poor planning or lack of awareness.

In 2023, a powerful storm hit a small coastal town. Many homes were destroyed, and roads were blocked for days. After the storm passed, people realized that they should have listened to the early warnings. Some could have evacuated in time, but they were trapped for too long. Others might have saved their belongings if they had packed emergency kits in advance.

This disaster taught a valuable lesson: being prepared saves lives. People should have had emergency contact numbers, flashlights, and enough food and water. Schools and hospitals could have practiced evacuation drills before the storm season started. Disaster preparedness includes making a plan, staying informed, and taking action before it's too late. Governments, schools, and families all play a role. By learning from past mistakes, we can be more ready for the future.

Although we can't predict every detail, we might have avoided some of the damage with better preparation. As the saying goes, "Better safe than sorry."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is "……".

a) how to build stronger homes to face disasters
b) what to do during a natural disaster
c) the importance of disaster preparedness
d) the causes of natural disasters

2. According to the text, the phrase "should have listened" shows that people …… .

a) listened carefully
b) were unsure
c) made the right decision
d) made a mistake in the past

3. According to the text, …… might have helped the town reduce damage.

a) waiting until the storm arrived
b) having emergency kits ready
c) ignoring warnings
d) building more schools

4. According to the text, disaster preparedness includes all EXCEPT …… .

a) making a plan
b) staying informed
c) waiting for help
d) taking early action

Scan & listen

Listening Text

The Power of Earthquakes

Among natural disasters, earthquakes are some of the most dangerous and unpredictable. They can shake the ground more suddenly than storms and cause greater destruction than floods. In fact, the 2011 earthquake in Japan was one of the strongest ever recorded and it was far deadlier than many earlier ones. Compared to hurricanes, earthquakes are often harder to predict, which makes them even more frightening. Scientists are working on building better systems to warn people, but these are still less accurate than weather forecasts. Cities with weaker buildings suffer much worse damage while areas with stronger infrastructure are usually safer. The effects of an earthquake are sometimes more serious than any other disaster because they can trigger tsunamis, landslides, and fires. These combined effects make earthquakes one of the most destructive forces of nature. Even though modern technology is more advanced than before, the challenge remains. People in earthquake-prone regions must always be prepared for the worst.

Definitions — التعريفات

blocked	مسدود/محجوب	be obstructed or prevented from moving through
evacuated	تم إخلاؤه	be removed from a place of danger to a safer location
in advance	مقدمًا/مسبقًا	do something ahead of a specific time or event; beforehand
strike	يضرب/يهاجم	hit something forcefully
trapped	محاصر/عالق	be unable to escape from a place or a difficult situation

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**trapped**	محاصَر	The passengers were trapped inside the train after the accident.
	blocked	مسدود	The fallen trees blocked the main road, preventing cars from passing.

2

compare to يشبه به
(تشبيه شيء أو إنسان بآخر)

Ali compared his fast car to a rocket.

compare with يقارن بـ
(لبيان الاختلاف بين شيئين)

Sagda compared her grades with her brother's.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "....." means to be obstructed or prevented from moving through.

a) Trapped
b) Evacuated
c) Blocked
d) Struck

2. "....." means to be removed from a place of danger to a safer location.

a) Relocation
b) Evacuated
c) Escalation
d) Migration

3. "....." means to do something ahead of a specific time or event; beforehand.

a) At the last minute
b) Spontaneously
c) Without warning
d) In advance

4. The small animal was ..... in the abandoned well, unable to climb the slippery, moss-covered walls to get out.

a) trapped
b) closed
c) shut
d) blocked

5. The poet compared his beloved daughter ..... a pretty flower.

a) with
b) to
c) for
d) a & b

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The firefighters bravely ..... the family from the burning building.
   a) saved b) lost c) abandoned d) harmed
2. The road was ..... by a huge fallen tree.
   a) opened b) blocked c) cleared d) accessible
3. The government and ..... must work together to keep people safe.
   a) belongings b) headings c) strangers d) communities
4. Due to the rapidly spreading wildfire, the entire town was ..... .
   a) populated b) settled c) built d) evacuated
5. I was ..... inside the office for hours when the key broke.
   a) free b) released c) trapped d) blocked
6. To have a meal in this restaurant, you should book in ..... .
   a) list b) menu c) advance d) development
7. Last summer, ... spread through the forest, and 20 % of the area was damaged.
   a) strikes b) wildfires c) tsunamis d) floods
8. Houses along the ..... regions are more expensive than those inside the city.
   a) coastal b) local c) desert d) mountainous
9. Hala carefully packed all of her personal ..... into boxes before moving to her new apartment.
   a) purposes b) seasons c) belongings d) ideas
10. I want to thank you for your ..... advice that changed my lifestyle.
    a) evacuated b) planned c) sudden d) valuable
11. This ....., farmers are worried about their crops because of the lack of rain.
    a) decade b) century c) day d) season
12. Heavy rainfall caused the river to overflow its banks, leading to major ..... .
    a) floods b) droughts c) fires d) quakes
13. Effective emergency ..... is essential to ensure that people know what to do in the event of a crisis.
    a) confusion b) planning c) game d) play
14. The ..... storm ripped trees out of the ground and caused widespread destruction.
    a) angry b) gentle c) powerful d) mild
15. Please make sure to ..... me as soon as you arrive. Stay safe!
    a) speak b) contact c) communicate d) connect
16. The government promised to take ..... to fight pollution in the city.
    a) promises b) cards c) suggestions d) actions

17. During the ..... of the building, I took all my important belongings.
a) frequency b) community c) drill d) evacuation

18. An hour before the hurricane ....., warnings will be given to all people.
a) strikes b) falls c) punches d) gets

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. Modern technological devices can issue an early ..... before a disaster occurs.
a) warning b) silence c) signal d) invitation

20. Each member of the team has a specific ..... to play in the project.
a) role b) hobby c) opinion d) preference

21. I'm ready to do you a favor, but I'll take my commission عمولة ..... advance.
a) after b) in c) at d) of

22. ....., small habits like reading every day can make a big difference in your life.
a) Overnight b) Suddenly c) Quickly d) Over time

23. Regular ..... is essential for developing the necessary skills to do different tasks.
a) practice b) practical c) practiced d) practically

24. The public safety official was asked to ..... the residents about the upcoming storm.
a) information b).inform c) informative d) informed

25. ..... means to hit something forcefully.
a) Stick b) Tap c) Strike d) Care

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. The earthquake and flood were major disasters for the region the two synonyms of the word "disasters" are ..... .
a) catastrophes b) blessings c) successes d) miracles e) calamities

27. There was a lack of clean water in many countries of the world. The two antonyms of the word "lack" are ..... .
a) shortage b) scarcity c) sufficiency d) transparency e) plenty

28. During the severe drought, many farmers watched their crops suffer from the lack of rain. The antonyms of the word "suffer" are ..... .
a) thrive b) undergo c) benefit d) grow e) flourish

29. Marwan was happy to pass the test after getting all questions right. The two synonyms of the word "pass" are ..... .
a) fail b) proceed c) succeed d) miss e) remove

30. We must try to solve the problem ..... .
a) in time b) after it ends c) before it's too late
d) too late e) later on

B Language

Important Notes

نقاط هامة على صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل :

1 يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/ a lot/ a bit/ a little/ far/ rather/ even/ slightly قبل صفات المقارنة سواء الصفات الطويلة مسبوقةً بـ more أو الصفات القصيرة مضافًا لها er.

- Gold is **much/a lot/far more** expensive **than** salt.
- Traveling by train is **a little/a bit** cheaper **than** traveling by car.

2 لا نستخدم the قبل صفات التفضيل إذا سبقتها صفة ملكية أو 's الملكية.

- Ali is **my best** friend.
- Mohamed Salah is **Egypt's most famous** footballer.

3 يمكن استخدام no/ never فى صيغة المقارنة.

- **No** river in the world is longer **than** the Nile.
- I've **never** bought a faster car **than** Mercedes.

4 يمكن استخدام ever فى صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

- Mercedes is **the fastest** car I've **ever** bought.

5 نستخدم less + adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع الصفات القصيرة والطويلة.

- Silver is **less** expensive **than** gold.
- This book is **less** interesting **than** that one.
- A flat is **less** cheap **than** a villa.

6 مع التركيبة الآتية نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلّما ... كلّما).

The + صفة مقارنة + اسم + ... , the + صفة مقارنة + اسم

- The **more** books you read, the **more** information you get.
- The **fewer** mistakes you make, the **higher** marks you get.

7 هناك صفات مشتركة فى النوعين فتأخذ er/ est or more/ the most وهى:

clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc. simple - simpler - simplest (more simple - the most simple)

8 يمكن استخدام the قبل adj + er فى حالة المقارنة بين طرفين من نوع واحد.

- Of the two cars, this is **the faster**.
- Noha is **the younger** of two girls.

9 نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال أو بعد صفات الملكية أو 's الملكية.

- I am **most** grateful for your help.
- The scenery at the mountaintop was **most** beautiful during sunrise.

10 نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the **cleverest of** his friends in electronics.

11 نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان.

- Cairo is the **biggest** city **in** Egypt.

12 لاحظ استخدام (from) مع (farthest) واستخدام (to) مع (nearest).

- Luxor is the **farthest** city **from** Cairo.
- Benha is the **nearest** city **to** Cairo.

13 إذا وجدنا فعلًا حركيًا فإن ما يصف الفعل هو حال، فإذا كان الحال ينتهي بـ ly فإن المقارنة ستكون more ... than.

- Ali speaks English **more fluently than** his friends. ~~Not (fluent)~~
- Nour runs **more quickly than** me. ~~Not (quick)~~

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية

1 الفرق بين farther / further.

تعبر farther و further عن المسافة بمعنى أبعد.

- I drove ten miles **farther/further** than necessary.

بينما تستخدم further بمعنى more أو in addition وتستخدم للمعنى المجرد المعنوى مثل الأفكار والوقت.

- Do you have any **further** questions?
- I want **further** information about this subject.

2 الفرق بين later/ latter/ last.

later (بعد ذلك / لاحقًا)

تشير كلمة (later) التى بحرف t واحد إلى وقت فى المستقبل.

- Right now I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you **later**. (in the future from this moment).

ودائمًا عندما نقول مع السلامة لشخص مع المقابلة مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق نقول "See you later!"

latter (الثانى / الأخير)

نستخدم كلمة (latter) التى بحرفى t عندما نشير إلى الثانى من شخصين أو شيئين يتم ذكرهما.

- I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on **the latter**.

الأخير يعنى الثانى من الشيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب.

last (الأخير)

آخر شيء أو شخص ولا شيء أو شخص بعده / أقرب شيء للوقت الحاضر.

- The next meeting will be held in the **last** week in June.
- The guard was the **last** person to see his boss alive.

3 الفرق بين older/ elder.

elder

نستخدم **elder** عندما يتعين علينا مقارنة أقدمية شخصين فيما يتعلق بالعمر وخاصة بين أفراد العائلة. ولا يأتى بعدها **than**.

- My **elder** sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus.
- Oh, so you are 3 years **elder** to me!

لاحظ أن كلمة **elderly** صفة بمعنى كبار السن من منتصف الخمسينيات وأكثر.

- Nowadays, **elderly** people are healthier and more active than youngsters.

older

نستخدم **older** عندما نشير إلى أى شيء يخص الماضى ويكون قديمًا، و(أقدم) أو (أكبر من) للأشخاص، ونذكر طرفى المقارنة أو تأتى المقارنة ضمنيًا ويأتى بعدها **than**.

- We start understanding many things as we grow/get **older**.
- My parents are **older** than your parents.
- The **older** version of the software had many useful features than this one.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The ..... you study, the better your grades will become.
a) harder b) hardest c) hard d) hardness

2. This book is ..... interesting than the one I read last week.
a) more much b) much more c) very much d) the most

3. That trip to the mountains was ..... memorable adventure.
a) more b) my the most c) my most d) much

4. They offered me apples and oranges; I preferred the ..... .
a) last b) latest c) later d) latter

5. Can you explain ..... about your plan for the project?
a) farthest b) farther c) further d) furthest

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. He is my the best friend. (.....)
2. This box is very heavier than that one. (.....)
3. Do you have any farther questions? (.....)
4. My brother is elder than me. (.....)
5. The more you read, you get more knowledge. (.....)
6. I like both history and science, but I prefer the last. (.....)

Extra Points:

Positive and negative equality: للتساوى وعدم التساوى:

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات لبيان تساوى/عدم تساوى طرفى المقارنة فى الصفة.

as + adjective صفة + as
not as/ not so + adjective صفة + as

1 لتساوى الصفات، نستخدم:

as + adj. صفة + as = be the same + noun

- Ahmed is as tall as Osama.
- Ahmed is the same height as Osama. = Ahmed and Osama are the same height.

2 عند عدم تساوى الصفات، نستخدم:

not as / so + adj. صفة + as

- Ahmed isn't as tall as Osama.
- Ahmed isn't the same height as Osama. = Ahmed and Osama aren't the same height.

لاحظ بعد the same استخدمنا الاسم بدل الصفة، ولمعرفة أشهر الصفات والأسماء منها يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

Adjective		Noun		Adjective		Noun	
beautiful	جميل	beauty	جمال	tall/high	طويل/مرتفع	height	ارتفاع
big/small	كبير/صغير	size	حجم	far/near	بعيد/قريب	distance	مسافة
wide	واسع	width	اتساع	long	طويل	length	طول
deep	عميق	depth	عمق	old/young	كبير/صغير	age	عمر

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This task is not ..... as it seemed at first.
a) so challenging b) challenging c) more challenging d) as challenge

2. My cousin's car isn't ..... as my car.
a) as price b) the same price c) more expensive d) expensive

3. Living in a big city isn't ..... living in a small village.
a) cheaper b) so cheap as c) as cheap d) so cheap

4. I don't like spices. I'll take this dish. It's ..... this one.
a) less spicy than b) a lot spicier than
c) more spicy than d) the least spicy

5. This is ..... picture I've ever seen.
a) nicest b) the nicest c) nicer d) nice

6. What's ..... decision you've ever made at work?
a) the more hasty b) the most hasty c) most hasty d) the hastiest

7. I made ..... mistake ever when I decided to travel abroad. I lost everything.
a) the best b) the worst c) the bad d) the worse

8. This is ..... situation I have ever faced; I'm in a tight spot.
a) more dangerous b) the least dangerous
c) most dangerous d) the most dangerous

9. My brother is two years ..... than me. He is 50, but I'm 48.
a) elder b) older c) old d) younger

10. My new flat is ..... colder than the old one.
a) as b) many c) more d) a bit

11. The ..... tired you are, the harder it is to concentrate.
a) much b) most c) more d) many

12. Ahmed plays tennis ..... than anyone else.
a) good b) well c) best d) better

13. The slower you drive, the ..... you are.
a) safe b) safer c) safest d) most safer

14. That's ..... book I've ever read.
a) more interesting b) an interesting
c) the least interesting d) the less interesting

15. Leila's ..... sister is a nurse.
a) the elder b) the oldest c) elder d) old

16. The ..... I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.
a) longer b) longest c) most long d) long

17. Murad is ..... of the two brothers.
a) cleverer b) clever c) the clever d) the cleverer

18. The game we played yesterday was ..... interesting than the one we played last week.
a) almost as b) a little more c) the least d) a few

19. Mohamed Salah is one of the world's ..... players.
a) the best b) well c) best d) better

20. The ..... chapter of the novel is very interesting.
a) late b) latest c) latter d) last

21. Yesterday's match was ..... than last week's match.
a) the most boring b) little boring
c) much more boring d) much boring

22. After three weeks of studying, I began to understand English ..... .
a) good b) the better c) best d) much better

23. The train is ..... than the plane.
a) least fast b) less fast c) as fast d) the least fast

24. This cake tastes ..... delicious when served warm.
a) most b) much c) the most d) a lot of

25. Everyone says that my sister is .....-looking than I am.
a) well b) good c) the best d) better

26. If I had to choose between Gamal and Hany, Gamal is the ..... .
a) funny b) much funnier c) funnier d) more funny

27. The children were too tired to walk any ..... .
a) farther b) far c) furthest d) farthest

28. Of the two monuments, the Sphinx is the ..... one.
a) elder b) most old c) eldest d) older

29. This street is ..... than the main road.
a) much wide b) less wide c) a wider d) a little wide

30. Ahmed speaks ..... his friends.
a) as seriously than b) more serious than
c) more seriously than d) much more serious than

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. My suitcase is heavy. Yours looks light. (than)
2. This is a good book. I haven't read better than it. (best)
3. She is a careful driver. I don't drive like her. (than)
4. That was an easy test. Nothing is easier than it. (the)
5. His new phone is more expensive than my old one. (My old phone ...)

Test Yourself | Part 2 | Lessons 3, 4 & 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. ....., the soccer game was canceled because of heavy rain.
   a) Fortunately b) Happily c) Unfortunately d) Luckily
2. Public ..... of climate change has increased significantly, which is something positive.
   a) ignorance b) unawareness c) indifference d) awareness
3. Some countries of Asia suffer from earthquakes which cause ..... as well.
   a) warnings b) crimes c) tsunamis d) corruption
4. The national weather service issued a serious ..... about the approaching hurricane.
   a) warning b) promise c) suggestion d) intention
5. The hurricane ..... a small coastal town and destroyed some houses.
   a) hit b) missed c) avoided d) bypassed
6. Families were advised to have ..... that included water, non-perishable food, and first aid supplies.
   a) empty boxes b) school bags
   c) packed emergency kits d) unprepared suitcases
7. The environmental activists are urging everyone to take action against pollution before ..... to reverse the damage.
   a) a long time b) it's been done c) it's already finished d) it's too late
8. Each member of the team must play a ..... in the project to ensure its success.
   a) role b) responsibilities c) spectator d) competition
9. They decided to bring extra food and water on their hiking trip, believing it's ..... than sorry in case they got lost or delayed.
   a) better safely b) better safe c) good and safe d) best safe
10. The accidents ..... people's anger towards the officials who ignore fixing the roads.
    a) trapped b) stayed c) remained d) triggered
11. The strong wind made the windows ..... and that seemed frightening.
    a) warn b) strike c) shake d) suffer
12. The deep-sea divers were exploring the fascinating geological formations ..... the water surface.
    a) from b) with c) over d) beneath
13. People living in low-lying areas near the river are ..... higher risk of flooding.
    a) at b) of c) with d) to
14. The new law was passed after months of debate and discussion. "Passed" means ..... .
    a) proceeded b) rejected c) neglected d) reached
15. The organization specializes in providing aid and assistance for ..... .
    a) kits b) disasters c) inventions d) occasions

Language

16. Who is the ..... of the two runners?

a) faster b) much fastest c) much fast d) more faster

17. French fries are ..... than vegetables.

a) as healthy b) so healthy c) much healthier d) less healthy

18. A plane is ..... than a car.

a) a bit slower b) a lot faster c) more faster d) less faster

19. The Pyramids are one of Egypt's ..... landmarks.

a) the most famous as b) the most famous

c) most famous d) less famous

20. Gold is ..... than copper.

a) a lot expensive b) as expensive

c) most expensive d) much more expensive

21. My brother enjoys quick thinking; he usually reacts ..... all the other members of our family.

a) less quickly than b) more quickly than

c) so quickly as d) more quick than

22. Honey cakes are ..... of all the other cakes in the market.

a) sweetest b) the sweetest c) sweet d) sweeter

23. This road is ..... than the one we took before.

a) narrow b) more narrow c) narrower d) most narrow

24. The more you practice doing something, the ..... it will become.

a) most easy b) more easy c) easier d) less easy

25. The ..... carbohydrates you eat, the healthier you become.

a) least b) little c) most d) less

26. Today's weather is ..... than yesterday's.

a) more colder b) a bit colder c) a bit cold d) much cold

27. The ..... you do exercise, the ..... you are.

a) more / healthier b) most / healthiest c) less / healthier d) most / healthy

28. The ..... you study for these exams, the ..... you will do.

a) harder / better b) hard / better c) hardest / good d) much / better

29. The more books she reads, ... bored she will be.

a) the more b) the most c) the least d) the less

30. The old medicine is ..... than the new one.

a) much less effective b) more less effective

c) less much effective d) slight less effective

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Writing a Formal Report كتابة تقرير رسمى

A **formal report** is a serious written document that gives information about a topic and usually includes advice or suggestions.

التقرير الرسمى هو وثيقة جادة مكتوبة تُقدِّم معلومات عن موضوع ما، وغالبًا ما تتضمّن نصائح أو اقتراحات.

The main elements of a formal report:

1. Title: العنوان:

- Write a clear title that states the report's topic. اكتب عنوانًا واضحًا ينم عن موضوع التقرير.
- To: ..... إلى من ترسل التقرير
- From: ..... اسمك
- Date: ..... تاريخ كتابة التقرير

2. Introduction: المقدمة:

- Briefly state the purpose of the report and what it will cover.

اكتب غرض التقرير بشكل مختصر.

3. Findings (The Main Body): الاكتشافات/المعلومات الرئيسية

- Present the facts and information you discovered. اعرض الحقائق والمعلومات التى اكتشفتها.
- Use bullet points or short paragraphs to make it clear.

استخدم نقاطًا تفصيلية أو فقرات قصيرة لتنسيق الكتابة وجعلها واضحة.

- List some details and examples. اعرض بعض التفاصيل والأمثلة.
- Use phrases like (It was found that.../Furthermore,.../In addition,.../However,...)

استخدم عبارات للإضافة وبيان التناقض.

4. Conclusion: الخاتمة:

- Briefly summarize the most important points from your findings. Do not add new information here. لخص الاكتشافات المذكورة فى تقريرك ولا تضف جديدًا.

5. Recommendations: التوصيات:

- Provide clear, practical suggestions based on the facts in your findings.

قدم اقتراحات عملية واضحة بناءً على الحقائق المذكورة فى التقرير.

MODEL FORMAL REPORT

Report on the Impact of Remote Work on Productivity and Well-being.

To : Head of Human Resources

From : Ahmed Samy, Policy Analyst

Date : 22 Nov. 2025

Introduction:

The purpose of this report is to examine the impact of remote work on employee productivity and overall well-being. This is based on recent internal surveys and performance data from the last year.

Findings:

Our research shows two main things:

- **Productivity:** Many employees report higher productivity levels due to fewer office distractions and a quieter work environment. Furthermore, project completion rates have increased by 15% since the policy's implementation.
- **Well-being:** However, some employees feel lonely working alone. Also, many find it difficult to stop working at the end of the day, which can lead to stress.

Conclusion:

In summary, working from home helps people do more work but can sometimes make them feel less happy.

Recommendations:

We recommend that the company:

- Make clear rules about when to start and stop work each day.
- Plan more online meetings and fun activities to help employees connect.
- Teach managers how to support their teams working from home.

Practice... Skills Exercises

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Language is always changing, evolving, and adapting to the needs of its users. This is actually good for the language. If English hadn't changed since, say, 1950, we wouldn't have words to refer to modems, fax machines, or cable TV. As long as the needs of language users continue to change, so will the language. The change is so slow that from year to year we hardly notice it. Language changes for several reasons. First, it changes because the needs of its speakers change. New technologies, new products, and new experiences require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently. Another reason for change is that no two people have had exactly the same language experience. We all know a slightly different set of words and constructions, depending on our age, job, education level, region of the country, and so on. We pick up new words and phrases from all the different people we talk with. At the same time, various groups in society use language as a way of marking their group identity, showing who is and isn't a member of the group. Many of the changes that occur in language begin with teens and young adults. As young people interact with others of their own age, their language grows to include words, phrases, and constructions that are different from those of the older generation. We get new words from many different places. We borrow them from other languages (sushi, chutzpah), (gym from gymnasium), we create them by shortening longer words or by combining words.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Language is ..... to the needs of its users.

a) steady b) adaptable c) inflexible d) stubborn

2. Although the users of the language need it badly, it changes ..... .

a) hardly b) quickly c) slowly d) individually

3. The antonym of the word "combining" is "..... ".

a) separating b) joining

c) uniting d) linking

4. Changing the language is most desirable by ..... .

a) seniors b) teens and young adults

c) infants d) children

5. Youth and adults usually initiate language change as ..... .

a) they interact only with others of their own age

b) they use words, phrases, and constructions that are different from older generations

c) they don't like their own language

d) their native language isn't available all the time

6. New ..... make language change necessary.

a) technologies b) products c) experiences d) all of these

7. Language acquires its words from ..... .

a) many different places and from other languages

b) older generations

c) teachers and professors

d) books and libraries

8. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The importance of languages b) How to acquire new languages

c) Language change d) Languages in different countries

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Jana was a curious and playful girl who loved exploring her grandmother's house. Her grandmother had a collection of beautiful, delicate vases displayed in the living room. Each vase told a story, and Jana's grandmother often reminded her to be careful around them.

One sunny afternoon, Jana was playing indoors because it was too hot to go outside. She decided to imagine herself as a detective searching for treasure. While running around the living room, she noticed a shiny coin underneath the table. She bent down to grab it. In her excitement, she accidentally bumped the table, causing one of the vases to wobble.

The vase tipped over and shattered into countless pieces on the floor. Jana froze, staring at the broken vase. She felt a wave of regret and fear. Her grandmother walked into the room, saw the broken vase, and sighed deeply. Instead of scolding Jana, she calmly asked, "What happened?" Jana confessed everything while crying. Her grandmother said, "Jana, accidents happen, but they often teach us important lessons. You must remember to think before you act, especially around fragile things." Together, they cleaned up the mess, and her grandmother explained how the vase had been a gift from an old friend.

From that day on, Jana learned to be more mindful of her surroundings. She realized that being careful means respecting the things and people around her.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Jana knocked over the vase as ..... .
- a) she was playing outside
- b) she didn't like the vase
- c) she was trying to move the table
- d) she was being careless while searching for a coin

2. How did Jana feel when the vase broke?
- a) Happy and excited.
- b) Regretful and scared.
- c) Angry and annoyed.
- d) Confident and proud.

3. When she saw the broken vase, Jana's grandmother ..... .
- a) yelled at Jana
- b) ignored the situation
- c) calmly asked what happened
- d) blamed Jana without asking questions

4. Jana learned that ..... .
- a) being careful shows respect
- b) vases are expensive
- c) playing indoors is dangerous
- d) accidents have no consequences

5. Jana was playing indoors because ..... .
- a) it was raining outside
- b) it was too hot to go outside
- c) her grandmother didn't let her play outside
- d) she preferred playing indoors

6. The best title for the passage is "..... ".
- a) The importance of curiosity
- b) The bond between a girl and her grandmother
- c) The joy of playing indoors
- d) The value of being careful

7. Jana and her grandmother ..... .
- a) cleaned up the mess together
- b) argued about the broken vase
- c) blamed someone else
- d) refused to talk to each other

8. The meaning of the underlined word "staring" is "..... ".
- a) blaming someone for something
- b) objecting to doing something
- c) look directly at something
- d) thinking of what will happen

(B) Translation

3 **(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Governments and communities must work together to create effective emergency plans and practice drills to reduce the impact of floods and storms.

a) يجب على المحافظات والمجتمعات أن يعملوا معًا لوضع خطط طوارئ مؤثرة وإجراء تدريبات للحد من تأثير الفيضانات والعواصف.

b) يجب على الحكومات والدول أن يعملوا معًا لوضع خطط طارئة فعالة وإجراء تدريبات للحد من تأثير الفيضانات والعواصف.

c) يجب على الحكومات والمجتمعات أن يعملوا معًا لوضع خطط طارئة فعالة واتخاذ قرارات للحد من تأثير الفيضانات والعواصف.

d) يجب على الحكومات والمجتمعات أن يعملوا معًا لوضع خطط طوارئ فعالة وإجراء تدريبات للحد من تأثير الفيضانات والعواصف.

2. Scientific advancements in weather forecasting, using satellites and radar, help save lives by providing early warnings for hurricanes and other severe weather.

a) تساعد التطورات العلمية فى التنبؤ بالجو، باستخدام الأقمار الصناعية والرادار، على إنقاذ الأرواح من خلال تقديم تحذيرات مبكرة للعواصف والطقس الصلب الآخر.

b) تساعد التطورات المعملية فى التنبؤ بالطقس، باستخدام الأقمار الصناعية والرادار، على إنقاذ الحياة من خلال تقديم تحذيرات مبكرة للأعاصير والطقس القاسى الآخر.

c) تساعد التطورات العلمية فى التنبؤ بالطقس، باستخدام الأقمار الصناعية والرادار، على إنقاذ الأرواح من خلال تقديم تحذيرات مبكرة للأعاصير والطقس القاسى الآخر.

d) تساعد التطورات العلمية فى التنبؤ بالنشرة الجوية، باستخدام الأقمار الصناعية والرادار، على إنقاذ الأرواح من خلال تقديم تحذيرات مبكرة للعواصف الثلجية والطقس القاسى الآخر.

3. The Ministry of Education is trying to develop curricula and modify the exam system. Thus, we can have highly qualified graduates who are able to face global and local challenges.

a) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم العالى تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام البعثات. وبالتالى، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليًا قادرون على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

b) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام الامتحانات. وبالتالى، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليًا قادرون على مواجهة مصاعب الحياة محليًا وقاريًا.

c) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام الامتحانات. وبالتالى، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليًا قادرون على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

d) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المعلمين وتعديل نظام الامتحانات. وبالتالى، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليًا قادرون على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. تعد التوعية بالكوارث الطبيعية جزءًا أساسيًا من خطة السلامة، حيث يمكن أن تنقذ الأرواح وتقلل من الخسائر المادية عند حدوثها.

a) Awareness of normal disasters is an essential role of a safety plan, as it can save lives and reduce material losses when they occur.

b) Awareness of natural disasters is an essential part of a safety plan, as it can save lives and reduce material losses when they occur.

c) Awareness of national disasters is a vital part of a safe plan, as it can save lives and reduce material losses when they occur.

d) Awareness of natural disasters is a necessity part of a safety plan, as it can safe lives and reduce material losses when they occur.

5. يجب على العائلات إعداد حقيبة طوارئ تحتوى على الماء، الأطعمة غير القابلة للتلف، والأوراق المهمة لمواجهة أى موقف طارئ.

a) Families must prepare an emergent kit that includes water, non-perishable foods, and important documents to face any emergency situation.

b) Families must prepare an emergency kit that consists water, perishable foods, and important documents to face any emergent situation.

c) Families must prepare an emergency kit that contains water, non-perishable foods, and important documents to face any emergency situation.

d) Families must manage an emergency kit that contains water, non-perishable foods, and important documents to face any emergency situation.

6. لا شك أن الإنترنت يُعتبر واحدًا من أهم الاختراعات فى الوقت الحاضر. بينما يرى الكثيرون أنه يوفر الوقت والجهد، يعتقد البعض أن له الكثير من المساوئ.

a) There is no doubt that the internet is considered the most important inventions nowadays. While many believe that it saves time and effort, some people think that it has many disadvantages.

b) There is no doubt that the internet is considered one of the most important discoveries nowadays. While many believe that it saves time and effort, some people think that it has many disadvantages.

c) There is no doubt that the internet is considered one of the most important inventions nowadays. While some believe that it saves time and effort, many people think that it has many disadvantages.

d) There is no doubt that the internet is considered one of the most important inventions nowadays. While many believe that it saves time and effort, some people think that it has many disadvantages.

(C) Writing

4 **Write a formal report of (150-180) words on the following:**

"The natural disasters that happened in the past ten years and its consequences"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

doubt	شك	practice drills	تدريبات الطوارئ
emergency	طوارئ	qualified	مؤهل
losses	خسائر	weather forecasting	التنبؤ بالطقس
non-perishable foods	أطعمة غير قابلة للتلف		

Unit 4 Student's Book Corner

Vocabulary

1 Match the words to their meanings:

1. accuracy	a) the amount of water in the air
2. meteorologists	b) how strong or powerful something is
3. humidity	c) how correct or exact something is
4. track	d) practice activities to prepare for real emergencies
5. intensity	e) to cause something to start or happen.
6. pose	f) to follow or watch the movement of something
7. tectonic plates	g) scientists who study and predict the weather
8. drills	h) huge pieces of Earth's surface that move and cause earthquakes.

Language

2 Fill in the blanks (comparative/superlative):

1. This earthquake was ..... (deadly) than the last one.
2. Japan has some of the ..... (advanced) warning systems.
3. Hurricanes are usually ..... (predictable) than earthquakes.
4. The 2011 earthquake was one of the ..... (powerful) disasters in history.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The Nile is the ..... river in the world.
a) long b) longer c) longest d) most long

2. This is ..... phone I've ever had.
a) the best b) good c) better d) as good

3. Cairo is ..... than many other African cities.
a) busy b) busier c) busiest d) the busier

4. This hotel is very ..... . The rooms are clean and the staff are friendly.
a) comfortable b) the most comfortable
c) more comfortable d) as comfortable

5. Yesterday was the ..... day of the summer; it reached 45°C.
a) hot b) hotter c) hottest d) most hot

Unit 4 Al-Azhar Corner

1 Finish the following dialog:

During the break at school, Aya is talking with her friend Walaa about her favorite hobby.

Walaa : Hi, Aya. Why are you putting on your headphones?

Aya : Hi, Walaa. (1)..... .

Walaa : What kind of podcasts are you listening to?

Aya : (2)..... .

Walaa : That's strange. It's rare to find someone who's interested in weather forecasts.

Aya : I like geography, and I'd like to gain general knowledge about climate change. (3).....?

Walaa : For me, I like sports, especially tennis.

Aya : (4).....?

Walaa : In my opinion, Mayar Sherif is the best tennis player.

Aya : It's time to get back to class. Bye, Walaa.

Walaa : Bye, Aya.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What place did the Prophet (PBUH) have to find to convey the message of Islam to the Muslim converts?
2. What happened to the Prophet (PBUH) at the First Aqabah Pledge?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. After the cruelty and violence of Quraysh, the Muslims asked the Prophet (PBUH) to allow them to ..... .

a) hide in Mecca b) leave Mecca c) leave Abyssinia d) stay home

4. The Prophet (PBUH) sent ..... to teach the people of Yathrib about Islam.

a) Ali b) Abu Bakr c) Alabass d) Mus'ab Ibn 'Umair

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- English can be improved through listening to podcasts and stories on condition that there is continuity.

(B) Translate into English:

- الإيمان بالله يقتضى الإيمان بأسمائه الحسنى وصفاته العلا.

Unit 4 General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This area is famous for ....., so people don't build traditional houses.
   a) sun rise b) earthquakes c) sunset d) sunrise
2. Some natural disasters are ..... because we cannot tell when or where they will happen.
   a) expected b) forewarned c) certain d) unpredictable
3. The miners عمال المناجم dug for coal deep ..... the surface of the Earth.
   a) beneath b) on top of c) beside d) next to
4. Areas of natural ..... are in urgent need of protection and support.
   a) deserts b) disasters c) locations d) situations
5. The city's new flood ..... were tested by the rising river water.
   a) weapons b) defenses c) attacks d) decorations
6. We packed a lot of ..... foods for our long road trip; they stayed with us for weeks.
   a) perishable b) fresh c) temporary d) non-perishable
7. ..... are scientists who study and predict the weather.
   a) Meteorologists b) Biologists c) Geologists d) Astronomers
8. I like to travel light. The ..... luggage, the better.
   a) more b) less c) fewer d) little
9. Adel is never on time. He always arrives ..... than the rest of us.
   a) the latest b) later c) last d) latter
10. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something ..... interesting.
    a) much b) most c) less d) more
11. I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk ..... .
    a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) fast and fast
12. Osama tells his doctor that he has been feeling ..... tired lately.
    a) the most b) more and more c) such a d) many
13. My neighbor is driving me mad! It seems that the ..... it is at night, the ..... he plays his music!
    a) later – more loud b) late – louder
    c) later – louder d) more late – loud

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People behave in different ways, and many things affect how they act. Their upbringing, experiences, culture, and surroundings all play a part. For example, a person raised in a caring family may feel confident when facing problems. On the other hand, someone who has faced tough situations may be more careful in their actions.

Culture also influences behavior. In some cultures, showing respect and politeness is very important, while in others, being direct and honest is valued more. Because of these differences, people from different cultures might misunderstand each other. For instance, what seems polite in one culture could seem rude in another.

Emotions are another big factor in behavior. When people are happy, they are more likely to be kind and helpful. However, feelings like anger or fear can change how people act. Anger might make someone act without thinking, while fear might stop them from trying new things.

Social media has also changed how people behave. Many people now look for likes and comments to feel good about themselves. Sometimes, they may share things online that don't reflect who they really are. On social media, people might say things they wouldn't say in real life, which can lead to arguments or misunderstandings.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. The passage is mainly about ..... .

a) why people behave differently
b) the importance of education
c) the benefits of social media
d) how to express emotions

15. ..... can influence people's behavior.

a) Only emotions
b) Culture, emotions, upbringing, and surroundings
c) Favorite hobbies
d) Social media only

16. Cultural differences cause problems because ..... .

a) people forget their traditions
b) people from different cultures dislike each other
c) they create misunderstandings
d) they limit communication

17. People act without thinking when they are ..... .

a) cultured
b) educated
c) happy
d) angry

18. Fear can make people ..... .

a) avoid taking risks
b) act without thinking
c) try new things
d) feel happy

19. The words "polite" and "rude "are ..... .

a) synonyms
b) antonyms
c) emojis
d) memes

20. What does the passage say about social media arguments?

a) They don't happen often.
b) They only happen in person.
c) They are always helpful for communication.
d) They are common because people act differently online.

21. According to the passage, people who are more careful in their actions ..... .

a) always take risks
b) are always angry
c) have faced difficult situations
d) blame others for being confident

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- The champions who won medals in the last Olympics proved that Egyptians are able to do wonders despite their present hardships. They only need facilities and encouragement.

a) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

b) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الحالية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات بسبب الصعوبات الراهنة. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

c) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على امتلاك القدرات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

d) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات المستمرة. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- يحتاج الجميع إلى تناول طعام صحى أكثر من أى وقت مضى، لذا يجب أن نشجع عادات الأكل الجيدة التى تساعد أجيالنا القادمة على أن تكون بصحة جيدة.

a) Everyone needs to eat healthier food than ever before, so we should encourage good eating habits that help our future generations be healthy.
b) Everyone must eat healthier food than ever before, so we should discourage good eating habits that help our future generations be wealthy.
c) Everyone should eat healthier food than ever before, so we should encourage good eating habits that help our future companies be healthy.
d) All want to eat healthier ingredients than ever before, so we should encourage good eating habits that help our future generations be healthy.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around The World In Eighty Days)

1. Why do you think Mr. Fogg doesn't seem interested in seeing the sights in Egypt?
2. How would you feel if someone followed you secretly like Fix?
3. What lesson does Cairo give Passepartout about new cultures?

25. Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"How the state can enhance their preparedness to face a natural disaster."

.....

.....

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★ < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Module (2) General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A good healthcare system should provide ..... access to medical services for all citizens, regardless of their income.
   a) able b) equitable c) chronic d) digital
2. Education is the ..... of Egypt's development strategy, forming the base for all other goals.
   a) initiative b) cornerstone c) sector d) infrastructure
3. The plan focuses on ..... development, aiming to improve the economy and the environment.
   a) comprehensive b) chronic c) comprehendible d) unfair
4. Scientists use satellites and radar to ..... the path of a hurricane.
   a) intensity b) track c) pose d) contact
5. The ..... of an earthquake is measured on a scale that shows how powerful it is.
   a) intensity b) availability c) prediction d) preparedness
6. After the flood warning, the government advised people to ..... the coastal areas immediately.
   a) block b) trap c) evacuate d) strike
7. ..... is the amount of water vapor in the air, which is high before it rains.
   a) Accuracy b) Humidity c) Stickiness d) Preparedness
8. The teacher gave such ..... explanation that everyone understood.
   a) clear b) clearly c) clearing d) clearness
9. He ran ..... to catch the bus but in vain.
   a) quick b) quickly c) in quickly way d) quicker
10. The chicken tasted ....., so we asked for the recipe.
    a) delicious b) deliciously c) delight d) delighting
11. The tsunami was one of the ..... natural disasters in the country's history.
    a) destructive b) more destructive
    c) most destructive d) b & c
12. That was the ..... storm we have ever experienced; the winds were incredibly strong.
    a) severe b) most severe c) more severe d) severest
13. Preparing for a disaster is ..... than dealing with its effects afterwards.
    a) good b) better c) more effective d) effective

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You may have seen pictures of astronauts. They float around in space. They fly in a space shuttle. Have you ever wondered why they float? Your feet stay firmly on the ground. Why don't they? When you drop something, why does it fall? The answer to these questions is something called gravity. It affects everything we do. Gravity is essential for life on Earth. Many years ago, a man named Sir Isaac Newton wondered about gravity, too. He watched and tested the way things move and fall on Earth. He wrote his ideas down. Scientists today use a lot of his ideas. Those ideas are now considered laws of science. Gravity is a force that makes all objects attracted to each other. The bigger the object is, the more it attracts things. Since nothing on Earth is bigger than planet Earth itself, all the things and people on Earth are attracted to Earth. Everything is pulled towards the center of the planet. That is why things fall to the ground. It is also why people and things stay on the ground instead of floating around in space. Earth is even large enough to attract our moon. That's why we can see it in our sky!

Gravity keeps our muscles and bones up and working. Gravity allows Earth to retain its atmosphere. Gravity, being able to store its energy as "potential energy", allows us to harness it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. Why do your feet stay on the ground instead of floating?

a) Because they are heavy.
b) Because there isn't enough air.
c) Because of gravity.
d) Because the Earth is very small.

15. Why are things and people attracted to Earth?

a) Because the Earth is attractive.
b) Because the Earth is bigger than other objects.
c) Because there is magnetism in things and people.
d) Because people like the Earth.

16. What can we see in the sky because of gravity?

a) The planets. b) The stars. c) The sun d) The moon.

17. The synonym of the word "essential" is "……".

a) secondary b) unnecessary c) vital d) option

18. Which best describes Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation?

a) Gravity pulling depends on the length of its orbit.
b) The smaller the object, the greater the force.
c) The largest object exerts a force pulling every other object to it.
d) All objects exert a gravitational force on all other objects.

19. Which has a stronger force of gravity, the Earth or the moon?

a) The Earth.
b) The moon.
c) They are the same.
d) The moon has no gravity.

20. Which has the strongest gravitational pull?

a) The Earth. b) The moon. c) The sun. d) The North Star.

21. Because of gravity, everything is pulled to the ..... of the planet.

a) margin b) center c) left d) ground

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- The ability to forecast a hurricane's path has improved in recent decades. This progress allows governments to organize evacuations, hospitals to prepare for emergencies, and communities to reduce disaster risks effectively.

a) تحسنت القدرة على التنبؤ بمسار الأمطار فى العقود الأخيرة. يتيح هذا التقدم للحكومات تنظيم عمليات الإنقاذ، وللمستشفيات الاستعداد للطوارئ، وللمجتمعات تقليل مخاطر الكوارث المؤثرة.

b) تحسنت القدرة على التحكم فى الأعاصير فى العقود الأخيرة. يتيح هذا التقدم للمحافظات تنظيم عمليات الإجلاء، وللمستشفيات الاستعداد للطوارئ، وللمجتمعات تقليل مخاطر الكوارث بفعالية.

c) تحسنت القدرة على التنبؤ بمسار الأعاصير فى العقود الأخيرة. يتيح هذا التقدم للحكومات تنظيم عمليات الإجلاء، وللمستشفيات الاستعداد للطوارئ، وللمجتمعات تقليل مخاطر الكوارث بفعالية.

d) تحسنت القدرة على التنبؤ بمسار البراكين فى السنين الحديثة. يتيح هذا التقدم للحكومات تنظيم عمليات الإجلاء، وللمستشفيات الاستعداد للطوارئ، وللمجتمعات تقليل مخاطر الكوارث بفعالية.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- بخلاف العواصف، تبقى الزلازل غير متوقعة لأن الصفائح التكتونية تتحرك فى أعماق الأرض دون مؤشرات واضحة، مما يجعل من المستحيل معرفة وقت حدوثها بدقة.

a) Despite storms, earthquakes remain unpredictable because tectonic plates shift deep underground without clear warning signs, making it probable to know exactly when they will happen.

b) Unlike storms, earthquakes remain unpredictable because tectonic plates shift deep underground without clear warning signs, making it impossible to know exactly when they will strike.

c) Unlike storms, earthquakes remain unbelievable because tectonic plates shift deep underground without clear warning signs, making it possible to know exactly when they will strike.

d) Because of storms, earthquakes stay unpredictable because tectonic plates shift deep underground without clear warning signs, making it impossible to know exactly where they will strike.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around The World In Eighty Days)

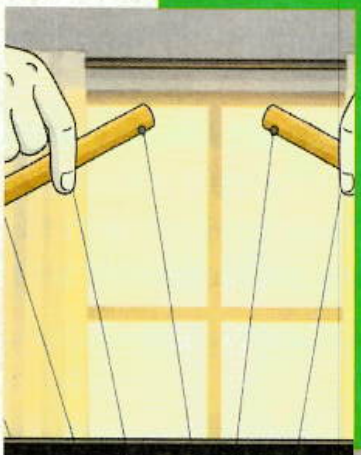
1. Why do you think Detective Fix was so quick to suspect Phileas Fogg of being the bank robber?
2. If you were Passepartout, would you trust Detective Fix? Why or why not?
3. Do you think it's more important to stick to a schedule like Fogg or to enjoy the journey like Passepartout? Explain your choice.

25. Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"Having free time is something you should value and spend on useful things."

.....

Module 3



Unit 5
Media Manipulation

Unit 6
Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills

Module (3) General Exercises
Units 5 & 6

Unit 5
Media Manipulation

Learning Outcomes

Reading	- Identify the main idea and supporting details of a text about the "Anatomy of Fake News". - Distinguish between reliable and unreliable sources by checking for author credentials, publication dates, and tone.
Listening	- Distinguish between sensational and honest headlines, identify main points and opposing viewpoints on content moderation.
Speaking	- Evaluate the readability of different news sources, engage in a simulated radio debate. - Participate in a role-play activity, presenting ideas and arguing points persuasively.
Writing	- Structure an opinion essay with an introduction, body paragraphs, and a conclusion. - Support opinion using evidence and persuasive language.
Language	- Correctly use Tag questions in different settings.

Study... Part 1

Lesson 1: The Anatomy of Fake News
Lesson 2: Radio Debate

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

algorithms (n) خوارزميات	literacy (n) معرفة القراءة والكتابة	removal (n) إزالة/استبعاد
censorship (n) الرقابة	mandatory (adj) إلزامى	restriction (n) تقييد/قيد
cite (v) (d) يستشهد/يشير/ينوه إلى	misleading (adj) مضلل	sensational (adj) مثير
deception (n) خداع	misprints (n) أخطاء مطبعية	transparency (n) الشفافية
distinguish (v) (ed) يميز	regulate (v) (d) ينظم/يضع قواعد	trigger (v) (ed) يسبب/يطلق
free speech حرية التعبير	regulation (n) قانون/لائحة تنظيمية/تنظيم	verify (v) (-y ied) يؤكد/يُوثّق

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

address (v) (ed) يعالج/يتناول	guidelines (n) مبادئ توجيهية	rules (n) قواعد
anatomy (n) تشريح/تحليل	headlines (n) عناوين	shock (v) (ed) (n) يصدم/صدمة
authority (n) سلطة	hide (v) يخبئ/يختبئ	shocking (adj) صادم/مذهل
bias (n) تحيز	impression (n) انطباع	sound (v) (ed) يبدو
chamber (n) حجرة	include (v) (d) يشمل/يتضمن	spread (v) ينتشر
claim (v) (ed) (n) يدعى/ادعاء	journalism (n) الصحافة	stuff (n) أشياء
clarify (v) (-y ied) يوضح/يبين	lawless (adj) بلا قانون	suspicious (adj) مشبوه/مريب
consensus (n) إجماع/توافق	microchips (n) رقائق إلكترونية	threaten (v) (ed) يهدد
critically (adv) بشكل حاسم	misinformation (n) معلومات خاطئة	trick (v) (ed) (n) يخدع/خدعة
deceptive (adj) خادع/مضلل	official (adj) رسمى	unbelievable (adj) لا يمكن تصديقه
distribution (n) توزيع	practical (adj) عملى	unsupported (adj) غير مدعوم
doubtful (adj) مشكوك فيه/مريب	publication (n) نشر/محتوى مطبوع	vaccine (n) مصل/لقاح
emotions (n) مشاعر	questionable (adj) مثير للشك	views (n) آراء/وجهات نظر
extraordinary (adj) غير عادى	quote (v) (d) (n) يقتبس/اقتباس	
fake news أخبار كاذبة	recent (adj) حديث	warning labels شرائط/علامات تحذير
flag (n) (v) (ged) علم/يميز/يضع علامة	reliable journalism صحافة نزيهة	

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The journalist refused to ..... the source of his information.
   a) guess b) match c) cite d) copy
2. The player's sudden ..... from the team caused a lot of surprise.
   a) promotion b) removal c) impression d) discovery
3. Some social media posts use ..... language to attract the reader's attention.
   a) sensational b) boring c) dull d) official
4. Seeing the young boy treated badly ..... my emotions. I decided to take action.
   a) prevented b) triggered c) misled d) compared
5. It really ..... me when I discovered that my friend's photos abroad were fake.
   a) disbelieved b) locked c) sounded d) shocked
6. The school has very ..... rules about student behavior. No student can break them.
   a) flexible b) soft c) strict d) stuffed
7. Mr. Awny received a/an ..... invitation to speak at the conference.
   a) practical b) literate c) sensational d) official
8. Social media can easily become a source of ..... if not used carefully.
   a) misinformation b) communication c) honesty d) instructions

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a media literacy expert خبير فى محو الأمية الإعلامية	in contrast على النقيض	a set of مجموعة من
news consumer متابع/مشاهد الأخبار	right away فورًا/فى الحال	easy to understand سهل الفهم
echo chamber بيئة/مجتمع يتبع نفس الفكر والاتجاه	make sure يتأكد	super easy سهل للغاية
tell the difference يميز الفرق	make informed choices يختار اختيارات صحيحة تدل على المعرفة	agree with يتفق مع
look for يبحث عن	full of مملوء بـ	take ... away يزيل
according to طبقًا لـ/بالنسبة لـ	figure out يكتشف/يتوصل إلى حل/فهم	distinguish between ... and يميز بين...و....
careful with حريص على	point out يوضح	far from over لم ينته بعد
differ from يختلف عن	long-term solution حل بعيد المدى	tend to يميل إلى

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
bias	ينحاز	bias	تحيّز	biased	متحيز
censor	يُراقب/يحذف مشاهد/أجزاء	censorship	رقابة	censorial	رقابى
criticize	ينتقد	criticism	نقد	critical	نقدى/حاسم
deceive	يخدع	deception	خداع	deceitful deceptive	مخادع خادع/خدّاع
distinguish	يميّز	distinction	تمييز	distinctive	مميز
impress	يؤثر	impression	انطباع	impressive	مؤثر/مثير للإعجاب
----------		literacy	معرفة القراءة والكتابة	literate	متعلم/مثقف
mandate	يفرض	mandate	تفويض/أمر/صلاحية	mandatory	إجبارى
multiply	يضاعف	multiplication	تعدد/عملية الضرب فى الحساب	multiple	متعدد
regulate	ينظّم	regulation	تنظيم	regulatory	تنظيمى
rely	يعتمد	reliability	موثوقية	reliable	موثوق فيه
remove	يزيل	removal	إزالة	removable	قابل للإزالة
restrict	يقيّد	restriction	قيد/تقييد	restrictive	مقيِّد
sensationalize	يهوّل	sensationalism	تهويل إعلامى	sensational	مثير/حساس/مدهش
trick	يخدع	trick trickery	خدعة خداع - احتيال	tricky	مخادع/صعب
verify	يتحقق/يُثبت	verification	تحقق/إثبات	verifiable	قابل للتحقق

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- My sister can easily distinguish different types of birds by their sounds. (v)
- There is a clear distinction between formal and informal language. (n)
- My friend has a distinctive voice that you can recognize instantly. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
bias تحيّز	prejudice/partiality	fairness/objectivity عدالة/موضوعية
censorship رقابة	suppression/control/ restriction	freedom/openness/expression حرية/انفتاح/تعبير
deception خداع	trickery/fraud/dishonesty	honesty/truthfulness صدق/قول الحقيقة
literacy معرفة القراءة والكتابة	education/knowledge/ learning	illiteracy/ignorance أمية/جهل
mandatory إلزامى	compulsory/obligatory	optional/voluntary اختيارى/طوعى
misleading مضلل	deceptive/confusing	honest/truthful/clear صادق/صريح/واضح
official رسمى	formal/authorized	unofficial/informal غيررسمى
practical عملى	realistic/useful/functional	impractical/theoretical غيرعملى/نظرى
regulation تنظيم/لائحة	rule/law/guideline	chaos/deregulation/disorder فوضى/إلغاء التنظيم/خلل
reliable موثوق	trustworthy/dependable	unreliable/untrustworthy غيرموثوق/غيرجديربالثقة
removal إزالة	elimination/deletion	addition/insertion إضافة/إدخال
restriction تقييد	limitation/constraint/control	freedom/permission/liberty حرية/سماح
sensational مثير/صادم	shocking/dramatic/ exaggerated	boring/dull/normal ممل/باهت/عادى
trick خدعة	prank/deception	honesty/truth صدق/حقيقة
verify يتحقق/يؤكد	confirm/validate/check	ignore/disprove/overlook يتجاهل/يثبت الخطأ/يغفل

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I will send you the file ..... so you can check it immediately.
   a) until now b) only now c) right now d) later
2. The teacher gave us a ..... of questions to practice before the test.
   a) trick b) set c) cut d) seat
3. Arwa tried to point ..... her perspective to the members of the council.
   a) out b) about c) with d) after
4. I told my father about my ideas, but he didn't agree ..... me.
   a) of b) to c) on d) with
5. The magician الساحر used clever ..... to deceive the audience.
   a) tricky b) trickster c) trickery d) trick
6. The team's performance was really ..... and surprised everyone.
   a) impressive b) impressed c) impress d) impression
7. The teacher asked the student to verify the information. The synonym of the word "verify" is ..... .
   a) print b) publish c) beautify d) confirm
8. Sarah is very reliable; she always finishes her work on time. Which word is an antonym of "reliable"?
   a) Dependable. b) Untrustworthy. c) Shy. d) Trustworthy.

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

THE ANATOMY OF FAKE NEWS

In today's digital age, misinformation spreads faster than wildfire. A recent study found that false news stories spread six times faster on social media than true stories. But how can ordinary readers distinguish between reliable sources and fake news?

A media literacy expert at Cairo University explains: "Don't believe everything you read online. The first red flag is sensational headlines designed to trigger strong emotions. Honest news sources don't use misleading phrases like 'You won't believe what happened next!' or 'This will shock you!'"

According to him, reliable journalism follows strict guidelines. Reliable sources always cite their information, include quotes from multiple views, and provide publication dates. In contrast, fake news articles often hide who wrote them. You'll also often find them full of misprints and making unsupported claims without any evidence.

Social media algorithms make the problem worse. They create "echo chambers," meaning you mostly see stuff that already agrees with what you think. He warns, "People often share articles that match their views without checking if they're true. This makes it super easy for wrong information to spread."

He offers practical advice for news consumers: Don't believe suspicious news right away. Check more than one source before you trust it. Look for information from official places. Be careful with stories that sound too good or too bad to be true. As the saying goes, "if you read closely, you can often figure out how they're trying to trick you."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. According to the expert, a key sign of fake news is a headline designed to ..... .

a) provide accurate information
b) trigger strong emotions
c) cite multiple sources
d) include a publication date

2. Based on the expert's advice, what can we infer about a news article that has no publication date and is full of spelling mistakes?

a) It is from an official source.
b) It is highly reliable.
c) It is likely not trustworthy.
d) It must have been shared widely.

3. If a person only gets their news from one social media feed and never checks other sources, the text suggests they are ..... .

a) very well-informed
b) likely in an "echo chamber" and may believe misinformation
c) following the expert's advice perfectly
d) helping to stop the spread of fake news

4. Which of the following best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

a) Social media is the only source of news.
b) Readers must be critical and check sources to avoid being misled by fake news.
c) All headlines are designed to trick people.
d) Algorithms are always helpful for finding news.

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Welcome to Media Matters. Today we're debating whether social media platforms should be legally required to remove fake news. Joining us are Dr. Lisa Park, digital rights advocate, and Professor Mike Chin, media regulation expert.

Sarah : Dr. Park, let's begin with you.

Lisa : Thank you, Sarah. I oppose compulsory removal. Who decides what's fake? Governments? Tech companies? This path threatens free speech and enables restriction. People should access information and make informed choices. Instead of top-down control, we need stronger media literacy education.

Mike : I disagree. Misinformation spreads faster than facts, leading to real harm. People have died following false medical advice. Social media has a duty to protect users. We regulate TV and radio; digital platforms shouldn't be a lawless zone. Self-regulation has clearly failed.

Lisa : But traditional media has editors and fact-checkers. Social media hosts millions of user posts daily. Impossible to verify all. And who oversees the censors? Once we allow removal of false content, where does it end?

Mike : I'm not talking about opinions. I mean obviously false claims like vaccines containing microchips or climate change being a deception. Platforms already remove spam and hate speech. Why not dangerous misinformation? AI can help flag suspicious content.

Lisa : But algorithms make mistakes and reflect programmer bias. Sincere voices are often silenced. Also, banning content can make it more appealing—the forbidden fruit effect. Transparency and education are safer, longer-term solutions.

Sarah : Thank you both. Clearly, this critical debate is far from over.

Definitions

التعريفات

algorithms	خوارزميات	a set of rules or instructions that a computer follows to solve a problem or complete a task
censorship	رقابة	control of what people can see, read, or say
cite	يذكر/يستشهد بـ	to mention something as an example or proof
deception	خداع	the act of tricking someone or making them believe something that is not true
distinguish	يُميز	to tell the difference between two or more things; to see what makes them separate or unique

echo chambers	بيئة/مجتمع يتبع نفس الفكر والاتجاه	it is an environment—especially online or in social media—where people are only exposed to opinions and information that confirm their existing beliefs, and opposing views are ignored or excluded.
literacy	معرفة القراءة والكتابة	the ability to read and write
mandatory	إلزامى	required by law or rules; not optional
misleading	مضلل	giving the wrong idea or impression; deceptive
misprints	أخطاء مطبعية	small printing mistakes in books or documents
regulation	تنظيم/لائحة قانونية	an official rule made by an authority
removal	إزالة	the act of taking something away or off
restriction	تقييد	a rule or limit that controls what you can do
sensational	مثير/حساس	causing great public excitement or interest
transparency	شفافية	the quality of being open, honest, and easy to understand; no secrets
trigger	يُسبب/يطلق/يُثير	to cause something to start or happen suddenly
verify	يتحقق/يؤكد	to make sure something is true, accurate, or correct

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**recent** شيء حدث أو ظهر قبل وقت قصير من الآن (حديث من حيث الوقت)	I saw a recent movie last week.
	modern شيء جديد حسب التكنولوجيا (متطور ومعاصر)	This is a modern phone with many options.
2	**spread** - ينتشر (بشكل عام - طبيعى - اجتماعى) - ينشر (فكرة - خبرًا - إشاعة/مرضًا) بين الناس	- The news spread quickly across the city. - Tomorrow's class is canceled; please spread the word.
	publish ينشر رسميًا (كتابًا، مقالًا، محتوى إعلاميًا)	The author published a new book last year.

3	**headline** عنوان رئيسى لخبر أو مقال (فى الصحف أو المواقع لجذب الانتباه)	The headline of the newspaper was about the election.
	address - عنوان مكان (منزل أو شركة مثلًا) - خطاب رسمى على جمهور - يخاطب	- Tell me your home address, please. - The minister gave an important address. - The minister addressed all categories of the people.
	title - عنوان كتاب أو فيلم (هنا عنوان عام) - لقب مسمى وظيفى للشخص	- The title of the book is "War and Peace". - What is your job title?
4	**include** يشمل	The price of the car includes tax.
	contain يحتوى على شىء داخله (شىء داخل شىء)	The bottle contains water.
	consist (of) يتكون من (ذكر كل ما يتكون منه الشىء)	The team consists of ten players.
5	**stuff** أشياء غير محددة	I packed all my stuff in a bag.
	staff الموظفون أو طاقم العمل	The staff of this school is clever.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... is the act of tricking someone or making them believe something that is not true.
   a) Honesty b) Deception c) Warning d) Production
2. The advertisement was ..... because it made a person believe something that wasn't true.
   a) misleading b) accurate c) honest d) modern
3. Smartphones are considered ..... technology because they have many new features.
   a) recent b) ancient c) modern d) traditional
4. What is the ..... of the movie you watched?
   a) title b) address c) headline d) location
5. The young author hopes to ..... his new novel.
   a) hide b) spread c) delete d) publish
6. It was said that the vaccine ..... microchips.
   a) consisted b) included c) contained d) spread

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Scientists need ..... data from reliable sources to have correct results.
   a) deceptive b) accurate c) long d) missing
2. The employees of the company demand more ..... in how decisions are made.
   a) transparency b) silence c) punishment d) control
3. The publisher decided to stop distributing the book as it was full of ..... .
   a) algorithms b) misprints c) headlines d) summaries
4. There must be ..... of the media to limit public access to private information.
   a) encouragement b) deception c) censorship d) leadership
5. Wearing helmets is ..... for all motorcyclists in most countries.
   a) optional b) recommended c) temporary d) mandatory
6. Medical students must understand the ..... of muscles and bones.
   a) anatomy b) behavior c) nutrition d) condition
7. All students should read the ..... carefully before starting the exam.
   a) guidelines b) answers c) chambers d) social media
8. Osama gave me some ..... advice that helped me solve most of my problems.
   a) confusing b) strange c) practical d) lucky
9. During the interview, you must make a good first ..... by being confident and accurate.
   a) sentence b) guess c) impression d) comment
10. The school principal has the ..... to set rules for the school and its staff.
    a) transparency b) authority c) suggestion d) plan
11. The government started a public campaign to raise adult ..... .
    a) anatomy b) literacy c) bias d) restriction
12. The sources that the team uses for their university project must be ..... .
    a) reliable b) interesting c) fake d) unbelievable
13. Now that we've made sure the post contains fake news, we're waiting for its ..... .
    a) support b) removal c) approval d) appearance
14. The article was removed as its writer's claim was not ..... true.
    a) emotionally b) tricky c) verifiably d) digitally
15. The author is so clever that he describes the ..... of the main character in detail.
    a) directions b) characteristics c) stories d) settings
16. "Actions speak louder than words." This is an old ..... which encourages practical actions.
    a) saying b) warning c) title d) rule

17. The actor's performance on the stage was truly ..... and inspired everyone.
a) relaxed b) ordinary c) extraordinary d) stressful

18. Facebook and other websites use ..... to manipulate the content shown to you.
a) algorithms b) impressions c) vaccines d) sounds

19. There was something wrong about his behavior and I immediately felt ..... and called the police.
a) clear b) believable c) suspicious d) detailed

20. The patient is in ..... condition and needs surgery.
a) tricky b) simple c) critical d) easy

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. Social media websites tend to create echo ..... ; that's why we see posts we agree with.
a) restrictions b) chambers c) regulations d) removals

22. Our views differ considerably ..... those of our parents and grandparents.
a) of b) from c) with d) at

23. A ..... can teach students how to detect fake news online.
a) media literacy expert b) science fiction author
c) news reporter d) media owner

24. Ali is sociable and likes going out a lot. In ....., his brother is shy and private.
a) opposite b) harmony c) details d) contrast

25. People ..... to trust familiar sources more than new ones.
a) tend b) decide c) refuse d) stop

26. Students should know how to ..... numbers quickly in their heads.
a) multiplication b) multiply c) multiple d) multiples

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. We always use reliable websites when we do research. The synonyms of the word "reliable" are ..... .
a) inaccurate b) trustworthy c) dependable d) informal e) formal

28. The government launched a campaign to promote literacy among adults. The antonyms of the word "literacy" are ..... .
a) ignorance b) strength c) illiteracy d) dependence e) weakness

29. Many influencers opposed the deliberate removal of their content. The synonyms of the word "removal" are ..... .
a) elimination b) addition c) deletion d) disappearance e) insertion

30. The app asks you to insert you ID number to verify your identity. The synonyms of the word "verify " are ..... .
a) support b) confirm c) spread d) validate e) disprove

B Language

Tag Question — السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم تكوين هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير العائد على الاسم.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لابد أن يكون السؤال المنفى مختصرًا.
- السؤال المذيل يأتى قبله (,).

Positive statement	+	Negative question tag	Negative statement	+	Positive question tag
(+)		(-)	(-)		(+)
You are a student	,	aren't you?	Hala is not a nurse	,	is she?

+ Sentence → - Tag			- Sentence → + Tag		
Ali is Egyptian	,	isn't he?	John isn't Egyptian	,	is he?
You study hard	,	don't you?	You don't study hard	,	do you?
He lives in Cairo	,	doesn't he?	He doesn't live in Cairo	,	does he?
You were at home	,	weren't you?	You weren't at home	,	were you?
Ola visited her uncle	,	didn't she?	Ola didn't visit her uncle	,	did she?
Omar was watching TV	,	wasn't he?	Omar wasn't watching TV	,	was he?
You have seen my bag	,	haven't you?	You haven't seen my bag	,	have you?
You have dinner at 8 p.m.	,	don't you?	You don't have dinner at 8 p.m.	,	do you?
She's finished the report	,	hasn't she?	She hasn't finished yet	,	has she?
She has blonde hair	,	doesn't she?	She doesn't have blonde hair	,	does she?

He'd finished by 6 p.m.	, hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 p.m.	, had he?
He'd rather leave now	, wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	, would he?
He'd better find a job	, hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	, had he?
They'll help us	, won't they?	They won't help us	, will they?
He can ride a horse	, can't he?	He can't ride a horse	, can he?
We need more money	, don't we?	We needn't more money	, need we?
He used to get up early	, didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	, did he?
I think he is a thief	, isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	, is he?
I'm right	, aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	, am I?
			حالات خاصة:
Let's go out اقتراح	, shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	, will/won't you?
Interesting	, isn't it?	Beautiful	, isn't she?
This/ That is Ahmed's car	, isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	, aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	, isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	, aren't there?
Stop talking	, will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	, will you?

لاحظ

1 الجملة التى تحتوى على never – rarely – hardly – seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتًا.

- He can hardly run, can he?
- He rarely visits you, does he?

2 إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it.

- Nothing can live without energy, can it?

3 إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, Everybody - Someone, Somebody - No one, No body يكون الضمير they.

- Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She hasn't got a brother, ... she?
a) does b) hasn't
c) has d) doesn't

2. I would never go with them, ... I?
a) wouldn't b) would
c) did d) aren't

3. Reham arrived late, ... she?
a) didn't b) did
c) wasn't d) was

4. The movie will start soon, ... it?
a) can b) will
c) should d) won't

5. Karim and Maged love comedy movies, ...?
a) aren't they b) are they
c) don't they d) do they

2 Complete the following sentences with the correct tag question:

1. It's very hot today, ...?

2. You don't know the answer, ...?

3. She can speak French fluently, ...?

4. He never does his homework, ...?

5. I'm invited to the party too, ...?

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. English is easy, right? (it)
.....

2. The movie isn't good. What do you think? (is)
.....

3. The media has a vital role in raising awareness. You agree? (it)
.....

4. They will come to the meeting. Do you agree? (they)
.....

5. Apparently, he can't swim. (can)
.....

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My brother isn't here, ...?

a) he is b) is there c) isn't he d) is he

2. Lions aren't tame animals, ...?

a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they

3. The children haven't finished yet, ... they?

a) haven't b) have c) do d) don't

4. We must be at school at 8 o'clock, ... we?

a) aren't b) don't c) needn't d) mustn't

5. He used to be a famous doctor, ... he?

a) didn't b) wasn't c) wouldn't d) weren't

6. She comes from a rich family in London, ...?

a) didn't she b) doesn't she c) hasn't she d) won't she

7. You have finished your work, ...?

a) don't you b) didn't you c) haven't you d) have you

8. You lived here 3 months ago, ...?

a) didn't you b) don't you c) had you d) do you

9. He can't swim, ... he?

a) does b) will c) can d) is

10. They used to live in the New Valley, ... they?

a) didn't b) aren't c) don't d) did

11. Somebody has taken my dictionary, ...?

a) hasn't one b) haven't they c) don't they d) doesn't he

12. There's a fly in your soup, ...?

a) is it b) is there c) isn't there d) isn't it

13. Somebody is knocking at the door, ...?

a) is it b) isn't it c) are they d) aren't they

14. You think that Ali will come soon, but you aren't sure, ...?

a) won't you b) are you c) will he d) do you

15. Give Ahmed this camera tomorrow, ...?

a) don't you b) will you c) do you d) aren't you

16. He had lunch at home today, ...?

a) did he b) didn't he c) hadn't he d) had he

17. She has never been to Egypt, ... she?

a) has b) does c) hasn't d) doesn't

18. You'd better leave now, ... you?

a) hadn't b) don't c) had d) wouldn't

19. I think he's from India, ...?

a) don't I b) doesn't he c) isn't he d) hasn't he

20. He'd come to the party if I invited him, ...?

a) don't I b) hadn't he c) wouldn't he d) didn't I

21. There has been no rain for the last couple of weeks, ...?

a) hasn't it b) hasn't there c) isn't it d) has there

22. ....., isn't it?

a) It's not your dog b) It's very hot in the Sahara

c) This isn't Ahmed d) It's never cold in Aswan

23. ....., aren't I?

a) I'm not your English teacher b) He is your English teacher

c) I'm your English teacher d) You're my English teacher

24. She hardly goes anywhere alone, ...?

a) is she b) does she c) doesn't she d) hasn't she

25. You don't think I will pass the exam, ...?

a) won't I b) don't you c) will I d) do you

26. I am allowed to take photos here, ...?

a) aren't I b) can't I c) shall I d) am I

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. Let's order a pizza, will we? (.....)

2. Nothing was stolen, wasn't it? (.....)

3. They will arrive at eight o'clock, will they? (.....)

4. That wasn't a very good movie, is it? (.....)

5. Everyone is ready to leave, do they? (.....)

Test Yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Teachers must avoid any form of ..... when dealing with students.
a) kindness b) bias c) comment d) rule

2. The email was suspicious, so I had to ..... the identity of its sender.
a) delete b) guess c) verify d) save

3. Parents can easily ..... their children's voice.
a) ignore b) distinguish c) delete d) change

4. We should respect others' ..... and understand the meaning of tolerance.
a) views b) algorithms c) misprints d) vaccines

5. We need to verify all the information which differ from scientific ..... on vaccine safety.
a) fear b) consensus c) trend d) law

6. While reading, I ..... important paragraphs to return to them later.
a) flag b) shock c) distribute d) claim

7. The teacher tried to ..... the instructions before the test.
a) satisfy b) charge c) clarify d) confuse

8. A lot of people all over the world received the COVID-19 ..... in 2021.
a) training b) vaccine c) advice d) phrase

9. The speaker shared a famous ..... from Nelson Mandela at the beginning of his speech.
a) quote b) flag c) distribution d) rule

10. The goods have been sitting in a warehouse مستودع for months ready for ..... .
a) location b) multiplication
c) distribution d) misinformation

11. The journalist waited for the official ..... of her work.
a) sharing b) publication c) hearing d) typing

12. The suspect's description of the crime didn't ..... what actually happened.
a) compare b) match c) correct d) think

13. ..... sure that you check your answers before you hand in your exam paper.
a) Make b) Do c) Take d) For

14. I'm trying to figure ..... how to fix this problem.
a) at b) off c) in d) out

15. The battery is not ..... in this model of the phone.
a) visible b) removable c) flexible d) critical

Language

16. Nothing is impossible, ...?

a) is it b) isn't it c) does it d) doesn't it

17. I'm your best friend, ...?

a) am I not b) not I c) aren't I d) don't I

18. Don't be late, ...?

a) will you b) won't you c) do you d) aren't you

19. He'd rather stay home, ...?

a) hadn't he b) didn't he c) wouldn't he d) won't he

20. Everyone enjoyed the concert, ...?

a) didn't they b) did they c) haven't they d) isn't it

21. This is your notebook, ...?

a) is this b) isn't this c) is it d) isn't it

22. Yasser used to live in Alexandria, ...?

a) used he b) didn't he c) hadn't he d) isn't he

23. You'd better apologize, ...?

a) wouldn't you b) hadn't you c) didn't you d) shouldn't you

24. There were many people at the event, ...?

a) were there b) weren't there c) are there d) didn't there

25. Yasmeen can hardly see without her glasses, ...?

a) can't she b) can she c) does she d) doesn't she

26. I think he is right, ...?

a) don't I b) do I c) isn't he d) is he

27. Let us help you with that, ...?

a) shall we b) will you c) do you d) aren't you

28. He has a lot of work to do, ...?

a) hasn't it b) doesn't he c) has he d) isn't he

29. That sounds wonderful, ...?

a) doesn't that b) isn't it c) doesn't it d) is it

30. You need more time to finish, ...?

a) needn't you b) need you c) don't you d) do you

Study... Part 2

Lesson 3: Media Contexts
Lesson 4: The Puppet Masters
Lesson 5: My Opinion Essay

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

loop (n)	حلقة / دائرة	subtle (adj)	دقيق / خفي / خبيث
manipulation (n)	تلاعب / استغلال	tactic (n)	تخطيط / طريقة / تكتيك
reflection (n)	انعكاس / تفكير	trending (adj)	اتجاه / محتوى رائج
spark (n) (v) (ed)	شرارة / وَمْضة / يُثير / يحث		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

addiction (n)	إدمان	extreme (adj)	شديد / متطرف	psychological (adj)	نفسي
behavior (n)	سلوك	false (adj)	كاذب / مزيف	puppet (n)	دمية / شخص تابع
belonging (n)	انتماء	feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة / تعليقات / ملاحظات	realize (v) (d)	يدرك
classmate (n)	زميل الفصل	feelings (n)	مشاعر	recognize (v) (d)	يتعرف على
click (n) (v) (ed)	ينقر / نقرة	framing (n)	وضع إطار / صياغة	reinforce (v) (d)	يقوى / يعزز
common (adj)	شائع	guilty (adj)	مذنب	response (n)	استجابة / رد
complex (adj)	معقد	highlight (v) (ed)	تسلط الضوء على	shape (n) (v) (d)	شكل / يشكل
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر / يضع في الاعتبار	influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير / يؤثر على	simplify (v) (~~y~~ied)	يبسط
consume (v) (d)	يستهلك	lifestyle (n)	أسلوب الحياة	specific (adj)	محدد
curiosity (n)	فضول	master (n)	سيد / زعيم	target (n)	هدف
device (n)	جهاز	mindful (adj)	منتبه	techniques (n)	أساليب
directions (n)	اتجاهات	outlets (n)	منصات / وكالات	thoughts (n)	أفكار / معتقدات
discourage (v) (d)	يثبط / لا يشجع	override (v) (n)	يتجاوز / يتعدى / يتجاهل / تجاوز	unbelievable (adj)	لا يصدق
existing (adj)	متواجد / موجود	pause (v) (d) (n)	يتوقف / وقفة	urgency (n)	إلحاح / استعجال
exploration (n)	استكشاف	personalize (v) (d)	يخصص / يجعل الأمور شخصية	viral (adj)	فيروسي
exposure (n)	التعرض لـ	preference (n)	أفضلية / تفضيل		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The coach introduced a new ..... to win the match.
   a) discovery b) device c) shape d) tactic
2. Some advertisements ..... a certain feeling towards their products. They force you to buy.
   a) spark b) remove c) pause d) realize
3. The teacher was pleased with the student's positive ..... to the new technique.
   a) damage b) silence c) response d) failure
4. We all agree that the human brain is more ..... than the best computer.
   a) simple b) complex c) clear d) guilty
5. Most people change their ..... when they move to a new country or city.
   a) examination b) framing c) lifestyle d) exposure
6. We tend to ..... a lot of electricity during summer because of the air conditioning.
   a) consume b) collect c) cost d) explore
7. Regular exercise can ..... your body in a healthy way and make it stronger.
   a) remove b) recognize c) shape d) override
8. The marketing team set a clear ..... to increase sales by 20% before the end of the year.
   a) audience b) target c) background d) outlet

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

eye-catching headlines عناوين تخطف العين (تجذب الانتباه)	without us noticing دون أن نلاحظ	going viral ينتشر بسرعة (كالنار فى الهشيم)
finer details تفاصيل أكثر دقة / صغيرة	social proof الدليل الاجتماعى (تقليد من حولك)	for this reason لهذا السبب
over time بمرور الوقت	cropped photo صورة مقصوصة	follow the news يتابع الأخبار
puppet masters سادة الدمى (من يحركون الأحداث)	shaping thoughts تشكيل المعتقدات / الأفكار	stay aware يبقى واعيًا
lead to يؤدى إلى	join in ينضم إلى	gain control يتولى السيطرة
similar to متشابه مع	responsible for مسئول عن	miss out يفوته شىء
make sense يبدو منطقيًا	on my wish list فى قائمة أمنياتى	share voices يشارك الآراء

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
behave	يتصرف	behavior	سلوك	behavioral	سلوكى
consider	يَعتبر	consideration	اعتبار	considerate considered	مُراعٍ معتبَر
consume	يستهلك	consumption consumer	استهلاك مستهلك	consumable consuming	قابل للاستهلاك مستهلك
----------		curiosity	فضول	curious	فضولى
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استكشاف مستكشف تجاوز/إلغاء	exploratory	استكشافى
influence	يؤثر	influence influencer	تأثير مؤثر	influential	ذو تأثير
manipulate	يتلاعب	manipulation	تلاعب	manipulated manipulative	متلاعب به متلاعب/مخادع
override	يتجاوز/يتخطى/يتعدى	override	تأثير	overriding	مُتجاوز/مهيمن
personalize	يخصص	personalization	تخصيص	personalized	مُخصص/مشخص
recognize	يتعرف	recognition	تعرّف/إدراك	recognizable	قابل للتعرف عليه
reflect	يفكر فى/يعكس	reflection	انعكاس/تفكير	reflective	عاكس/تأملى
respond	يرد/يستجيب	response	استجابة	responsive	سريع الاستجابة
shape	يُشكّل	shape	شكل	shapely	متناسق/رشيق
spark	يقدح/يثير	spark	شرارة/شرارات	sparkly	متلألئ/براق
specify	يُحدد	specification/specificity	تحديد/خصوصية	specific	محدد
trend	يتجه/يميل	trend	اتجاه/توجه	trendy	عصرى/رائج

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The producer tried to manipulate public opinion through misleading advertisements. (v)
- The stock market البورصة crashed due to manipulation by a group of corrupt investors. (n)
- The workers realized he was manipulative and wanted to exploit يستغل them. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
common شائع/مألوف	popular/familiar/usual	rare/unusual نادر/غير مألوف
complex معقد	complicated/intricate	simple/easy بسيط/سهل
consume يستهلك	use/absorb	save/preserve يحفظ/يحافظ
curiosity فضول	interest/eagerness	apathy/disinterest لا مبالاة/عدم اهتمام
discourage يثبط/يحبط	deter/demotivate	encourage/inspire يشجع/يلهم
exposure تعرّض/كشف	vulnerability/disclosure	concealment/protection إخفاء/حماية
guilty مذنب/يشعر بالذنب	ashamed/remorseful	innocent/guiltless برىء/بلا ذنب
highlight يبرز/يسلط الضوء على	emphasize/underline	ignore/downplay يتجاهل/يهون من
mindful منتبه/واعٍ	aware/attentive	careless/unaware مهمل/غير مدرك
psychological نفسي/ذهني	mental/emotional	physical/bodily جسدي/بدني
realize يدرك	understand/grasp	ignore/misunderstand يتجاهل/يسيء الفهم
response استجابة	reply/reaction	silence/inaction صمت/لا مبالاة
simplify يُبسط	clarify/streamline	complicate/confuse يعقد/يربك
specific محدد/معين	exact/defined	general/vague عام/غامض
subtle دقيق/خفي	delicate/faint	obvious/blatant واضح/صارخ
trending شائع/رائج	popular/viral	outdated/irrelevant قديم/غير متعلق
urgency استعجال/إلحاح	haste/immediacy	delay/patience تأخير/صبر

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Before signing the contract, make sure you read all the ..... details carefully.
   a) finer b) early c) aware d) viral
2. Most influencers hope their content will end up going ..... at some point.
   a) crazy b) unnoticed c) viral d) dull
3. News websites often use ..... headlines to grab the reader's attention.
   a) eye-catching b) boring c) random d) silent
4. This movie is very similar ..... the one we watched last weekend.
   a) from b) to c) with d) as
5. Reducing energy ..... is essential for protecting the environment.
   a) consumption b) consumed c) consume d) consumes
6. Children are naturally curious and show ..... behavior during learning.
   a) explore b) exploration c) exploratory d) explorer
7. Esraa asked for a specific topic to write about. The synonym of "specific" is ..... .
   a) public b) general c) lone d) exact
8. "Either-or framing" is a common tactic which simplifies complex trending topics . The antonym of the word "common" is ..... .
   a) unusual b) unable c) unlocked d) uninteresting

Reading Text (1)

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Every day, millions consume media without realizing how deeply their thoughts and choices are shaped. From eye-catching headlines to personalized social media content, modern media uses subtle psychological techniques to influence behavior.

"Most people believe they make independent decisions, but the truth is, media messages are designed to guide thoughts in specific directions—often without us noticing."

One powerful method is emotional manipulation. Words like "shocking," "unbelievable," or "you won't believe" are carefully chosen to spark strong feelings. This emotional response can override critical thinking, leading people to react quickly—liking, sharing, or believing content without reflection.

Another common tactic is the "either-or" framing, which simplifies complex topics into two extreme options. This reduces curiosity and discourages deeper exploration. For example, lifestyle or health topics may be presented as "good vs. bad," without considering the finer details.

Social proof is also widely used. Phrases like "going viral" or "everyone is trying this" create a sense of urgency and belonging. Platforms highlight trending content, making users feel they're missing out if they don't join in.

Algorithms further shape experience by showing content similar to what users have engaged with before. This creates a feedback loop, reinforcing existing preferences and limiting exposure to new ideas. Over time, people may not realize their view of the world is narrow.

Once you recognize these patterns, you gain control. The key is developing mindful media habits — pausing to ask, why am I seeing this? Who benefits if I click, believe, or share? In the digital age, attention is the most valuable resource—and our minds are the target.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is "……".

a) Social media is the best way to stay informed

b) People should stop using the internet completely

c) Media subtly shapes thoughts and behaviors using psychological techniques

d) Scientists are responsible for creating online content and shaping thoughts

2. "Once you recognize these patterns, you gain control", this means …… .

a) you can delete all your apps

b) you should stop trusting all scientists

c) awareness helps you make more thoughtful choices about media

d) you can become famous online by promoting for some new devices

3. Attention is described as "the most valuable resource" in the digital age because …… .

a) internet speed is limited

b) schools are using more technology

c) people need more sleep for their physical and mental health

d) companies profit when users click, watch, or share content

4. According to the text, one powerful method media uses to influence behavior is …… .

a) providing balanced arguments

b) emotional manipulation

c) offering financial incentives

d) using complex scientific language

Reading Text (2)

The Good Use of Media

In my opinion, media is very important because it shapes the way we see the world and how we make decisions. Through television, newspapers, and especially social media, people can learn new ideas, follow the news, and share their own voices. Media also helps us connect with others, even if they live far away, and it provides us with an opportunity to learn about different cultures. At the same time, media can influence our choices, such as what products we buy or what opinions we believe. For this reason, I think media has a strong power to change our lives, and we should use it wisely to get benefits and avoid harm.

Although media can be useful, I believe it also has many disadvantages. Spending too much time on social media or watching TV may waste valuable hours that could be used for studying or working.

Media can also spread false news or harmful content that confuses people and creates fear. Sometimes, it makes people compare themselves to others, which may lead to stress or low self-confidence. In addition, too much media use can cause addiction and reduce real communication between family members and friends. For these reasons, I think media can have a harmful effect on our lives if we do not control how we use it.

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Have you ever stopped to think about how the news affects your opinions? Media outlets don't just report facts, do they? They often choose which stories to show, don't they? And sometimes they use emotional language to influence how we feel, don't they?

For example, one news channel might say 'Protesters caused chaos in the city, right? But another might say 'Citizens peacefully demanded change, isn't that true? The facts might be similar, but the tone is different, isn't it? Images and headlines can also be misleading, can't they? A cropped photo might make someone look guilty even if they're not, wouldn't you agree?

The truth is, not all media is trying to trick us, is it? But we should still ask questions, shouldn't we? Who owns this channel? What's their purpose? If we think critically, we won't be easily manipulated, will we? After all, a smart reader checks sources, shares carefully, and stays aware. Doesn't that make sense?

Definitions التعريفات

either-or framing طريقة «إما هذا أو ذاك»	it's a way of simplifying complex issues into binary choices, often to persuade or manipulate
going viral ينتشر سريعًا	refers to the rapid and widespread sharing of content (such as a video, image, post, or idea) across the internet, especially on social media platforms
loop حلقة/دورة متكررة	something that repeats over and over again
manipulation تلاعب	controlling someone or something in a clever or unfair way
reflection تأمل/تفكير عميق	careful thinking about something
social proof دليل اجتماعي	a psychological and persuasive principle where people look to the behavior or opinions of others to guide their own actions—especially in uncertain situations
spark يُشعل/يُحفّز	to cause something to start or happen
subtle خفي/دقيق	not easy to notice; very small or gentle
tactic تكتيك/أسلوب مخطط	a planned action or method to achieve a goal
trending شائع/رائج/ترند	becoming very popular now, especially on social media

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**realize** يدرك - يفهم شيئًا فجأة (لم يكن يعرفه من قبل)	She suddenly realized she had left her phone at home.
	understated يفهم معنى الشيء أو الفكرة أو كيفية عمل الشيء	I understand how this machine works.
	notice يلاحظ شيئًا بصريًا	She didn't notice that the lights were off.
	know يعرف (معرفة عامة أو سابقة سواء بشخص أو مكان أو معلومة)	I know that she is a doctor.
	recognize يتعرف على (شخص أو شيء بسبب ذاكرة سابقة)	I didn't recognize him with the new haircut.

2	**every day** كلمتان (بينهما فاصل) هى ظرف زمان بمعنى كل يوم	I go to school every day.
	everyday كلمة واحدة (بدون فاصل) هى صفة بمعنى يومى أو معتاد	These are my everyday activities.
3	**directions** اتجاهات (غالبًا ترتبط بالمكان أو الحركة من مكان لآخر)	Can you give me directions to the nearest gas station?
	instructions تعليمات (غالبًا ترتبط بتنفيذ مهام أو اتباع خطوات)	Follow the instructions on the box to make the cake.
4	**spark** شرارة/يشعل شيئًا (سواء حرفى أو مجازى) مثل بداية النار أو الفكرة أو الحدث	- His comment sparked anger among the students. - The fire started with a spark.
	sparkle يلمع/لمعان (وصف شىء يتلألأ)	- The stars sparkled in the night sky. - Her eyes sparkled when she saw the gift.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. ..... is the act of influencing someone in a clever or unfair way, often to your own advantage.
   a) Motivation b) Communication c) Manipulation d) Reflection
2. The dry leaves caught a ..... from the fire and started burning.
   a) sparkle b) flash c) shine d) spark
3. While reading the message, I suddenly ..... how serious the situation was.
   a) recognized b) taught c) realized d) appeared
4. The GPS displayed confusing ..... and we ended up in the wrong place.
   a) directions b) instructions c) rules d) information
5. Leila wore her ..... clothes to the party, not something special.
   a) every day b) each day c) someday d) everyday
6. I didn't ..... her at first because she had changed so much.
   a) realize b) recognize c) understand d) learn

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The problem that we faced was very ..... and needed careful analysis تحليل.
   a) simple b) complex c) common d) clear
2. It is ..... for people to have different opinions on the same matter.
   a) subtle b) specific c) guilty d) common
3. This new fashion style is currently ..... on all social media platforms.
   a) trending b) discouraged c) targeting d) ignored
4. There was a ..... change in her appearance that only her close relatives could notice.
   a) subtle b) loud c) strong d) heavy
5. Many advertisements are designed with a ..... strategy to influence behavior.
   a) cultural b) mindful c) legal d) psychological
6. To clarify your point easily, you should give some ..... examples.
   a) complex b) vague c) specific d) broad
7. Space ..... has led to the discovery of new planets and stars.
   a) prediction b) destruction c) imitation d) exploration
8. The company says there's no real ..... to finish work today; we can take our time.
   a) pleasure b) urgency c) curiosity d) apology
9. All my family have a ..... for sweet food over savory.
   a) preference b) like c) guess d) prediction
10. The judge قاضي found him ..... and decided to send him to prison.
    a) innocent b) honest c) similar d) guilty
11. Everyone can ..... their profile by adding a photo and some information about themselves.
    a) delete b) remove c) personalize d) reset
12. Negative comments can ..... people from trying something new.
    a) discourage b) annoy c) allow d) welcome
13. Children's endless ..... leads them to explore everything they see.
    a) device b) trending c) curiosity d) hesitation
14. To be able to ..... the default settings on the phone, you need a password.
    a) spark b) click c) discourage d) override
15. Regular practice helps us to ..... what we've learned.
    a) reinforce b) help c) ignore d) confuse
16. The speaker used real-life stories to ..... the importance of teamwork.
    a) highlight b) ignore c) dismiss d) sparkle

17. The traveler lost his electronic ..... while going on an adventure.
a) device b) message c) photo d) form

18. The seller's main ..... this month is to increase his employer's satisfaction.
a) exploration b) rule c) disadvantage d) target

19. In ..... to your email, we would like to arrange a meeting to discuss the matter.
a) hope b) return c) addition d) response

20. Media ..... and deception can shape public opinion in dangerous ways.
a) reflection b) education c) manipulation d) translation

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. Media plays a huge role in ..... thoughts and influencing public opinion.
a) shaping b) losing c) making d) ignoring

22. The new manager worked hard to ..... control of the team in a friendly way.
a) avoid b) give c) do d) gain

23. A trip to Japan has always been ..... my wish list for as long as I can remember.
a) on b) under c) off d) at

24. Habits don't change overnight, but they can improve ..... time.
a) in b) at c) over d) under

25. Ahmed is ..... for organizing the event and making sure everything is good.
a) responsible b) tired c) excited d) surprised

26. The high ..... of energy in summer increases the electricity bill فاتورة.
a) imagination b) solution c) donation d) consumption

27. The company plans to upgrade the ..... equipment instead of buying new machines.
a) existed b) existing c) existence d) exists

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

28. The painting was full of subtle details that were hard to notice. The synonyms of the word "subtle" are ..... and ..... .
a) obvious b) delicate c) serious d) difficult e) faint

29. The new fashion style is currently trending on social media. The antonyms of "trending" are ..... and ..... .
a) outdated b) popular c) ignored
d) irrelevant e) complicated

30. It took him a moment to realize that he had forgotten his keys. The word "realize" gives the same meanings as ..... and ..... .
a) ignore b) grasp c) understand d) hesitate e) consume

31. We need to consume less energy to protect the environment. The opposites of the word "consume" are ..... and ..... .
a) use b) save c) ignore d) preserve e) absorb

B Language

Extra Notes: Tag Questions — معلومات إضافية على السؤال المذيل

لغة المحادثات لها طبيعة خاصة تعتمد على الموقف وطبيعة السؤال ومنها:

1 إذا كانت الجملة التى نريد تأكيدها مثبتة فالإجابة بـ Yes هى الموافقة و No للرفض مثل:

A: You like chemistry, don't you?
B: Yes, I do. موافقة
B: No, I don't. رفض

2 إذا كانت الجملة التى نريد تأكيدها منفية فالإجابة بـ No هى الموافقة و Yes للرفض مثل:

A: You don't like chemistry, do you?
B: No, I don't. It's very difficult. موافقة
B: Yes, I do. I like it and I find it very easy. رفض

3 يمكن أن يكون السؤال آخر الجملة الخبرية موجهًا إلى المخاطب وليس عائدًا على الجملة الأولى مثل:

A: I love comedy films, don't you?
B: Yes, I do. I like watching comedy films with my family. We can all laugh together.

السؤال هنا يعود على المخاطب وليس على المتكلم، وهذا لا يصلح إلا فى المحادثات.

4 عندما تكون has و have للملكية من الممكن أن يكون النفى بـ hasn't/haven't وعندما تكون بمعنى آخر نستخدم v. to do.

- He has a new car, hasn't he?
- He has lunch at 3 pm every day, doesn't he?

5 فى الاستنتاج الفعل العائد على must have + P.P. هو mustn't.

- Hesham must have won the gold medal, mustn't he?

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I enjoy watching comedy movies, ...?
   a) won't I b) aren't you c) don't you d) do I
2. Nader has a small flat in Giza, ...?
   a) hasn't Nader b) has he c) hasn't he d) does he
3. They have breakfast at work together, ...?
   a) haven't they b) have they c) do they d) don't they
4. He has breakfast at 7, ...?
   a) hasn't he b) doesn't he c) does he d) isn't he
5. He must have seen the email, ...?
   a) mustn't he b) must he c) hasn't he d) didn't he

2 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:

1. She is a great teacher, isn't it? (.....)
2. You like coffee, doesn't you? (.....)
3. They went to the market, did they? (.....)
4. Let's start the meeting, don't we? (.....)
5. He has a lot of friends, isn't he? (.....)

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They have to ask somebody else to help them, ...?
a) do they b) haven't they c) have they d) don't they

2. Nothing was wrong, ...?
a) was it b) were they c) wasn't it d) weren't they

3. They had left early, ... they?
a) had b) didn't c) hadn't d) weren't

4. Playing a musical instrument isn't as easy as you thought, ...?
a) aren't you b) is it c) isn't it d) aren't they

5. Please, call me when he comes, ...?
a) won't I b) shall I c) aren't you d) will you

6. He never thought what might come out of it, ...?
a) hasn't he b) didn't he c) did he d) won't he

7. Let's have a morning walk, ... we?
a) shall b) haven't c) don't d) should

8. ....., could she?
a) The band couldn't sing well b) Nour couldn't sing well
c) Shady couldn't sing well d) Shady could sing well

9. ....., don't they?
a) They often talk to their neighbors
b) They don't often talk to their neighbors
c) We often talk to our neighbors
d) We often talk to their neighbors

10. A: I'm late, aren't I? B: ..... . You are just on time.
a) Yes, you aren't b) Yes, you are c) No, you aren't d) No, you are

11. Hany doesn't know how to cook, does he?
a) Yes, he doesn't. He hates cooking.
b) No, he doesn't. It isn't one of his interests.
c) No, he does. He likes cooking.
d) Yes, he doesn't, but he is trying to learn.

12. Everyone is ready for the exam, ...?
a) aren't they b) isn't he c) are they d) isn't she

13. I don't think Tamer is angry, ...?
a) don't I b) isn't he c) do I d) is he

14. After he had finished his work, she contacted him, ...?
a) hadn't he b) didn't she c) hadn't she d) didn't he

15. Always obey the rules, ...?
a) do you b) do I c) will you d) shall I

16. He always forgets his homework, ...?
a) never he b) don't you c) doesn't he d) did he

17. No one was inside the house when it collapsed, ...?
a) weren't they b) were they c) did it d) didn't it

18. Help your brother with his homework, ...?
a) isn't he b) don't you c) shan't you d) will you

19. You have read all of Charles Dickens' novels, ...?
a) didn't you b) haven't you c) have you d) don't you

20. She rarely cooks meat, ... she?
a) has b) doesn't c) does d) hasn't

21. Nothing can be done at this moment, ...?
a) can it b) can they c) can't it d) can't they

22. You have never seen that film before, ... you?
a) do b) have c) haven't d) don't

23. Hala thinks that the film will be interesting, ...?
a) won't she b) doesn't she c) won't it d) does it

24. **A:** The manner of addressing people in Britain is quite different from ours, ...?
B: Yes, it is. You're right.
a) isn't it b) isn't there c) it is d) is it

25. Don't talk to Nabil during the lesson, ... you?
a) don't b) do c) won't d) will

26. ....., aren't they?
a) Omar and I are from Maadi b) Omar and Hazem aren't from Assuit
c) Everyone in your class is working hard d) Your parents are never lazy

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I am early for class, am not I? (.....)
2. Nothing can go wrong, can't it? (.....)
3. She has finished on time, doesn't she? (.....)
4. This is your bag, isn't that? (.....)
5. We should be quiet in the library, should we? (.....)
6. **A:** You don't like chemistry, do you? **B:** No, I don't. It's easy. (.....)

Test Yourself | Part 2 | Lessons 3, 4 & 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. I am afraid to say that ..... masters control our social behaviors to a great extent.
a) device b) puppet c) framing d) lifestyle

2. There was a ..... of hope in his eyes despite the bad news.
a) sparkle b) spark c) shine d) fire

3. I had to stop and ask for ..... when I got lost in the new city.
a) directions b) complaints c) options d) instructions

4. A healthy ..... includes balanced meals and regular exercise.
a) lifestyle b) response c) highlight d) preference

5. You have to be ..... of your eating habits to lead a healthier lifestyle.
a) tired b) mindful c) careless d) lazy

6. I didn't ..... him at first because he had grown so fat.
a) recognize b) ignore c) change d) forget

7. Customer ..... is essential for improving the quality of our service.
a) shape b) manipulation c) feedback d) package

8. You'll miss ..... on some great experiences if you don't join our great publishing company!
a) out b) back c) in d) for

9. ..... is the feeling of being accepted and connected to a group or place.
a) Ownership b) Belonging
c) Possession d) Independence

10. The marketing team used a clever ..... to attract new customers.
a) tactic b) joke c) moment d) object

11. Before making a decision, you should ..... all your options carefully.
a) think b) consider c) ignore d) waste

12. After finishing my hard work, I will spend a quiet moment in ..... about what will be next.
a) emotion b) response c) reflection d) hesitation

13. In journalism, the ..... of a story is so important as it can influence public opinion heavily.
a) framing b) coloring c) printing d) deleting

14. Just ..... the "Submit" button to complete your registration.
a) click b) erase c) go d) move

15. The teacher tried to ..... the explanation to help students understand better.
a) simplify b) complicate c) complex d) pause

Language

16. You like pizza, ...?
a) don't you b) do you c) aren't you d) doesn't it

17. She isn't coming to the party, ...?
a) isn't she b) is she c) does she d) will she

18. They have a new dog, ...?
a) haven't they b) don't they c) do they d) a & b

19. We should finish our homework, ...?
a) don't we b) should we c) aren't we d) shouldn't we

20. I am your friend, ...?
a) am I not b) aren't I c) don't I d) isn't it

21. It's a beautiful day today, ...?
a) doesn't it b) is it c) isn't it d) won't it

22. You don't speak French, ...?
a) do you b) don't you c) are you d) won't you

23. Let's go for a walk, ...?
a) do we b) will we c) shall we d) aren't we

24. He can play the guitar very well, ...?
a) can't he b) can he c) doesn't he d) isn't he

25. There wasn't any milk left, ...?
a) weren't there b) wasn't there c) is there d) was there

26. Your parents will be home soon, ...?
a) won't they b) will they c) aren't they d) don't they

27. Nothing is wrong, ...?
a) do they b) isn't it c) does it d) is it

28. Everyone is excited about the trip, ...?
a) are they b) aren't they c) isn't he d) is it

29. Give me your name and phone number, ...?
a) aren't you b) shall you c) do you d) will you

30. She never goes to the gym, ...?
a) will she b) doesn't she c) does she d) is she

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Writing an Opinion Essay كتابة مقال رأى

An **opinion essay** presents the writer's viewpoint on a specific topic, supported by evidence and logical reasoning. It aims to persuade the reader to understand and potentially agree with the presented opinion.

مقال الرأى هو مقال يَعرِض وجهة نظر الكاتب حول موضوع معيَّن، مدعومة بالأدلة والتفكير المنطقى. ويهدف إلى إقناع القارئ بفهم الرأى المطروح وربما الموافقة عليه.

وهو يتبع نفس بناء المقال (المقدمة/الفقرات الرئيسية/الخاتمة) وإليك بعض التعبيرات التى ستساعدك فى عرض أفكارك وإقناع قرائك:

Essay Part	Useful Phrases
Introduction	**Stating your opinion and the thesis statement.** Nowadays, .../ In my opinion, .../ I believe that ...
Body Paragraphs	**Giving reasons and examples.** First of all,.../Secondly,.../This is because... For example,.../In Egypt, many students.../My friend once...
Conclusion	**Summarizing your main claim and opinion.** In conclusion,.../To sum up,.../That's why I strongly believe.../For these reasons, I think...

MODEL ESSAY

Should Students Use Mobile Phones at School?

Today, many people wonder if kids should use phones at school. Phones are everywhere. I believe that students should not use their phones in class. They cause more problems than they solve.

First, phones distract students. It is hard to pay attention to a teacher when a phone is full of fun games, videos, and messages. For example, a student might play a game instead of listening to the lesson.

Second, phones can be used for bad things. Students can use them to cheat on tests by looking for answers online. This can make them dependent on them and careless with studying.

Some people say phones are good for emergencies or for learning. This is true sometimes. But, students can always talk to a teacher or go to the office to call their parents in such cases.

In short, phones stop students from learning and can cause trouble. I think it is better if students keep their phones in their bags or lockers during class. This helps everyone focus on learning and makes school a better place.

Practice... Skills Exercises

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is steadily taking control over individual lives, the habit of reading is fast vanishing into thin air. Television and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, occupying the majority of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read.

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If more children's time is devoted to reading, the population could be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and a reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is usually totally passive.

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. By reading daily, a child will become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Reading helps people to be ..... .

a) well-paid b) good actors c) well-educated d) good writers

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ..... .

a) the youth b) video and television

c) children d) reading skills

3. According to the writer's view, TV is ..... means of entertainment.

a) not an effective b) an encouraging

c) an effective d) not a cheap

4. The synonym of the word "independent" is "..... ".

a) active b) intelligent

c) self-centered d) self-determining

5. What is the reason behind the decline in the reading habit among youth?

a) Lack of free time.
b) Not going to schools.
c) Doing sports.
d) TV and video.

6. There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and a reader when ..... .

a) a video is watched
b) a story is read
c) an article is published
d) a book is sold

7. Children, who read slowly, ...

a) like TV
b) speak fast
c) like reading
d) are disabled

8. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The Importance of Reading
b) Technology Pros
c) The Benefits of Technology
d) Children's Preferences

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Uncle Azmy is my favorite family member. He is over sixty, but he has the power to lift a bag containing thirty kilos of potatoes: he always does so to help his wife, Aunt Fateema, as a sign of admiration. He is very healthy and always eats fruits and vegetables from his own field. He loves jokes and funny stories. My dad calls this silliness, that's why they do not always see eye-to-eye. Dad was born five years before Uncle Azmy, so he is wiser and more thoughtful.

When we gather as a family, Uncle Azmy must play a prank on someone. Last time, he secretly put hot sauce in his wife's dish. She got hot and her face was red. Instead of helping her, he tumbled down on the floor, laughing hysterically. Nobody was surprised because that wasn't the first time to see such a situation. I got used to these pranks because I really understand him. My uncle had a very strict life throughout his career as an officer. He wasn't allowed to even smile. He always gave and took commands and instructions. When he retired, he felt he was born again. The only one who disapproves of his behavior is my father. He is a seventy-year-old retired man and prefers a strict lifestyle although he hasn't joined the army before.

Uncle Azmy gives me positive vibes about life. Age is never an obstacle to doing whatever you want. Once I tried to create a Facebook account for him, I was shocked when I discovered that he already had an account with one thousand friends. I immediately searched for him; his account was called Azmy Pranks!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Although Mr. Azmy is old, he is ..... .

a) wise b) weak c) strong d) helpful

2. Mr. Azmy loves his wife so he ..... .

a) helps her carry heavy bags
b) buys fruits for her
c) plays silly pranks on her
d) calls her darling

3. How old is Mr Azmy?

a) Sixty.
b) Seventy five.
c) Sixty five.
d) Not mentioned.

4. Mrs Fateema's face got red ..... .

a) because she put much hot sauce
b) because she was embarrassed
c) because of her husband's prank
d) when she saw the red sauce

5. The writer's father doesn't like his brother's tricks because ..... .

a) he does better tricks
b) he is an army officer
c) he thinks they are silly
d) the tricks are dangerous

6. What happened to Mrs Fateema wasn't a surprise, as ..... .

a) everybody likes tricks
b) everybody knows Uncle Azmy's character
c) the writer told them about the trick previously
d) Uncle Azmy did that by mistake

7. The underlined word "vibes" means ..... .

a) feelings b) ideas c) components d) actions

8. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The Elderly Life
b) Mr. Azmy's Rebirth
c) Cooperation and Love
d) Mr. Azmy's Healthy Lifestyle

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our society needs more critical thinkers to combat misinformation and promote rational discourse. Their skepticism is truly the shield of truth.

a) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من المفكرين النقديين لمحاربة المعلومات المضللة وتعزيز الخطاب العقلانى. فشكوكهم هى حقًا درع الحقيقة.

b) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من المفكرين النقديين لمحاربة التضليل وتعزيز الحوار المنطقى. فتشككهم هو حقًا مرشد الحقيقة.

c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى خيرة المفكرين المنطقيين لمواجهة الأخبار الكاذبة وتعزيز النقاش العقلانى. ففضولهم هو حقًا سيف الحقيقة.

d) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى خيرة النقاد المحللين لمحاربة التضليل وتعزيز المحادثة العقلانية. فذكاؤهم هو حقًا حارس المعرفة.

2. Some individuals exploit social media platforms to spread fake news and manipulate public opinion. This irresponsible use is truly a threat to safe information exchange.

a) يستعمل بعض المستخدمين مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى لبث الشائعات والتأثير على الجماهير. فهذه الجريمة الإلكترونية هى خطر للتداول الآمن للمعلومات.

b) يستغل بعض الأفراد منصات التواصل الاجتماعى لنشر الأخبار الكاذبة والتلاعب بالرأى العام. وهذا الاستخدام غير المسئول هو حقًا تهديد للتداول الآمن للمعلومات.

c) يسىء بعض الناس استخدام شبكات التواصل لنشر المعلومات المغلوطة وخداع المجتمع. فاستهتارهم هو جريمة للتداول الواثق للمعلومات.

d) يستخدم القلة منصات التواصل الاجتماعى لنشر الأكاذيب وتحريك المشاعر. فهذه السلوكيات هى خطر حقيقى على التداول الحقيقى للمعلومات.

3. A responsible media institution works to educate the public and strengthen national unity. Its commitment to ethics is truly the cornerstone of an informed society.

a) تعمل المؤسسة الإعلامية الجادة على تعليم الشعب ودفع التضامن الوطنى. فإصرارها على المبادئ هو أساس المجتمع المثقف.

b) تهدف وسائل الإعلام الناضجة إلى توعية المواطن وبناء التماسك الاجتماعى. فالتزامها بالأخلاقيات هو بالفعل ركيزة المجتمع المتحضر.

c) تعمل المؤسسة الإعلامية الجادة على تنمية المجتمع ودفع التضامن الوطنى. فالتزامها بالأخلاقيات هو أساس المجتمع المثقف.

d) تعمل المؤسسة الإعلامية المسئولة على تثقيف الجمهور وتعزيز الوحدة الوطنية. فالتزامها بالأخلاقيات هو حقًا حجر الزاوية فى مجتمع واعٍ.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. يجب ألا يصدق الناس أو يشاركوا كل ما يقرءون على صفحات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى؛ فهى مليئة بالشائعات التى قد تدمر سمعة الناس واقتصاد البلاد.

a) People don't have to believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumors that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

b) People should not believe or divide everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumors that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

c) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of fiction that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

d) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumors that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

5. غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، وخاصة موقع فيسبوك، أسلوب تواصل الناس وخاصة الشباب؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة ولا يمكن للشباب الاستغناء عنها.

a) Social media, especially Facebook, has changed the way people communicate, especially young people. Therefore, it has become an important part of modern life and young people cannot stand it.

b) Social media, especially Facebook, has changed the way people connect, especially young people. Therefore, it has become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without it.

c) Social media, especially Facebook, has changed the way people communicate, especially young people. However, it has become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without it.

d) Social media, especially Facebook, has changed the way people communicate especially young people. Nevertheless, it has become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without it.

6. تلعب الصحافة دورًا بارزًا فى تناول الكثير من القضايا والتصدى للمشكلات التى تواجه المواطنين. بالإضافة إلى نشر الوعى القومى بين المواطنين لمواجهة تلك المشكلات والمساهمة فى حلها.

a) The press plays a prominent role in showing many issues and solving the problems facing citizens, in addition to spreading national awareness among citizens to avoid these problems or contribute to solving them.

b) The press plays a prominent role in addressing many issues and solving the problems facing the government, in addition to spreading national awareness among the high class to confront these problems and contribute to solving them.

c) The press plays a prominent role in dealing with many issues and addressing the problems facing citizens. In addition, it spreads national awareness among citizens to confront these problems and contribute to solving them.

d) The press plays a prominent role in hiding many issues and solving the problems facing citizens. In addition, it spreads national awareness among most people to confront these problems and contribute to solving them.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"The role of media in raising our awareness"

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

misinformation	معلومات مضللة	skepticism	شك/تشكيك	commitment	التزام
rational	عقلانى	manipulate	يتلاعب	ethics	أخلاقيات
discourse	خطاب	institution	مؤسسة	awareness	وعى

Unit 5 Student's Book Corner

Vocabulary

1 Match the words to their meanings:

1. distinguish
2. sensational
3. trigger
4. misleading
5. misprints
6. algorithms

a) a set of rules or instructions that a computer follows to solve a problem or complete a task
b) giving the wrong idea or impression; deceptive
c) causing great public excitement or interest
d) errors in printing; mistakes in written text
e) to cause something to start or happen
f) to tell the difference between two or more things; to see what makes them separate or unique

Language

2 Match each statement with the correct tag question:

1. She lives in London,
2. They aren't coming to the party,
3. You like chocolate,
4. He doesn't play football,
5. It's raining,
6. We don't have homework today,

a) are they?
b) does he?
c) don't you?
d) isn't it?
e) do we?
f) doesn't she?

3 Choose the best tag question for each situation:

1. You're not sure if your friend watched the football match.
   a) You watched the match, did you?
   b) You watched the match, didn't you?
   c) You didn't watch the match, didn't you?
2. You want to confirm that your classmate doesn't have a pen.
   a) You don't have a pen, do you?
   b) You have a pen, don't you?
   c) You don't have a pen, don't you?
3. You're surprised that someone doesn't like chocolate.
   a) You don't like chocolate, do you?
   b) You like chocolate, don't you?
   c) You don't like chocolate, don't you?

4 Complete each sentence with the correct tag question:

1. They went to the cinema, ...?
2. You can swim, ...?
3. She won't forget, ...?
4. We've met before, ...?
5. He's very kind, ...?
6. I'm not late, ...?
7. It wasn't very cold yesterday, ...?
8. You've never tried sushi, ...?

5 Find and correct the mistake in each sentence:

1. She's your sister, doesn't she? (.....)
2. They don't like pizza, do it? (.....)
3. He can drive, can he? (.....)
4. We are late, are not we? (.....)
5. You didn't call me, do you? (.....)

6 Complete the mini dialogs by adding a tag question:

1. **A:** You're coming to the party tonight, ...?
   B: Of course! I wouldn't miss it.
2. **A:** They didn't finish the project, ...?
   B: No, they didn't. They need more time.
3. **A:** Your brother works in a hospital, ...?
   B: Yes, he's a doctor.
4. **A:** We've never been to Paris, ...?
   B: That's right. It's on my wish list!

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Finish the following dialog:

Khalid and Hassan are talking about global warming.

Khalid : I've just read a good book about global warming.

Hassan: I'd like to read it. (1).....?

Khalid : Of course. I'll bring it to school tomorrow. I worry a lot about global warming.

Hassan: Why?

Khalid : It has serious effects on our world.

Hassan: (2)..... . Scientists must help to stop it.

Khalid : Yes, but we can help to stop it.

Hassan: How? What can we do?

Khalid : (3)..... . That will help.

Hassan : I already turn off the lights when I leave a room. What other things can we do?

Khalid : (4).....? .

Hassan: Yes, you're right. We can all do more to help the environment.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. How does the aspect of worship in Islam differ from the concept of worship in the West?
2. What distinguishes true worship in Islam?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The true submission to Allah occurs when there is ..... .
   a) fear of punishment
   b) complete and full love for Allah
   c) fear of societal judgment
   d) hope for wealth
4. Economic activities considered worship in Islam ..... .
   a) only if they result in personal gain
   b) only if they involve dishonesty and deceit
   c) when remaining honest and truthful in them
   d) when they are solely for personal gain

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- The population explosion is a problem facing all the third-world countries, especially developing countries.

(B) Translate into English:

- ينبغى على الإنسان أن يتدبر فى الكون ليتعرف على قدرة الله تعالى.

Unit 5 General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. These machines _____ too much energy, and they are bad for the environment.
   a) repair b) consume c) collect d) ignore
2. The artist used new painting ..... to create texture نسيج in her work.
   a) actions b) techniques c) feedback d) spices
3. Children need early ..... to different languages so that they use them fluently.
   a) imitation b) restriction c) exposure d) resistance
4. Lawyers use certain words in their speech to ..... a strong feeling towards the case القضية.
   a) mix b) spark c) prepare d) fire
5. The news about the kidnapped child was ..... and it turned out to be fake.
   a) guilty b) mindful c) psychological d) unbelievable
6. Authorities should launch a campaign to warn young influencers against ..... .
   a) judgment b) bias c) emotion d) manipulation
7. Always use accurate sources when writing your report. The opposite of the word "accurate" is ..... .
   a) inaccurate b) correct c) right d) formal
8. We are late for the meeting, ...?
   a) aren't we b) are we c) don't we d) won't we
9. Those flowers look beautiful, ...?
   a) don't they b) do they c) aren't they d) are they
10. You've finished your work, ...?
    a) haven't you b) have you c) don't you d) didn't you
11. Few students passed the difficult exam, ...?
    a) did they b) didn't they c) don't they d) won't they
12. She rarely eats sweets, ...?
    a) doesn't she b) does she c) is she d) isn't she
13. No one told you the secret, ...?
    a) did they b) didn't they c) does he d) won't they

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The internet is full of useful information. You can find everything from food recipes, new jobs to news and information on various topics. Most students use the internet to find information because there is so much information about almost anything you can imagine to be found on the web.

Since anyone can put up anything there, you are likely to find false information. It is important to be able to tell the difference between false and correct information. The result for "pollution" will give you many different results and how do you know what to trust and what to use? Most people settle for the first three results. There are many things you should consider while searching on the web:

1- Don't use personal sites as they are presenting the page owner's opinions.
2- Trust the sites whose endings are .com, .org or .edu.
3- Consider the date of the publishing. If it was written ten years ago, the facts are very likely to have changed. It is very important to use up-to-date facts.
4- It is a very good idea to check out the sources the author has used. Maybe they are even better than what the author has created.
5- Google the author and see if you can find any information on him/her.
6- It is often a good idea to see what sort of pages that link to the page you are looking up. These simple steps can help you to evaluate whether the information you have found is false or not. It is always important to remember that everyone can post anything on internet, and it is important to check your sources twice.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. Most students use the internet to ..... .
a) know the weather
b) find jobs
c) find information
d) know the current news

15. Because the internet is for everyone, we find ..... .
a) bad things
b) false information
c) correct information
d) false and correct information

16. In order to find what we need quickly, we should be ..... .
a) smart
b) youtubers
c) researchers
d) gamers

17. The synonym of the underlined word "evaluate" is "..... ".
a) know
b) value
c) recognise
d) find

18. For food recipes, new jobs, news, we use the ..... .
a) internet
b) TV
c) GPS
d) CPR

19. To be smart online, you should ..... .
a) use personal sites as they are presenting the page owner's opinions
b) trust the all sites
c) trust the sites whose endings are the .com, .org or .edu
d) open all the messages sent to you

20. The word that means "untrue" from the passage is ..... .
a) google
b) evaluate
c) result
d) false

21. The best title for the passage is "..... ".
a) Using the internet for finding news
b) Being smart online
c) Keeping your information secret
d) Sharing information

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- The vigilant public must critically evaluate information on the internet to combat fake news and protect social harmony. Their media awareness is truly the first line of defense.

a) يجب على الشعب الحذر أن ينتقد المحتوى الرقمى بعنف لمواجهة الشائعات وحماية نفسه من الأذى. فذكاؤهم هو بالتأكيد سلاحهم الوحيد.

b) يتوجب على الأمة المنتبهة أن تتفحص الأخبار بدقة لتجنب المعلومات الكاذبة والحفاظ على الاستقرار. فإلمامهم التقنى هو حتمًا درعهم المتين.

c) يجب على العامة أن يتجاهلوا ما ينشر على الإنترنت ليتفادوا الأخبار المزيفة ويديموا السلام الاجتماعى. فبراعتهم هى فى الحقيقة أساس الأمان.

d) يجب على الجمهور اليقظ أن يُقيّم المعلومات على الإنترنت بشكل نقدى لمحاربة الأخبار المزيفة وحماية الانسجام المجتمعى. فوعيهم الإعلامى هو حقًّا خط الدفاع الأول.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- تُسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التى يتم تنفيذها فى كل أنحاء مصر فى حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

a) The major international projects that are being implanted throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

b) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solve many economic problems and provide job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

c) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

d) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economical problems and providing job chances for youth aspiring to a better life.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around The World In Eighty Days)

1. Do you think Fogg's decision to stay on the ship at Aden was wise? Why?
2. Do you agree with Fogg that the weather is of "no consequence"? Why or why not?
3. Do you think Fogg misses out on experiences by focusing only on time? Why?

25. Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"The role of parents in protecting children from the dangers of social media"

.....

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 6
Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills

Learning Outcomes

Reading
- Differentiate between hard skills (technical abilities) and soft skills (personal qualities), give examples of soft and hard skills.
- Understand why soft skills are harder to develop but are just as important.

Listening
- Identify key personal qualities like creativity, flexibility, and reliability in audio tracks.

Speaking
- Discuss the importance of skills for future careers, discuss personal qualities and their relevance in a professional context in role-playing scenarios.

Writing
- Write a descriptive essay on a topic like a memorable trip.
- Use adjectival relative clauses correctly.

Language
- Correctly use defining and non-defining relative clauses in different settings.

Study... Part 1

Lesson 1: Soft Skills VS. Hard Skills
Lesson 2: Radio Debate

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

ambitious (adj)	طَمُوح	expertise (n)	خبرة	resilient (adj)	مرن/صامد
brilliant (adj)	بارع/لامع	hard skills (n)	مهارات تقنية/فنية/مهنية	soft skills (n)	مهارات ناعمة (سمات شخصية)
cooperative (adj)	تعاونى	leadership (n)	قيادة		
creative (adj)	مبدع	measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس	vital (adj)	حيوى/أساسى
essential (adj)	أساسى	reliable (adj)	موثوق		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ability (n)	قدرة	cooperative (adj)	تعاونى	inspire (v) (d)	يلهم
able (adj)	قادر	emotional (adj)	عاطفى	intelligence (n)	ذكاء
advance (v) (ed)	يتقدم	employer (n)	صاحب العمل	involve (v) (d)	يشمل
affect (v) (d)	يؤثر فى	especially (adv)	خصوصًا	knowledge (n)	معرفة
approach (n)	منهج/أسلوب	essential (adj)	أساسى	long-term (adj)	طويل الأجل
attitude (n)	سلوك/موقف	exactly (adv)	بالضبط	management (n)	إدارة
balance (n) (v) (d)	توازن/يوازن	exceptionally (adv)	بشكل استثنائى	measure (n) (v) (d)	قياس/يقيس
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	explain (v) (ed)	يشرح	non-artistic (adj)	غير فنى
certificate (n)	شهادة	fix (v) (ed)	يصلح	organized (adj)	منظم
change (v) (d) (n)	يتغير/تغيير	flexible (adj)	مرن	outlook (n)	نظرة مستقبلية
code (n) (v) (d)	يبرمج/يشفر/برمجة/شفرة	grow (v)	ينمو	panic (n)	ذعر
collaborate (v) (d)	يتعاون	guide (v) (d) (n)	يرشد/دليل	perfect (adj)	مثالى
common (adj)	شائع	handle (v) (d)	يتعامل مع	performance (n)	أداء
communication (n)	اتصال	highly skilled	ماهر جدًا	personality (n)	شخصية
conflict (n)	صراع	imagination (n)	خيال	professionally (adv)	بشكل احترافى
consistently (adv)	بشكل متسق	include (v) (d)	يتضمن	programmer (n)	مبرمج

purpose (n)	هدف/غرض	smoothly (adv)	بسلاسة	technical (adj)	تقنى
quantify (v) ~~(y)~~ (ied)	يحدد/يقيس	solve (v) (d)	يحل	toward (adv)	نحو
respectful (adj)	محترم	specialized (adj)	متخصص	training (n)	تدريب
serve (v) (d)	يخدم	specific (adj)	محدد	trustworthy (adj)	جدير بالثقة
simply (adv)	ببساطة	suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى	workplace (n)	مكان العمل
smart (adj)	ذكى	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعى		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The class was very ..... and worked together to complete the science project successfully.
a) vital b) common
c) cooperative d) specialized

2. The designer pitched ..... ideas that impressed the fashion show judges.
a) boring b) personal
c) measurable d) creative

3. Clean water is ..... for people to stay alive and healthy.
a) optional b) essential c) useless d) easy

4. Her ..... in computer programming helped her get a high-paid job abroad.
a) expertise b) error
c) personality d) management

5. Learning computer coding and mathematics are examples of important ..... for modern jobs.
a) soft skills b) scales c) hard skills d) skulls

6. The scientist gave a/an ..... solution that helped everyone understand the problem clearly.
a) emotional b) complicated c) hard d) brilliant

7. Only ..... people are able to achieve their long-term objectives and dream big.
a) simple b) ambitious c) specialized d) quiet

8. She received a graduation ..... after completing her training program successfully.
a) certificate b) ticket c) license d) note

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

do a job	يقوم بوظيفة	land a job	يحصل على وظيفة	get hired	يتم توظيفه
get angry	يغضب	make the difference between	يصنع الفارق بين	go wrong	يحدث خطأ
in short	باختصار/بإيجاز	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	keep a job	يحافظ على وظيفة
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	look for	يبحث عن	interact with	يتفاعل مع
apply for	يتقدم لـ	prepare for	يستعد لـ	key to	مفتاح لـ/عامل رئيسى لـ
depend on	يعتمد على	prove with	يثبت بـ	learn through	يتعلم من خلال
focus on	يركز على	relate to	يرتبط بـ	solution to	حل لـ
help in	يساعد فى	think of	يفكر فى	way of	طريقة لـ

Derivatives — المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
----------		ambition	طُموح	ambitious	طَموح
affect	يؤثر	effect	تأثير	affecting affected	مؤثر متأثر
collaborate	يتعاون	collaboration	تعاون	collaborative	تعاونى
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperation	تعاون	cooperative	تعاونى
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring inspired	مُلْهِم مُلْهَم
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	managerial	إدارى
measure	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measurable	قابل للقياس
perform	يؤدى/ينجز	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدٍّ
quantify	يحدد/يقيس	quantification	تحديد/القياس الكمى	quantifiable	قابل للقياس
rely	يعتمد	reliability	موثوقية	reliable	موثوق
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	قابل للحل
specify	يحدد	specification	مواصفة/تحديد	specific	محدد

Examples — تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The two students collaborate on a science project. (v)
The bridge is being built with the collaboration of two companies. (n)
We made a collaborative effort to enhance our project. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
ambitious	طموح	aspiring/determined		lazy/aimless	كسول / بلا هدف
brilliant	بارع / لامع	intelligent/outstanding		dull/stupid	باهت / غبى
cooperative	تعاونى	helpful/supportive		uncooperative/selfish	غير متعاون / أنانى
creative	مبدع	imaginative/innovative		unimaginative/ordinary	غير مبدع / عادى
essential	أساسى	necessary/vital		unnecessary/trivial	غير ضرورى / تافه
expertise	خبرة	skill/proficiency		inexperience/ignorance/ incompetence	قلة خبرة / جهل / عدم كفاءة
hard skills	مهارات مهنية	technical skills/job-specific skills		soft skills/interpersonal skills	مهارات ناعمة / مهارات شخصية
leadership	قيادة	authority/management		subordination/mismanagement	تابعية / سوء إدارة
measurable	قابل للقياس	quantifiable/assessable		immeasurable/unquantifiable	غير قابل للقياس / غير قابل للكمية
resilient	صامد	tough/adaptable		weak/fragile	ضعيف / هش
vital	حيوى	crucial/important		unnecessary/minor	غير ضرورى / ثانوى

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A little confidence can ..... the difference in a job interview.
a) cause b) ignore c) make d) reduce

2. If you want to ..... hired, you must prepare a strong CV and practice interview skills.
a) go b) catch c) get d) have

3. She decided to apply ..... a scholarship in America to continue her higher education.
a) in b) with c) by d) for

4. Students should interact ..... their teachers politely to learn better and build confidence in class.
a) with b) for c) to d) in

5. The project showed ..... progress after only three months of hard work.
a) measure b) measurement c) measurable d) measured

6. The tailor الترزى took the boy's ..... to make him a new school uniform.
a) measure b) measurement c) measurable d) measured

7. A resilient person never gives up, even when life is very hard. The synonym of the word "resilient" is ..... .
a) minor b) tough c) weak d) crucial

8. She is an ambitious student who dreams of becoming a famous doctor one day. The antonym of the word "ambitious" is ..... .
a) outstanding b) dull c) determined d) aimless

Reading Text

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Soft Skills Vs. Hard Skills

When applying for a job or preparing for the future, it's important to understand the difference between soft skills and hard skills. Both are necessary for success, but they serve different purposes.

Hard skills are the technical abilities or knowledge you learn through education or training. For example, being able to use a computer program, speak another language, or fix a machine are all hard skills. These are often measurable and proven with certificates, tests, or examples of work.

Soft skills, on the other hand, are personal qualities that affect how you work and interact with others. These include communication, teamwork, time management, problem-solving, and leadership. Unlike hard skills, soft skills are more difficult to measure, but they are just as important in the workplace.

For example, a brilliant programmer might write perfect code, but if they can't explain their ideas to others or work well in a team, their performance could suffer. Many employers say that while hard skills can be taught, soft skills are harder to develop because they involve personality, attitude, and emotional intelligence.

Today, companies not only look for technical expertise but they also want employees who can collaborate, solve problems, and adapt to change. Being smart or highly skilled isn't enough; you also need to be respectful, reliable, and able to work well with others. A workplace runs smoothly when people communicate clearly, handle conflicts professionally, and support one another. These qualities make the difference between someone who simply does their job and someone who helps the whole team succeed.

In short, hard skills help you get hired, but soft skills help you grow in your career. You might land a job because of your technical abilities, but you'll keep it—and advance—because of how well you work with others. That's why developing both is key to long-term success. Whether you're just starting your career or looking to improve, focusing on both skill sets will prepare you for a stronger future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main idea of the entire passage?
- a) Hard skills are more valuable than soft skills in the modern workplace.
- b) Soft skills cannot be learned or improved over time.
- c) Both hard skills and soft skills are crucial for professional success and career growth.
- d) Employers only value technical expertise and measurable abilities.

2. According to the text, how can hard skills typically be proven?
- a) Through personality assessments.
- b) With certificates, tests, or examples of work.
- c) By demonstrating strong communication in an interview.
- d) With a university degree alone.

3. Based on the example of the brilliant programmer, what can be inferred about the importance of soft skills?
- a) Technical ability is the only thing that matters for a programmer.
- b) Even excellent technical workers need soft skills to be fully effective.
- c) Programmers do not need to work in teams.
- d) Writing perfect code is an example of a soft skill.

4. Which of the following best summarizes the final paragraph?
- a) Hard skills are useless after you get a job.
- b) Soft skills are only important for getting promoted.
- c) A successful long-term career requires a balance of both technical abilities and personal qualities.
- d) You should focus on improving your skills only when you start your career.

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Essential qualities in the world of work

There are jobs where you need to have a specific skill or personal quality, but there are many personal qualities that are useful in almost any job. For example, it's always important to be organized, i.e., to plan things carefully and know exactly what you're doing. It's also important to be flexible so that you adapt to changing situations.

Being creative isn't just a quality that artists and writers need—it's essential in any job where you need imagination to think of new ideas or solutions to problems. Working in teams is always important, so it's good if you are cooperative and creative, and you like working with other people.

It's vital that you are reliable and responsible too, so that people know they can depend on you. It also helps if you're calm and resilient, so that you don't panic or get angry when things start to go wrong. And finally, it's okay to be ambitious and to want to be a big success in your job.

Definitions التعريفات

ambitious	طَمُوح	having a strong desire to succeed or achieve something important
brilliant	بارع/لامع	exceptionally intelligent, skilled, or impressive
cooperative	تعاونى	willing to work with others and help as part of a team
creative	مبدع	able to use imagination and original ideas to make or do something new
essential	أساسى	very important or necessary; something you must have
expertise	خبرة	trustworthy and consistently good in quality or performance
hard skills	مهارات صلبة	relating to specialized knowledge, especially in science, engineering, or technology
leadership	قيادة	the ability to guide, inspire, and influence others toward a common goal
measurable	قابل للقياس	able to be measured or quantified in some way
reliable	موثوق	can be trusted to do something well or on time
resilient	مرن/صامد	able to recover quickly from difficulties or challenges
soft skills	مهارات ناعمة	a person's way of thinking, feeling, or behaving; their outlook or approach
vital	حيوى	extremely important; absolutely needed

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**employer**	صاحب العمل	The employer offered better health insurance تأمين صحى benefits to all workers.
	employee	الموظف	Every employee must attend the weekly meeting to discuss progress and future goals.
	employable	قابل للتوظيف/مؤهل للعمل	With new computer skills, she became more employable in the competitive job market.

2	**job**	وظيفة	My grandfather had a job as a cashier many years ago.
	work	عمل (اسم لا يعد)	Nadia has a lot of work to do before going to the club.
	profession	مهنة متخصصة تحتاج إلى تعليم أو تدريب عالٍ (الاسم من الوظيفة)	Teaching is a noble profession which should be have more appreciation.
	career	مسار مهني طويل المدى	Ali had a long career in medicine before he died.
3	**respectful**	مُحترَم/مُؤدَب (يتعامل مع الناس باحترام وأدب)	The student was always respectful to his teachers and classmates at school.
	respected	مُحترَم (الناس تحترمه وتعامله باحترام)	Rania is a highly respected doctor known for her honesty and dedication.
	respectable	جدير بالاحترام/ذو مكانة	They live in a respectable neighborhood with schools, parks, and friendly families.
4	**personal**	شخصي	She shared her personal experiences during the interview to explain her motivation.
	personnel	شئون العاملين	The company's personnel department handles training, and employee welfare programs.
5	**quality**	جودة/صفة/سمة	- This restaurant is famous for the high quality of its delicious traditional food. - Your good qualities are as important as your certificate.
	quantity	كمية	The factory produced a large quantity of shoes during the busy holiday season.
6	**adapt**	يتأقلم/يكيّف	She had to adapt quickly to the new culture and lifestyle abroad.
	adopt	يتبنّى (طفلًا/فكرة)	The company decided to adopt new technology to improve efficiency and customer service.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "....." means trustworthy and consistently good in quality or performance.
- a) ambitious
- b) brilliant
- c) creative
- d) expertise

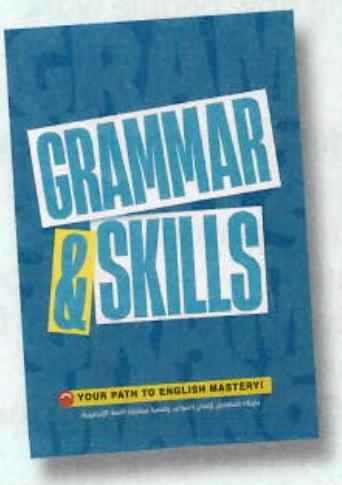
2. The word "....." means the ability to guide, inspire, and influence others toward a common goal.
- a) measurement
- b) soft skills
- c) leadership
- d) hard skills

3. The applicant with the best ..... qualities will be accepted with pleasure.
- a) personnel
- b) personal
- c) persons
- d) person

4. Marwan is always ..... toward older people in his family.
- a) respected
- b) respectable
- c) respectful
- d) respect

5. People must ..... to new technology to succeed in modern life.
- a) adopt
- b) adapt
- c) administrate
- d) admire

6. The company exported a large ..... of goods last year.
- a) quality
- b) quantify
- c) quantity
- d) quaint



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيّقة!

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Companies need workers with strong ..... like engineering, medicine, and accounting knowledge.
   a) hard skills b) emotions c) soft skills d) histories
2. Good ..... is necessary to guide a team toward success and achieve important goals.
   a) appearance b) certificate c) exception d) leadership
3. The company wants ..... results to decide if the new strategy is effective or not.
   a) measurable b) unbelievable c) disorganized d) excited
4. We need a/an ..... source of information when writing important reports.
   a) able b) weak c) reliable d) doubtful
5. The ..... community rebuilt all the damaged homes after the earthquake and continued living with hope.
   a) resilient b) hard c) soft d) specialized
6. A ..... team can solve problems quickly and achieve excellent results together.
   a) massive b) talkative c) cooperative d) selfish
7. Children are very ..... when they draw, paint, and invent new games.
   a) quiet b) creative c) ordinary d) weak
8. It is ..... to study hard if you want to pass your final exams.
   a) essential b) unnecessary c) avoidable d) qualifiable
9. The doctor showed great ..... in treating children with difficult health problems successfully.
   a) weakness b) expertise c) ignorance d) program
10. Trust is ..... in building strong relationships between friends, families, and coworkers.
    a) vital b) trivial c) manual d) optional
11. Students have different ....., so teachers should consider variable activities.
    a) ambitions b) families c) abilities d) faults
12. Technology continues to ..... rapidly, changing how people work, communicate, and live.
    a) regulate b) advance c) run d) fly
13. The teacher used a modern ..... to explain the difficult lesson in an easier way.
    a) mistake b) error c) approach d) road
14. Her positive ..... to life can make her an inspiring person.
    a) fear b) weakness c) attitude d) account
15. It is important to keep a good ..... between study, work, and personal free time.
    a) problem b) balance c) weakness d) list
16. Scientists must ..... to share knowledge and find solutions to global environmental problems.
    a) compete b) observe c) collaborate d) disagree

17. Using cellphones is very ..... among students in both schools and universities today.
a) reliable b) common c) ambitious d) unusual

18. The two countries tried to avoid a violent ..... by signing a peace agreement.
a) conflict b) union c) friendship d) agreement

19. The students will write a/an ..... to control the small robot.
a) communication b) approach c) code d) set

20. She studies ..... every evening, which helps her achieve excellent results in final exams.
a) highly b) rarely c) consistently d) especially

Expressions, Phrase, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. People ..... angry when they feel ignored or treated disrespectfully.
a) make b) do c) have d) get

22. If we don't change the plan immediately, something might ..... wrong today.
a) get b) make c) do d) go

23. The scientist will prove ..... data that the new method really works.
a) with b) for c) by d) to

24. My father's car is very .....; it never breaks down even on long trips.
a) rely b) reliability c) reliable d) reliance

25. Her mother was a great ....., always encouraging her to study and work hard.
a) inspiration b) inspiring c) inspired d) inspire

26. Please, keep this letter secret because it contains ..... information.
a) personal b) person c) personnel d) personality

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. Layla is a creative artist who makes stunning paintings using simple materials. The synonyms of the word "creative" are ..... .
a) innovative b) common c) boring d) repetitive e) imaginative

28. Water is the main vital source for human survival. The antonyms of the word "vital" are ..... .
a) essential b) necessary c) unnecessary d) aimless e) minor

29. The student came up with a brilliant idea that impressed everyone. What are the synonyms of the word "brilliant" in the sentence?
a) Strong. b) Intelligent. c) Dull. d) Outstanding. e) Boring.

30. Sarah is an ambitious girl who always works hard to achieve her goals. The opposites of the word "ambitious" are ..... .
a) aimless b) determined c) lazy d) aspiring e) relaxed

31. After graduation, Ahmed spent a long time to ..... a good job.
a) lose b) work c) get d) play e) land

B Language

Defining and Non-defining Relative clauses — جمل الوصل

- هى الجمل التى تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها. وضمائر الوصل هى:

when	where	whose	which/that	whom	who/that
للزمان	للمكان	للملكية	غير العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول العاقل

- تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.
- يأتى ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

1 اسم عاقل + who/that الذى/التى/الذين + verb

- تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهما فعل.

Mr. Said is very rich. He owns this enormous house.

Mr. Said, who ~~(He)~~ owns this enormous house, is very rich. (بعدها فعل فهى فى محل فاعل)

The footballer has been injured. He will miss the next two matches.

The footballer who/that ~~(He)~~ has been injured will miss the next two matches.

- فى الجملة الأولى Mr. Said اسم علم فجملة الوصل التى بعده تعتبر معلومة زائدة extra information فالجملة الأصلية Mr. Said is very rich. تؤدى معنى تامًا بمفردها ولا نضع that هنا ونضع comma.
- فى الجملة الثانية جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذى سيغيب عن المباريات القادمة، وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل defining وهنا يمكن استخدام that مع عدم وضع comma.

2 اسم عاقل + who/whom/that الذى/التى/الذين + subject

- تحل (who/whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهم فاعل.

The woman was happy. We gave ~~her~~ the money.

The woman who/whom/that we gave the money was happy.

The people were very friendly. We met ~~them~~ at the party.

The people who/whom/that we met at the party were very friendly.

بعدها فاعل فهى فى محل مفعول.

Ahmed is my neighbor. I go to school with him.

Ahmed, who/whom I go to school with, is my neighbor.

- لاحظ عدم وضع that حيث إن الجملة بها comma لأن جملة الوصل non-defining ولاحظ أيضًا أن حرف الجر with لم يأت قبل ضمير الوصل فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم إلا whom.

Ahmed, with whom I go to school, is my neighbor.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My uncle, ... I love most, helps me with math.
   a) which b) that c) whose d) whom
2. Heba, ... works as a nurse, comes from Alexandria.
   a) who b) whose c) whom d) that
3. The woman ..... lives next door is a doctor.
   a) whose b) that c) whom d) who's
4. This is Hossam ..... you met at our house last year.
   a) who's b) that c) whom d) b&c
5. We don't know the person ..... donated this money.
   a) which b) whose c) whom d) who

2 Rewrite each pair of sentences using a suitable relative pronoun:

1. The man is a famous chef. He cooked our dinner.
2. The student won the scholarship. The teachers praised her.
3. The artist is very talented. I bought a painting from him.
4. The man is my uncle. You met him yesterday.
5. The person called for you. He left his number.
6. The teacher is very popular. All the students admire her.

3 اسم غير عاقل + which/that الذى/التى/الذين + verb/subject

- تحل (which/that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.

إذا كانتا فى محل فاعل يأتى بعدهما فى الربط فعل وإذا كانتا فى محل مفعول فيأتى بعدهما فاعل.

The food went bad. ~~It~~ was left out of the fridge.
The food which/that was left out of the fridge went bad. (بعدها فعل فهى فى محل فاعل)

The movie was boring. We watched ~~it~~ yesterday.
The movie which/that we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدها فاعل فهى فى محل مفعول)

فى الجمل السابقة وضعت that لأن جملة الوصل defining ولم نضع comma أيضًا ولكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

The Nile is the main source of water in Egypt. It flows from south to north.
The Nile, which flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.

- جملة ينساب من الجنوب إلى الشمال معلومة إضافية فهى تعتبر non-defining ولذلك لم نضع that ووضعنا comma.

- إذا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم that ونستخدم which فقط.

The car in which (~~that~~) I go to work needs replacing.

Note: ملحوظة

يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول به، مثل:

- The boy was very polite. We met him at Adly Street yesterday.
- The boy who/whom/that we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.
- The boy ~~who/whom/that~~ we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.
- The stories were interesting. We read them at the school library.
- The stories which/that we read at the school library were interesting.
- The stories ~~which/that~~ we read at the school library were interesting.

4 اسم عاقل/غير عاقل + whose للملكية + sentence (subj. + v. + obj.)

- تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذى قبلها.
- تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية his/her/its/their

The writer was extremely delighted. His novel won the Nobel Prize.
The writer whose novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely delighted.
My cousin visits Italy a lot. His wife is Italian.
My cousin, whose wife is Italian, visits Italy a lot.

فى الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل (زوجته إيطالية) معلومة إضافية non-defining.

Note: ملحوظة

من الممكن استخدام حرف جر مع whose كما فى المثال التالى:

- Mr. Ali, in whose house we had our meal, is a generous man.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. An orphan is a person ..... parents have died.
   a) whose b) who's c) who d) whom
2. Their new house, ... they bought quite cheaply, needs some fixing up.
   a) whose b) when c) what d) which
3. The program ..... we missed is repeated this evening.
   a) whose b) that c) what d) when
4. The mistake ..... Ola made was fortunately not very serious.
   a) whose b) when c) which d) what
5. We met the man ..... car was advertised in the local newspaper.
   a) whose b) who's c) who d) whom

2 Link each pair of sentences using a suitable relative pronoun:

1. The boy found my lost wallet. His father is a police officer.
2. The restaurant has the best pizza. It is located downtown.
3. The movie was too long. We watched it last night.
4. The woman is my aunt. Her car was stolen.
5. The book is very interesting. I borrowed it from the library.

5 مكان + where = which ..... حرف جر + sentence

- تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث.

The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday ~~there~~.
The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.
The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed ~~there~~ for 3 days.
The hotel where we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.

- تحل where محل ظرفى المكان here - there، أما which فتحل محل it/they لغير العاقل؛ ولذلك يمكن أن تأتى وقبلها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت محل الضمير المكرر it أو they/them.

Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is very crowded.
Cairo, which is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.
The flat is very small. I live ~~in it~~.
The flat where I live (which I live in) is very small. (حيث أسكن = التى أسكن فيها)
The flat where I live (in which I live) is very small.

- يأتى قبل which حرف جر.

6 اسم يدل على الزمن + when = that/which ... حرف جر + sentence

- تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى (عندما).

It's seven o'clock. I get up ~~at that time~~.
It's seven o'clock when I get up.
Ramadan is a holy month شهر مقدس. We fast ~~in it~~.
Ramadan when we fast (which/that we fast in) is a holy month.

أنواع جمل الوصل (Defining and Non-defining)

1 النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية، وبدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أو ما هو المقصود. ونستخدم فى هذا النوع (who/which/whom) ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلًا من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة، وهذا يسمى (Defining).

The man who (that) robbed the bank was sent to prison.
The book which (that) tells you about history is useful.

2 النـوع الثانـى يعطى معلومـات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهـم معنى الجمـلة، ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبـل وبعـد عبـارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (that) فى هـذا النوع، ويسمى (Non-defining).

My father, whom I love, works as a teacher.

Alaa's car, which he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000 (Alaa has one car).

ولمزيـد من التوضيح لاحظ الفـرق بين المثـالين الآتيـين:

My sister, who lives in Assiut, came to visit me in Cairo last week.

My sister who lives in Assiut came to visit me in Cairo last week.

- فى المثال الأول جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية، وهذا يعنى أن لدى أختاً واحـدة فقط فلا أحتـاج للتعـريف.
- فى المثـال الثانى جملة الوصل تعطى معلومة أساسية وضروريـة، وهذا يعنى أننى لـدى أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق مَن التى زارتنـى منهـن.

Language Checkpoint 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The town ..... we spent the holiday was very beautiful.
   a) that b) which c) when d) where
2. This is the time of the year ..... so many people suffer from bad colds.
   a) when b) which c) who d) where
3. This is the park ..... we first met. Do you remember?
   a) that b) where c) when d) which
4. The tourists really enjoyed the time ..... they went to that Egyptian restaurant.
   a) who b) which c) when d) where
5. Do you remember the meeting at ..... we met our classmates?
   a) that b) where c) when d) which

2 Rewrite each pair of sentences using a suitable relative pronoun:

1. This is the park. We had our first picnic there.
2. The library is very quiet. I study there every weekend.
3. That was the restaurant. They served the best pizza there.
4. I'll always remember that day. I received my diploma on that day.
5. There was a time. People didn't have cellphones during that time.

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. The book, that I borrowed from you, is fantastic. (.....)
2. This is the school where I went to. (.....)
3. She thanked the man which helped her. (.....)
4. The day when we met him it was rainy. (.....)
5. Cairo, that is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded. (.....)
6. The movie we saw it yesterday was boring. (.....)
7. My aunt, who her car is red, is visiting us. (.....)
8. Eid is a celebration where families gather together. (.....)

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ola, ... mother is a physician, is very good at biology.
a) whose b) who's c) who d) whom

2. I like the people with ..... I work.
a) who b) that c) whose d) whom

3. The winner, ... name I have forgotten, is Italian.
a) whose b) his c) who d) that

4. Here's the barber's ..... I have my hair cut.
a) that b) where c) whom d) who

5. "Lion of the Desert", ... is about a brilliant bedouin leader, Omar al-Mukhtar, is an epic 1980 historical war movie.
a) whose b) which c) who d) whom

6. You wanted to tell me about the time ..... you lost your keys.
a) that b) where c) which d) when

7. Cairo, ... we live, is a crowded city.
a) what b) which c) where d) that

8. Alexandria, ... is the second capital city, has many comfortable resorts.
a) where b) which c) what d) that

9. The man about ..... you were talking has just come in the room.
a) which b) whose c) where d) whom

10. A river ..... is polluted is not safe for swimming.
a) whose b) that c) when d) where

11. We bought a chainsaw منشار کهربائی, ... we cut up all the wood.
a) which b) that c) with which d) when

12. In hospitals, they wake patients at 6 a.m., ... is much too early.
a) when b) what c) where d) which

13. The man ..... son I shouted was extremely furious.
a) at whose b) whose c) at whom d) who's

14. Hong Kong is a place ..... a lot of tall buildings.
a) where b) in which has
c) which has d) which there are

15. The earthquake ..... had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive.
a) when b) what c) where d) that

16. Huda, ... cellphone was lost, is terribly sad.
a) who b) who's c) whose d) that

17. Finland is a country ..... covers an area of 338,455 square kilometers.
a) which b) whose c) where d) what

18. My mother ..... is the best person in the world.
a) who I love b) , who I love, c) that I love d) , which I love,

19. Do you remember the day ..... you first met your new neighbor?
a) where b) in which c) when d) which

20. My brother, ... I am proud, works as a civil engineer in Cairo.
a) of whom b) whom c) who d) that

21. I went to the butcher's ..... I bought some meat.
a) who b) which c) whose d) where

22. The novel, ... author won the Nobel Prize, is widely published.
a) that b) whose c) which d) who

23. Ten o'clock is the time ..... I go to bed at.
a) when b) where c) which d) whom

24. I don't know the man ..... has offered to help you.
a) who b) whom c) who's d) whose

25. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
a) Mr. Ahmed in whose car we go to work is very generous.
b) Mr. Ahmed whose car we go to work is very generous.
c) Mr. Ahmed whose car is new is very generous.
d) Mr. Ahmed who has a new car is very generous.

26. Which sentence of the following shows that I have only one brother?
a) My brother who spent his vacation in France is 25 years old.
b) My brother that is 25 years old spent his vacation in France.
c) My brother whose age is 25 spent his vacation in France.
d) My brother, who is 25 years old, spent his vacation in France

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. The city where I was born there is very large. (.....)
2. She loves the book who she got for her birthday. (.....)
3. Summer, that is my favorite season, will be here soon. (.....)
4. This is the house where I lived in as a child. (.....)
5. The student whom won the first prize is brilliant. (.....)

Test Yourself | Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. His ..... idea saved a lot of time and money for the company.
a) brilliant b) bad c) weak d) amazed

2. The teacher likes ..... students who help and respect each other during lessons.
a) quantifiable b) main
c) cooperative d) inexperienced

3. Food, water, and shelter are ..... needs for all human beings everywhere.
a) luxury b) essential c) extra d) useless

4. The engineer's ..... in designing bridges was needed for the new national project.
a) expertise b) position c) prediction d) emotion

5. Besides your ..... skills, you need to work on your personal skills to stay employable.
a) solid b) difficult c) hard d) soft

6. ..... is not an easy matter. Controlling and guiding a team requires lots of qualifications.
a) Leadership b) Silence c) Resilient d) Expertise

7. Teachers set ..... goals so students can track their progress and see real improvement.
a) delicious b) malleable c) measurable d) invisible

8. A good friend is someone who is honest, supportive, and always ..... .
a) unreliable b) reliable c) protective d) expensive

9. Teachers encourage students to develop ..... such as problem-solving, cooperation, and leadership.
a) soft skills b) hard skills c) feelings d) appearances

10. Water is ..... for human life and plants as well.
a) visual b) vital c) viral d) virtual

11. A/An ..... friend always keeps your secrets and never lies or betrays you.
a) specialized b) personal c) assessable d) trustworthy

12. The professional engineer could solve a ..... problem with the machine before the factory inspection.
a) collaborative b) communicative c) technical d) resilient

13. The teacher gave ..... instructions for the project so students could follow them easily.
a) strange b) specific c) wrong d) unclear

14. He is a/an ..... doctor who treats only heart diseases in a famous hospital.
a) general b) vital c) specialized d) essential

15. Scientists can ..... the effects of pollution by measuring air and water quality carefully.
a) magnify b) qualify c) quantify d) beautify

Language

16. The man ..... damaged your car was a rash متهور driver.
a) whose b) who c) whom d) which

17. Ahmed, ... I go to school with, is ill in hospital.
a) whose b) when c) that d) whom

18. The man ..... car was stolen phoned the police.
a) who's b) which c) whose d) that

19. One should quit smoking, ... is very harmful to health.
a) which b) what c) who d) that

20. This is the bus ..... I have been waiting for.
a) who's b) where c) what d) that

21. My local tennis club, ... I learned to play tennis, was on television yesterday.
a) where b) that c) which d) when

22. We met the man ..... son came first in the competition.
a) whom b) whose c) that d) who's

23. The problem, ... arose because of building the new factory near our town, is very serious.
a) what b) whom c) which d) where

24. Look at that building ..... windows are all broken.
a) who's b) where c) which d) whose

25. Mr. Emad is the person from ..... I got the information.
a) whom b) that c) who d) whose

26. We called a doctor ..... works at a hospital in Aswan.
a) who's b) whose c) who d) whom

27. The accountant ..... for my father's company was promoted to a higher position.
a) that works b) who work c) works d) whose works

28. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) The village which I grew up is very small.
b) The village where I grew up is very small.
c) The village when I grew up is very small.
d) The village in where I grew up is very small.

29. It was a day ..... everything seemed to go wrong.
a) that of b) which c) why d) when

30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections.
b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections.
c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections.
d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections.

Study... Part 2

Lesson 3: Skills for Work and Life
Lesson 4: Hard Skills vs. Soft Skills: Finding the Balance
Lesson 5: Descriptive Essay

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adjust (v) (ed) يضبط/يعدل	emotional intelligence الذكاء العاطفي	teamwork (n) عمل جماعي
comfort zone (n) منطقة الراحة (الوضع المألوف)	experience (n) (v) (d) خبرة/يجرّب	time management إدارة الوقت
debate (n) (v) (d) مناقشة/يجادل	long-term (adj) طويل المدى	

Important Idioms

get your foot in the door يخطو أول خطوة/يبدأ فرصة	stay on top of things يتابع الأمور/يسيطر عليها
meet others halfway ينفذ تعليمات الآخرين/يصل إلى حل وسط (تسوية)	think on your feet يفكر بسرعة/يتصرف بذكاء (بسرعة بديهة)

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ads = advertisements (n) إعلانات	fill (v) (ed) يملأ	relationships (n) علاقات
almost (adv) تقريبًا	forehead (n) جبهة	shine (v) (n) يلمع/يتألق/بريق
argue (v) (d) يجادل	improve (v) (d) يُحسّن/يتطور	shoulders (n) أكتاف
around (adv) (prep) حوالى/حول	interview (n) (v) (ed) مقابلة/يجرى مقابلة	shout (v) (ed) يصرخ
boastful (adj) متفاخر/مغرور	lights (n) أضواء	sportsman (n) رياضى
calmly (adv) بهدوء	loudly (adv) بصوت عالٍ	sweat (n) (v) (ed) عرق/يعرق
cheer (v) (ed) يهتف/يشجع	mind (n) عقل	symbol (n) رمز
coding (n) برمجة	pentathlon (n) الخماسى الحديث (رياضة)	tired (adj) متعب
communication (n) تواصل	planner (n) مخطط/منظم/مفكرة	tough (adj) صارم/قوى/صعب
compete (v) (d) يتنافس	podium (n) منصة/منبر	unexpected (adj) غير متوقع
cover (v) (ed) يغطى	power (n) قوة/طاقة	valuable (adj) قيّم/ذو قيمة
crowd (n) حشد/جمهور	proud (adj) فخور	wrap (v) (ped) يلف/يغلف
fencing (n) مبارزة (رياضة)	real-life (adj) حياة واقعية	

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She gained valuable ..... while working in different companies during her internship تدريب.
   a) wealth b) experience c) education d) chance
2. The company invested in ..... projects to ensure growth and success over decades.
   a) long-term b) short-term c) sudden d) quick
3. Effective ..... can help teams finish projects faster and with better results.
   a) conflict b) advertisement c) teamwork d) podium
4. She improved her time ..... by creating schedules and prioritizing important daily tasks.
   a) relaxation b) relationship c) success d) management
5. They will join a/an ..... regarding the pros and cons of this new regulation tomorrow.
   a) interview b) coding c) debate d) communication
6. Schools are teaching students about emotional ..... to help them understand feelings better.
   a) intelligence b) grammar c) logic d) management
7. To solve the argument, they had to ..... halfway and accept some changes.
   a) fight more b) get their c) meet others d) shout loudly
8. The magazine was full of colorful ..... for new products and services.
   a) games b) CVs c) ads d) songs

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

build relationships يبنى علاقات	take effort يتطلب جهدًا	take a nap يأخذ قيلولة	
do math يجرى حسابات / يحل مسائل رياضية	take time يأخذ وقتًا	join a school يلتحق بمدرسة	
make a decision يتخذ قرارًا	under pressure تحت ضغط	in the long term على المدى البعيد	
make concessions يقدم تنازلات (لحل أمر)	throw away يرمى / يتخلص من	succeed in ينجح فى	
make a to-do list يعمل قائمة مهام	stand on يقف على	thankful for ممتن لـ	
full of ملىء بـ	step out of يخرج من	work on يعمل على	
in front of أمام	look for يبحث عن	list in يسرد فى	
stay calm يبقى هادئًا	join a debate يدخل فى مناظرة / جدال		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adjust	يضبط/يعدل/يكيّف	adjustment	تعديل/تكييف	adjustable	قابل للتعديل
comfort	يريح/يعزي	comfort	راحة/عزاء	comfortable	مريح
compete	يتنافس	competition competitor	منافسة متنافس	competitive	تنافسي
debate	يناقش/يجادل	debate	مناقشة/مناظرة	debatable	قابل للنقاش
experience	يجرب/يختبر	experience	خبرة/تجربة	experienced	ذو خبرة
----------		intelligence	ذكاء	intelligent	ذكي
argue	يجادل/يناقش	argument	جدال/حُجّة	argumentative	جدلي/مُحب للجدال
improve	يُحسّن/يتحسّن	improvement	تحسين/تطوير	improved/improvable	محسَّن/قابل للتحسين
tire	يتعب/يُرهق	tiredness	تعب/إرهاق	tired tiring	مُتعَب مُتعِب

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

They always argue about money when they go shopping together on weekends. (v)
The lawyer presented a strong argument in court to defend his innocent client. (n)
He is argumentative and enjoys challenging others during discussions. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
adjust	يضبط/يكيّف	modify/adapt		ignore/neglect	يهمل/يتجاهل
debate	مناقشة/جدال	dispute/argument		agreement/peace/harmony	اتفاق/سلام
experience	خبرة/تجربة	knowledge/practice		ignorance/inexperience	جهل/قلة خبرة
teamwork	عمل جماعي	cooperation/collaboration		isolation/individualism	عزلة/فردية
argue	يجادل/يناقش	dispute/quarrel		agree/accept	يوافق/يقبل

boastful	متفاخر/مغرور	arrogant/conceited	humble/modest	متواضع
compete	يتنافس	contest/challenge	cooperate/surrender	يتعاون/يستسلم
cover	يغطى	conceal/protect	uncover/expose	يكشف/يعرّض
fill	يملأ	load/stuff	empty/drain	يفرّغ/يصرف
proud	فخور	pleased/honored	ashamed/humble	خجلان/متواضع
tired	متعب	exhausted/weary	energetic/lively	نشيط/مليء بالحياة
tough	صارم/صعب	strong/harsh	weak/gentle	ضعيف/لطيف
unexpected	غير متوقع	surprising/sudden	expected/predicted	متوقع
valuable	قيّم/ذو قيمة	precious/worthy	worthless/cheap	بلا قيمة/رخيص

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The two football teams will ..... for the championship tomorrow evening.
a) competitor b) compete c) competition d) competitive

2. Our main ..... released a new phone model at a lower price.
a) competitor b) compete c) competition d) competitive

3. Some employees ..... naps during lunch breaks to feel more productive.
a) carry b) make c) do d) take

4. I always ..... a to-do list before studying to stay organized.
a) carry b) do c) make d) give

5. I am thankful ..... my manager's support and good advice.
a) with b) for c) at d) by

6. I will never ..... an aimless debate and waste my time.
a) enter b) join c) take d) do

7. He sounded boastful when he kept talking about his expensive car. The synonym of the word "boastful" is ..... .
a) pleased b) humble c) arrogant d) ashamed

8. She gave me valuable advice that helped me solve my problem. The antonym of the word "valuable" is ..... .
a) energetic b) weary c) priceless d) worthless

Reading Text (1)

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

SOFT SKILLS ARE MORE IMPORTANT THAN EVER

In today's world, soft skills are more important than ever. These are the personal and social abilities that help us speak clearly, work well with others, solve problems, and adjust to new situations. While hard skills show what you know, soft skills show how you use that knowledge. They can often get your foot in the door, but they can also help you succeed in the long term.

Soft skills are not learned from books—they grow through practice and real-life experience. To build them, you sometimes have to step out of your comfort zone. For example, to improve your communication, you could join a school debate or practice speaking in front of others. To improve teamwork, you might work on a group project where you need to listen, share, and meet others halfway.

Time management is another key skill. You can use a planner or make a to-do list to stay on top of things. And when something unexpected happens, it helps to think on your feet—to make good decisions quickly.

Another important soft skill is emotional intelligence. This means understanding your own feelings and the feelings of others. It helps you solve problems calmly and build strong relationships.

Learning soft skills takes time and effort, but they can open doors in school, work, and life. In the end, knowledge fills your mind, but soft skills shape your future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Soft skills help people ..... with others in different situations.

a) argue b) compete c) connect d) avoid

2. To develop your communication skills, you can ..... .

a) stay silent b) join a debate

c) ignore your classmates d) copy someone's answers

3. When you ....., you leave your safe habits and try something new.

a) get your foot in the door b) step out of your comfort zone

c) stay on top of things d) meet others halfway

4. Emotional intelligence means understanding ..... .

a) only your own needs

b) how to solve math problems

c) your feelings and others' feelings

d) technical skills like coding

Reading Text (2)

Ahmad Elgendy

The crowd cheers loudly as Ahmed Elgendy stands on the winner's podium, his gold medal shining under the bright stadium lights. He smiles, tired but proud, with the Egyptian flag wrapped around his shoulders. Sweat still covers his forehead after the tough modern pentathlon, showing how hard he has trained.

His strong body, built through years of swimming, fencing, and running, moves with calm and control. When he smiles, he doesn't seem proud or boastful—just quietly happy and thankful for his success. The crowd shouts his name—" Elgendy! Elgendy!"—full of pride for their country.

In that moment, he is not just a sportsman; he shows the power of hard work and becomes a symbol of what Egypt can achieve in front of the whole world.

Listening Text

Scan & listen

Hard skills and soft skills

When people look for jobs, they need two kinds of abilities: hard skills and soft skills. Hard skills are abilities that you can measure, such as speaking a foreign language, using computer programs, or doing math. These are the skills that employers often list in job ads. For example, if a company needs someone who can design websites, they will look for technical knowledge in coding.

Soft skills, on the other hand, are personal qualities that help you work well with others. Communication, teamwork, and problem-solving are examples that are very valuable in almost every job. A person who stays calm under pressure is often seen as a strong team member. Some people think soft skills aren't as important, which is not true.

In fact, many employers say they prefer someone who has both types of skills. So, while hard skills may get you an interview, soft skills, which show how you behave at work, often help you succeed in the long term.

Definitions

التعريفات

comfort zone منطقة الراحة (الوضع المألوف)
a situation or environment where one feels safe, secure, and at ease, avoiding risk

debate مناظرة/جدال
an organized discussion or argument about a particular topic, often with opposing معارض viewpoints

get your foot in the door يخطو أول خطوة/يبدأ فرصة	to achieve your first opportunity to enter a business, organization, or profession
long term طويل المدى	continuing or remaining for a long period of time into the future
meet others halfway ينفذ تعليمات الآخرين/يصل إلى حل وسط (تسوية)	to compromise or make concessions with someone to reach an agreement
stay on top of things يتابع الأمور/يسيطر عليها	to be well-informed and organized about ongoing tasks or situations
to think on your feet يفكر بسرعة/يتصرف بذكاء	to make quick, smart decisions, especially in unexpected situations

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

experience (n) خبرة (اسم لا يعد)	I have teaching experience that helps me explain difficult lessons very clearly.
experience (n) تجربة حياتية (اسم يعد)	She told us about her travel experiences during summer vacations in different countries.
experiment (n) تجربة عملية	The students performed a science experiment carefully and recorded all the results.

2

work with يعمل مع	She works with children.
work for يعمل لدى شخص أو جهة	I work for a software company.
work in يعمل فى مجال/صناعة/مكان عام	He works in education.
work on يعمل على مشروع أو مهمة محددة	They are working on a new project.
work at يعمل فى مكان	Menna works at a famous bank in Luxor.

3	**in the end** فى النهاية/أخيرًا	In the end, she decided to study medicine despite many challenges.
	at the end of فى آخر/عند نهاية	At the end of the movie, everyone applauded loudly and clapped their hands.
4	**mind** العقل الذهنى/التفكير (الأفكار، الوعى، المشاعر)	You should train your mind to stay calm during difficult situations.
	brain المخ (العضو البيولوجى فى الجمجمة)	The brain controls memory, movement, emotions, and many body functions.
5	**debate** جدال (حديث يتضمن أفكارًا معارضة لبعضها)	The Student Union is holding a debate on immigration.
	discussion مناقشة (تتضمن آراء لتنيمة فكرة أو مشروع)	There are several projects under discussion.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The idiom "....." means to achieve your first opportunity to enter a business, organization, or profession.
   a) get your foot in the door b) meet others halfway
   c) stay on top of things d) think on your feet
2. The word "....." refers to an organized talk or argument about a particular topic, often with opposing viewpoints.
   a) discussion b) debate c) comfort zone d) talk
3. Please keep in ..... that the meeting starts at nine tomorrow morning.
   a) skull b) skeleton c) mind d) brain
4. ..... the end, she decided to study abroad and follow her dreams.
   a) In b) By c) Since d) At
5. I work ..... a great team that supports each other in projects.
   a) for b) on c) in d) with
6. The students conducted a science ..... to observe chemical reactions
   a) experiment b) experience c) experiences d) expert

Practice... Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. He had to ..... his plans because of the unexpected heavy rain yesterday.
   a) control b) experience c) adjust d) succeed
2. Success often requires stepping outside your ..... zone and facing challenges bravely.
   a) comfort b) school c) family d) friendship
3. He is very ..... and never stops talking about his achievements loudly.
   a) silent b) boastful c) humble d) quiet
4. The fans began to ..... loudly when their favorite team scored another goal.
   a) share b) debate c) cheer a) shout
5. Learning ..... is essential for a brilliant future, especially in the age of AI.
   a) reading b) coding c) drawing d) sports
6. Effective ..... helps build trust and strong relationships between team members.
   a) pressure b) conflict c) communication d) concession
7. We should ..... our minds with positive thoughts and hope.
   a) spill b) fill c) start d) close
8. The city ..... were shining brightly during the festival celebrations last night.
   a) zones b) sounds c) trees d) lights
9. The baby cried ..... in the middle of the night, waking everyone up.
   a) loudly b) softly c) quietly d) a loud
10. Hazim uses a daily ..... to organize his homework, meetings, and personal tasks.
    a) magazine b) planner c) blogger d) diary
11. The winners stood proudly on the ..... to receive their medals and applause.
    a) fence b) court c) podium d) shoulder
12. Strong ..... with colleagues can make the workplace more enjoyable and productive.
    a) conflicts b) rules c) relationships d) challenges
13. The coach had to ..... orders at the players so they could hear him.
    a) whisper b) shout c) write d) sing
14. Ahmed Elgendy had a live interview, directly after finishing the race, while ..... poured down his face.
    a) sweet b) power c) sweat d) rest

15. The dove is a universal ..... of peace and hope.
a) advertisement b) letter c) symbol d) word

16. He works well even when he is under ..... to finish tasks quickly.
a) licence b) construction c) control d) pressure

17. The athletes finished the ..... modern pentathlon, feeling extremely exhausted.
a) short-term b) tough c) simple d) mandatory

18. Students are taught the importance of time ..... so that they can make use of their time.
a) support b) occupation c) management d) table

19. He took an internship to ..... and start his career in finance.
a) meet halfway b) stay on top of things
c) think on his feet d) get his foot in the door

Expressions, Phrase, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20. Students prepared well for the science ..... held at their school yesterday.
a) competitor b) compete c) competition d) competitive

21. Learning a new language will ..... effort, but it is very rewarding.
a) make b) do c) take d) give

22. Ramy had to ..... a decision quickly about which university to join.
a) carry b) do c) make d) give

23. They are working ..... a new project to reduce pollution.
a) for b) in c) at d) on

24. Working in my father's factory helped me gain practical ..... .
a) experience b) experiment c) expert d) exports

25. Being understanding helps you to ..... strong relationships.
a) do b) pretend c) join d) build

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. The students had a lively debate about climate change during class. The synonyms of the word "debate" are ..... .
a) agreement b) argument c) celebration d) dispute e) harmony

27. Many athletes will compete in the international tournament next month. The antonyms of the word "compete" are ..... .
a) contest b) challenge c) cooperate d) conceal e) surrender

28. The race was really tough; all the runners did their best. The synonyms of the word "tough" are ..... .
a) strong b) easy c) harsh d) short e) gentle

29. Teamwork is essential for completing group projects successfully. The words that give the opposites of the word "teamwork" are ..... .
a) isolation b) cooperation c) collaboration d) fight e) individualism

30. The player is very ..... because he thinks he is better than everyone.
a) modest b) humble c) arrogant d) boastful e) gentle

B Language

Extra Points

تقاط إضافية على جمل الوصل

1 تستخدم what كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهى تساوى the thing(s) that

فعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هى عليه ← what ← فعل/فاعل

I didn't understand what he had said. (what had been said).
I can't give him (Ahmed) what he needs.

- يمكن أن تكون what أول الكلام.

What makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

2 تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.

My brother won a valuable prize, which made me happy.

3 تستخدم whose بدلًا من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:

The girl ~~with~~ blue eyes is my sister.
The girl whose eyes are blue is my sister.
The man is rich. ~~He has~~ a red car.
The man whose car is red is rich.
The car won the race. Its color is red.
The car whose color is red won the race.

4 لاحظ الفرق بين whose/who's:

who's + v-ing/noun = who is ... **who's + P.P.** = who has ...

The boy who's running there is my cousin.
The boy whose phone was stolen was furious.

5 هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل، فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ whose (ومن الممكن أن نعرف أن هذه الكلمات اسم إذا جاء بعدها فعل)، مثل:

wish, aim, show, mistake, stay, dream, work, play, like, dislike, end, hope, offer, demand, income, etc.

The boy whose dream has come true is happy.
I like ~~the~~ stories whose ends are happy.

6 نستخدم that بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

all – any (thing) – every (thing) – few – little – many – much – no (thing) – none – some (thing)

Is this all that you want me to do?
There isn't anything that we can eat in this house.
This is the best book that I have ever read.

7 يمكن استخدام why (for which) كضمير وصل كالآتى:

I'd like to know the reason why (for which) he decided not to come.

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

1 إذا كان فى محل مفعول به:

- The meat was delicious. We ate it yesterday.
- The meat (which/that) we ate yesterday was delicious.
- The man is my neighbour. I meet him every day.
- The man (who/whom/that) I meet every day is my neighbour.

2 إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول نحذف which + v. to be ونضع P.P.:

- I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

3 إذا كان بعده مبنى للمعلوم نحذف which/who ونضع v-ing:

- The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

4 إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف who/which + v. to be ولا نضع شيئًا:

- Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The ship ..... in the canal now is carrying goods.
   a) passes b) which pass c) passing d) passed
2. A lot of students do ..... their teachers want, but a few are naughty.
   a) which b) that c) why d) what
3. The tourist ..... a blue sweater comes from Japan.
   a) with b) whose c) who d) that
4. The boss wants to know the reason ..... several workers are absent.
   a) which b) why c) when d) where
5. I will never forget the reward ..... to me by my English teacher.
   a) which given b) was given c) given d) giving

2 Rewrite each sentence using a relative pronoun:

1. The reason is unknown. He left for that reason. (.....)
2. I don't know the thing. He needs it. (.....)
3. The car is very fast. Its engine is powerful. (.....)
4. My sister passed her driving test. This made my parents proud. (.....)
5. All the advice was good. The teacher gave it. (.....)
6. Is this everything? You asked me to do it. (.....)

Practice... Language General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The story ..... told by the old man was very interesting.
a) who b) which c) whose d) no word

2. This is the book ..... I bought yesterday.
a) who b) which c) whom d) whose

3. The teacher ..... teaches us English is very kind.
a) which b) who c) whom d) what

4. His wife, ... lives in Paris, is a fashion model.
a) who b) who's c) whom d) whose

5. Do you know that lady ..... driving the car madly?
a) who has b) who's c) whose d) that

6. The film ..... we watched last night was very funny.
a) where b) that c) whose d) who

7. The boy ..... is playing football is my brother.
a) who b) whom c) which d) no word

8. The woman ..... sitting at the desk is Mr Tamer's secretary.
a) whose b) who's c) who d) whom

9. The boy ..... playing football is my brother.
a) who b) whom c) which d) no word

10. This school is only for children ..... first language is not English.
a) whose b) who c) that d) who's

11. She showed me ..... she had bought from the shopping mall yesterday.
a) which b) where c) that d) what

12. The man ..... that furniture is a skilful carpenter.
a) mends b) mending c) who mending d) mended

13. The lesson ..... by the teacher now seems extremely important.
a) which explained b) which is explained
c) explained d) is being explained

14. The decision ..... concerning selling the flat wasn't a good one.
a) my brother made b) which made c) was making d) makes

15. Children usually prefer movies ..... happy endings.
a) with b) whose c) which d) that

16. Judy, ... father works for a multi-national company, often travels abroad with her family.
a) who b) whose c) who's d) that

17. They treated the poor man rudely, ... made me angry.
a) which b) whom c) who d) in which

18. The furniture ..... by this company is fashionable and lasts for a long time.

a) which made b) made

c) is made d) which making

19. Heba lost the book ..... her last month.

a) which I lent it b) which lent c) who lent d) I lent

20. The reason ..... I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.

a) where b) which c) why d) whose

21. I didn't buy anything because I didn't find ..... I wanted.

a) which b) what c) that d) when

22. My teacher is a person ..... .

a) who everybody likes him b) everybody likes him

c) everybody likes d) that everybody likes him

23. I highly appreciate the sales manager ..... yesterday; he is very sensible and flexible.

a) who I met him b) that I met him c) I met him d) I met

24. ..... he says is really logical; you should trust him.

a) What b) Which c) What's d) Whose

25. Cellphones ..... in China are sold in a lot of countries all over the world.

a) producing b) are produced

c) produced d) which produced

26. The factory, ... I work in, produces high quality cotton clothes.

a) which b) that c) where d) what

27. Most of the books ..... by Naguib Mahfouz were translated into many languages.

a) which written b) that written c) who wrote d) written

2 Rewrite these sentences using a relative pronoun:

1. The man is a famous actor. He has a red scarf.

.....

2. I still remember the encouragement. My parents gave it to me.

.....

3. This is the best movie. I have never seen a better one.

.....

4. Something surprised me. You said it.

.....

5. I need to find a person. That person can fix my computer.

.....

6. The problem is complicated. We are facing it.

.....

Test Yourself | Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. They wanted to ..... new cultures by traveling across Europe during summer vacation.
a) experience b) forget c) ignore d) invest

2. Doctors recommend ..... treatment, for patients with serious chronic health conditions.
a) temporary b) brief c) long-term d) instant

3. They learned the importance of ..... during the group challenge at school.
a) rest b) teamwork c) boasting d) pride

4. New students must quickly ..... to the rules and culture of their school.
a) adjust b) resist c) reject d) adopt

5. The students had a ..... about climate change in the classroom today.
a) meal b) contract c) debate d) joke

6. Leaders with ..... can manage stress and motivate their employees effectively.
a) lively debates b) little management
c) small concessions d) emotional intelligence

7. In negotiations مفاوضات, it is important to ..... to reach a fair agreement.
a) get your foot in the door b) meet others halfway
c) stay on top of things d) think on your feet

8. Technology can be useful for ..... every job nowadays; it saves time and effort.
a) most b) almost c) all most d) soon

9. My friends always ..... about money whenever they go shopping together on weekends.
a) create b) invest c) argue d) manage

10. The children ran ..... the park happily during the afternoon playtime session.
a) above b) around c) about d) under

11. She spoke ..... during the meeting despite the stressful and difficult situation.
a) nervously b) loudly c) calmly d) angrily

12. Athletes must ..... fairly and respect rules during the international championship games.
a) complete b) compete c) cooperate d) argue

13. A large ..... gathered in the square to celebrate the national team players.
a) individual b) people c) groups d) crowd

14. It is recommended to stay ..... of things and organize your plans and goals.
a) on top b) around area c) in between d) on your feet

15. He decided to try ..... because he imagines himself as a warrior with a sword.
a) swimming b) running c) fencing d) painting

Language

16. Why do you blame me for everything ..... goes wrong?
a) whose b) who c) that d) what

17. My cousin, ... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.
a) that b) who's c) whom d) whose

18. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, ... was a doctor by profession, invented Sherlock Holmes.
a) whose b) that c) whom d) who

19. Khalid, ... father is a mechanic, has just repaired our car.
a) whose his b) who c) who's d) whose

20. Show me ..... you've got in your hand.
a) which b) what c) who's d) that

21. In the summer vacations, ... most people take time off, seaside towns are usually very busy.
a) when b) which c) that d) where

22. The flat ..... is overlooking the Nile.
a) which he bought it b) he bought c) he bought it d) he buying

23. The road ..... the two villages is very narrow.
a) joined b) joining c) which is joined d) who is joining

24. A racket is something ..... to hit a ball when you play tennis or badminton.
a) which you use b) which you use it c) you use it d) b and c

25. I wanted to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find ..... I wanted.
a) which b) whose c) that d) what

26. The meat ..... yesterday was delicious.
a) eating b) which ate c) eaten d) which eaten

27. This is the hotel ..... rooms have a view of the sea.
a) which b) whose c) who's d) where

28. The boy ..... over there has a degree in biology.
a) who standing b) standing c) stands d) is standing

29. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) The pyramids, which we visited yesterday, are very old.
b) The pyramids which we visited them yesterday are very old.
c) The pyramids to which are very old were visited yesterday.
d) The pyramids, that we visited yesterday, are very old.

30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
a) This is the dress my mother has made for me.
b) This is the dress which my mother has made for me.
c) This is the dress who my mother has made for me.
d) This is the dress that my mother has made for me.

Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Writing a Descriptive Essay كتابة المقال الوصفى

- A **descriptive essay** is a piece of writing that uses a detailed, sensory language to paint a vivid picture in the reader's mind. You describe a person, place, object, or event so that the reader can imagine and get involved in it.

المقال الوصفى هو قطعة كتابية تستخدم لغة تفصيلية وحِسِّيّة لرسم صورة حيّة فى ذهن القارئ. فى هذا النوع من المقالات تصف شخصًا أو مكانًا أو شيئًا أو حدثًا بحيث يتمكّن القارئ من أن يتخيله ويندمج معه.

The structure of a descriptive essay:

Introduction: Briefly introduce the subject and the feeling you want to express about this subject.

Body Paragraphs: Introduce the main idea and use adjectives and verbs that involve the five senses.

5 Senses	Example Words
Sight	crowded مزدحم/golden ذهبى/ancient قديم/tiny صغيرجدًا/massive ضخم هائل
Sound	loud عالى (الصوت)/quiet هادئ/silent صامت
Smell	sweet حلو (الرائحة)/fresh طازج - منعش/smoky مُدَخَّن
Taste	sweet حلو (الطعم)/salty مالح/bitter مر
Touch	hot ساخن/cold بارد/smooth ناعم/rough خشن/soft لين - ناعم

Conclusion: Briefly summarize the overall picture or feeling you described.

MODEL DESCRIPTIVE ESSAY

A place that will forever hold a special memory for me is the beautiful town of Dahab on the Red Sea coast. I visited it last summer, and its stunning natural beauty left a lasting impression on my heart.

What made it so unforgettable was the incredible view. The landscape was a powerful contrast of golden desert mountains meeting the vibrant, turquoise water. The sea was so clear that from the shore, I could see tiny, colorful fish swimming around massive, dark coral reefs.

The only sounds were the gentle lapping of waves on the shore and the soft whisper of the wind. The air felt warm and dry, but a refreshing breeze always blew from the sea. I felt the rough texture of scattered shells and the smooth, wet sand near the water's edge.

Dahab gave me a feeling of pure peace. It's a beautiful memory I can always close my eyes and return to. I will never forget it.

Practice Skills Exercises

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later.

Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling downhill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms.

When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work. When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Energy is ..... .

a) the ability to bounce a ball
b) the ability to cause change
c) the ability to ride a bike
d) the ability to switch on the light

2. The other meaning of "change into" from the passage is ..... .

a) bounce
b) kick
c) store
d) convert

3. Energy that is based on an object's position is called ..... .

a) potential energy
b) kinetic energy
c) thermal energy
d) mechanical energy

4. The antonym of the word "raw" is "..... ".

a) uncooked
b) fresh
c) cooked
d) natural

5. Kinetic energy is another term for the energy of ..... .

a) light
b) sound
c) bouncing
d) motion

6. When a person starts to move, ...

a) his motion energy turns into a kinetic one

b) his motion energy turns into a chemical one

c) his kinetic energy turns into a chemical one

d) his potential energy turns into a kinetic one

7. Which one is not mentioned in the passage?

a) The energy in a battery.

b) The energy in a cellphone.

c) The energy in a basketball.

d) The energy of heat.

8. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) Types of Power

b) What is Energy?

c) Sports and Energy

d) Energy Consumption

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Albert Einstein found school very difficult. His teacher would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently while she waited for him to answer her questions. But Albert always had to think about many things before he could answer. After all, he would say to himself, there are many different things to think about before you can say anything is absolutely certain. When his teacher wasn't asking Albert a question, Albert would think of a question to ask her. And often when he did, she would get red in the face and angry at Albert for thinking up questions she couldn't answer. The more Albert learned, the more ideas he found to think about. The more he thought, the more questions he asked.

He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon and the sun are just a part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also made up of all the stars we can see with our eyes and millions and millions more than we can see only with the largest telescopes. He thought there must be some rules to explain why everything in the universe acts as it does. Finally, he believed he had some of the answers. And then people started asking him questions because he had answers for many things that scientists had been trying to figure out for many, many years.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The phrase "would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently" means ..... .

a) she was very happy

b) she was very angry

c) she was very ill

d) she was bored with teaching

2. When he was young, Albert Einstein ..... .

a) didn't care about learning

b) was very stupid

c) always made his teacher cry

d) was clever enough to think about everything

3. If Albert Einstein's teacher hadn't raised questions, ...

a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions

b) Albert would have left the class happily

c) Albert would have been angry

d) Albert wouldn't have answered them

4. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) Albert Einstein's stupidity

b) Albert Einstein and his teacher

c) Albert Einstein and his deep thinking

d) Albert Einstein's early childhood

5. Albert Einstein concluded that ..... .

a) there is something called the Earth

b) the Earth is oval

c) we live in a massive universe

d) asking questions is useful

6. Albert took time to answer questions at school because ..... .

a) he was busy

b) he was stupid

c) the questions were difficult

d) he thought a lot

7. Albert's teacher's face got red when he asked her a question because ..... .

a) she didn't know the answer

b) the questions were embarrassing

c) the questions were off point

d) he was making fun of her

8. People always asked Albert about a lot of things as ..... .

a) he claimed prophecy

b) he was a physician

c) he knew many things

d) he was a clever teacher

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. The world of work is changing. Technological progress and globalization are re-shaping the labor market. At the same time, new organizational business models are contributing to the emergence of new forms of work.

a) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجى والعالمية على إعادة تشكيل سوق العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال النظامية الجديدة فى ظهور أقسام عمل جديدة.

b) يتغير عالم العمل حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجى والعولمة على إعادة تشكيل سوق العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال التنظيمية الجديدة فى ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.

c) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجى والعولمة على إعادة تطوير سوق العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال المرتبة الجديدة فى اختفاء آليات عمل جديدة.

d) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجى والعولمة على إعادة تشكيل قوة العمل. فى الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال المنتظمة الجديدة فى ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.

2. Developing strong soft skills, such as effective communication and empathy, is now as important as technical expertise for building a successful and sustainable career.

a) تطوير المهارات الشخصية القوية، مثل التواصل الفعال والتعاطف، أصبح الآن بنفس أهمية الخبرة التقنية لبناء مسيرة مهنية ناجحة ومستدامة.

b) تطوير المهارات الصلبة القوية، مثل البرمجة والهندسة، يظل أكثر أهمية من المهارات الاجتماعية لضمان وظيفة ذات راتب عال.

c) تعلّم المهارات الناعمة، مثل الإصغاء والتفاهم، هو الآن أقل أهمية من المؤهلات الأكاديمية للحصول على ترقية فى العمل.

d) تجاهل المهارات البشرية، مثل اللباقة والصبر، هو أمر شائع لأن المهارات العملية هى وحدها التى تحدد مسار الحياة المهنية.

3. The widespread adoption of remote work is transforming traditional office culture, offering employees greater flexibility but also presenting new challenges for maintaining team cohesion and productivity.

a) يؤدى التبنى الواسع النطاق للعمل عن بعد إلى إلغاء ثقافة المكتب التقليدية، مما يمنح الموظفين حرية مطلقة ولكنه يتسبب فى مشاكل لا يمكن حلها مثل تماسك الفريق والانضباطية.

b) يُغيّر اعتماد العمل من المنزل على نطاق واسع الطريقة التى يعمل بها الناس، مما يجعل الجميع سعداء للغاية ولا يخلق أى صعوبات جديدة على الإطلاق.

c) يساهم التكيف التدريجى للعمل الهجين فى دعم بيئة المكتب الثابتة، مما يحد من حرية الموظفين ويتجنب بشكل ذكى أى تحديات تتعلق بالعمل الجماعى.

d) يعمل الانتشار الواسع للعمل عن بُعد على تحويل ثقافة المكتب التقليدية، حيث يُقدّم مرونة أكبر للموظفين ولكنه يُظهر أيضًا تحديات جديدة للحفاظ على تماسك الفريق والإنتاجية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. ما لم تحاول تطوير مهاراتك واكتساب مهارات جديدة فلن تستطيع الحصول على أى ترقية أو مرتب أعلى فى هذه الشركة.

a) Unless you tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

b) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you will not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

c) Unless you had tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

d) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you are not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this business.

5. بفضل إصراره وتفانيه، أصبح أحمد الجندى أول مصرى يفوز بميدالية فضية فى الأولمبياد فى رياضة الخماسى الحديث، مما ألهم جيلًا جديدًا من الرياضيين المصريين ورفع اسم مصر عاليًا فى المحافل الرياضية الدولية.

a) Ahmed El-Gendy, a famous Egyptian swimmer, won a gold medal in the Olympics for the modern pentathlon, but he failed to inspire any young athletes or bring recognition to Egypt.

b) Despite his lack of effort, Ahmed El-Gendy won a bronze medal in the modern pentathlon at the Olympics, but his achievement had little impact on Egyptian youth or Egypt's reputation.

c) Thanks to his persistence and dedication, Ahmed El-Gendy became the first Egyptian to win an Olympic silver medal in the modern pentathlon, inspiring a new generation of Egyptian athletes and raising Egypt's name high in international sports forums.

d) Ahmed El-Gendy participated in the Olympics as a coach for the modern pentathlon team and received a silver medal for his efforts, which slightly improved Egypt's standing in sports.

6. يعانى الكثير من الناس من غلاء المعيشة فى العالم كله، فيجب على أفراد المجتمع العمل على زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية لمواجهة الأزمات المختلفة والزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

a) Many people suffer from the high race of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

b) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society organs must work to increase production and change their consuming customs to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

c) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to stand various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

d) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

(C) Writing

4 **Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:**

"A memorable situation you will never forget. Describe the whole experience."

.....

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

globalization	العولمة	pentathlon	الخماسى الحديث	remote work	العمل عن بعد (من المنزل)
emergence	الظهور	reputation	سمعة	consuming	استهلاك

Unit 6 Student's Book Corner

Vocabulary

1 Write the words in front of their meanings:

soft skills – hard skills – leadership – brilliant – expertise – measurable

.....	a person's way of thinking, feeling, or behaving; their outlook or approach
.....	the ability to guide, inspire, and influence others toward a common goal
.....	exceptionally intelligent, skilled, or impressive
.....	trustworthy and consistently good in quality or performance
.....	able to be measured or quantified in some way
.....	relating to specialized knowledge, especially in science, engineering, or technology

Language

2 Find and correct the mistake in each sentence:

1. The teacher which explained the lesson is from Alexandria. (.....)
2. I know the man he lives next door. (.....)
3. That's the museum where it has ancient Egyptian statues. (.....)
4. She is the student whose her project won first prize. (.....)
5. This is the book what I told you about. (.....)

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct relative pronoun (who, which, that, where, whose):

1. The man ..... lives next door is very friendly.
2. This is the book ..... I borrowed yesterday.
3. I read a new book ..... was so exciting.
4. That is the school ..... we studied last year.
5. The car ..... is parked outside belongs to my uncle.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Finish the following dialog:

Hend and Huda are talking about the cellphone she has just bought.

Hend: You look sad! What's the matter?

Huda: (1)..... .

Hend: What happened?

Huda: When I opened the box, the screen was damaged.

Hend: (2).....?

Huda: I ordered it last week.

Hend: When was the delivery?

Huda: (3)..... . What should I do?

Hend: You should send an email to them.

Huda: (4)..... .

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What intention should we have when we practise all daily activities, including earning your livelihood?
2. Why do you think formal acts of worship has been constituted?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. We should follow the prophets of Allah to ..... deviation.
   a) evade b) provide
   c) avoid d) invade
4. ..... means giving money, food, help, etc. to people who are in need.
   a) Livelihood b) Social
   c) Charity d) Submission

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Building a new, advanced society requires that all people cooperate with the government.

(B) Translate into English:

- إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبحت واجبًا وطنيًا لأنها تمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة زيادة الأسعار فى مصر.

Unit 6 General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. His teaching ..... helped him solve problems easily in the classroom every day.

a) management b) relationship c) experience d) boredom

2. Good ..... is required if you want to expand your business.

a) teamwork b) ignorance c) friendship d) debate

3. Young learners need ..... skills to balance studying, sports, and social activities.

a) hard b) time management c) cooking d) negotiation

4. Volunteering can help you ..... in industries that are difficult to enter.

a) get your foot in the door b) meet others halfway

c) stay on top of things d) think on your feet

5. Skills like coding or speaking a foreign language are considered ..... because you can test them.

a) soft skills b) measurable c) reliable d) vital

6. Companies look for employees who are .....; they need to be able to trust them to finish tasks on time.

a) essential b) reliable c) vital d) brilliant

7. Good communication is a ..... soft skill for any career.

a) vital b) measurable c) ambitious d) brilliant

8. They have three sons, ... are living abroad.

a) who b) that c) which d) whose

9. This is the restaurant ..... I usually go for my meals.

a) to which b) which c) at which d) in which

10. The boys ..... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.

a) who b) who's c) which d) whose

11. Confusing topics ..... are well-expressed can be understood.

a) who b) that c) where d) when

12. The questions ..... in the exam were specially chosen.

a) asking b) which asked c) asked d) that ask

13. We stayed in a hotel ..... .

a) where every room had a broadband connection

b) which every room had a broadband connection

c) that every room had a broadband connection

d) every room had a broadband connection

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence of sport—the pursuit of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive, but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hopes, dreams, and reputation. A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention Argentina or Brazil to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago, thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money traveling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skilful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. According to the passage, the United States ..... .

a) has begun to give much attention to football
b) is fond of playing football
c) has won the football World Cup
d) is getting sick of football

15. The word "summit" means the ..... .

a) highest point b) mountain top c) award d) summary

16. According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will ..... .

a) fail b) be successful c) lose enjoyment d) be irrational

17. What is the author's attitude towards international games?

a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.
b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.
c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.
d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world-famous in many ways.

18. Winning an international game can make the country ..... .

a) strong b) weak c) famous d) occupied

19. In order to attend the final matches, the Scots ..... .

a) bought tickets online
b) sold their properties
c) rent their watches
d) bought TVs

20. According to the passage, people think that their country is important when ..... .

a) it comes first in a scientific competition
b) they support it in the stadium
c) they win the World Cup
d) they win a game

21. The best title for the passage is "..... ".

a) The Importance of Football
b) The History of Football
c) How People Think of Sport
d) Sports and Argentina

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

a) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حقوق وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

b) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

c) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو تقضى على فيروسات جديدة.

d) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تحل مشكلات أو تصنع لقاحات جديدة.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- أدى ظهور الذكاء الاصطناعى والعولمة إلى تحول جذرى فى مهارات العمل المطلوبة، مما عزز سمعة المتخصصين فى المجالات الرقمية وخلق فرصاً جديدة فى سوق العمل.

a) The decline of artificial intelligence and globalization has reversed the need for new job skills, damaging the reputation of digital specialists and reducing opportunities in the job market.

b) Artificial intelligence and globalization have had no impact on job skills, leaving the reputation of digital specialists unchanged and creating no new job opportunities.

c) The emergence of artificial intelligence and globalization has led to a radical shift in required job skills, enhancing the reputation of digital specialists and creating new opportunities in the job market.

d) The emergence of artificial intelligence has solely affected manufacturing jobs, slightly improving the reputation of engineers but ignoring the digital sector and the broader job market.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around The World In Eighty Days)

1. Do you agree with Fogg that "time is more valuable than gold"? Why?
2. How do you think Fogg's decision to rescue Aouda changes the story?
3. What would you have done if you had been in Fogg's place?

25. Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"Imagine that you own a company. Choose the employees with certain qualities to work with you."

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★ | < 50% Study again | 50 : 64% Practice more | 65 : 84% Take more exams | 85 : 100% Well done!

Module (3) General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It is important to ..... between reliable news and fake news to avoid being misled.
   a) trigger b) distinguish c) spark d) manipulate
2. An engineer needs the technical ..... to design a safe bridge.
   a) leadership b) expertise c) attitude d) CV
3. Headlines that use ..... language often try to shock people instead of reporting truth.
   a) sensational b) subtle c) verified d) reflective
4. Fake news articles often contain ..... or errors because they are not checked properly.
   a) algorithms b) misprints c) transparency d) tactics
5. Media ..... is the ability to think critically about the messages we see and hear.
   a) literacy b) manipulation c) restriction d) loop
6. Good communication and problem-solving are examples of valuable ..... .
   a) hard skills b) soft skills c) expertise d) emotions
7. To achieve big dreams, you sometimes need to step out of your comfort ..... and try new things.
   a) debate b) zone c) area d) attitude
8. It's important to check your sources before spreading information, ...?
   a) isn't it b) is it c) aren't it d) are it
9. The media can be a powerful tool for good, ...?
   a) is it b) can it c) isn't it d) can't it
10. We should be careful about what we share online, ...?
    a) shouldn't we b) should we c) aren't we d) are we
11. This is the website ..... I found the job advertisement.
    a) who b) where c) whose d) when
12. The new software, ... was installed yesterday, is already much faster.
    a) that b) who c) which d) where
13. She is the candidate ..... CV impressed everyone.
    a) who b) which c) whose d) where

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Animals that sleep during the day and come out at night are called nocturnal. For desert-dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of the day and conserve water. Many snakes and rodents are examples of desert animals that prefer the night.

The darkness of night makes it easier for some animals to escape predators, especially if the animal is dark enough to blend into its surroundings. Then there's the hedgehog, a small nocturnal mammal that rolls up into a ball of spiny hairs when danger comes near. Because it is active only at night, it can usually wander around unseen. The skunk, another nocturnal animal, has the most smelly way to defend itself. Its fur is mostly black, which blends in with the darkness.

Of course, there are predators that are specially adapted for night hunting, so no prey animal is safe simply because it's nocturnal. Owls and certain species of cats are very effective nocturnal hunters because they have great night vision and excellent hearing. Another predator that's well-known for its nocturnal behavior is the insect-eating bat. Instead of using their eyes to hunt for an insect dinner they use echolocation. What is echolocation? It works like this: The bat emits a very high-pitched sound. The sound is so high that people can't even hear it. When the sound hits an object it bounces, or echoes back. From the sound of the echo the bat immediately knows the object's size and location. Its echolocation can also determine if an object is a yummy insect or something that can't be eaten like a plant or a tree.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

14. What is echolocation?

a) A way of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to communicate.
b) A method of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to avoid being eaten.
c) A high-pitched sound that helps bats fly after dark.
d) The ability to make a high-pitched sound that bats use to locate things in the dark.

15. Which is the best definition for "nocturnal"?

a) Living or residing. b) Nighttime hunter. c) Heat-loving. d) Healthy.

16. Owls and certain species of cats can catch the prey easily because ..... .

a) they can fly easily at night
b) they both have feathers to leap silently down upon prey
c) they have great night vision and excellent hearing
d) they use echolocation

17. The synonym of the word "vision" is "..... ".

a) the ability to hear
b) the ability to see
c) the ability to catch
d) the ability to think

18. Desert snakes and rodents are nocturnal animals as they ..... .

a) sleep at night
b) are active at night
c) eat and drink at night
d) like heat and sunny weather

19. The skunk can survive and keep its enemy away by ..... .

a) running fast
b) hiding in holes
c) releasing bad odor
d) humping on trees

20. What are the things that the bat doesn't eat?

a) Plants.
b) Insects.
c) Yummy prey.
d) Far prey.

21. The main idea of the passage is ..... .

a) how animals communicate
b) how bats fly
c) the desert snakes' life
d) animals' life at night

22. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- By implementing the right security measures on social media, users can significantly lower their chance of being a target of cyber attacks and ensure a safer online experience.

(a) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير الأمنية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين تقليل فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير وضمان تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

(b) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير المالية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين تقليل فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير وضمان تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

(c) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير الأمنية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين زيادة فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير وضمان تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

(d) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير الأمنية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين تقليل فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير واستغلال تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

23. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- يمر العالم فى الوقت الحالى بفترة من عدم الاستقرار الاقتصادى والسياسى مما يؤثر على مستوى المعيشة فى كثير من دول العالم وخاصة الدول النامية.

a) The world is currently going through a period of economic and political instability, which affects the space of living in many countries of the world, especially the developed countries.

b) The world is currently going through a period of economic and social stress, which reflects the standard of living in many countries of the world, especially the developing countries.

c) The world is currently going through a period of economic and political instability, which affects the standard of living in many countries of the world, especially the developing countries.

d) The world is currently going through a period of economic and political instability, which affects the degree of living in many countries of the world, especially the developed countries.

24. Answer the following questions: (Around The World In Eighty Days)

1. Mr. Fogg is calm when the train tracks end, but Passepartout is upset. Whose reaction is more realistic, and why?
2. Mr. Fogg says, "time is more valuable than gold" when buying the elephant. Do you agree with this idea? Why?
3. If you were Fix, would you keep following Fogg without proof, or would you wait for more evidence? Why?

25. Write an essay of (150-180) words on the following:

"Has the internet made society better?"

(A) Vocabulary

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. The computer will calculate your position with accuracy with pinpoint accuracy. The synonyms of the word "accuracy" are ..... .
   a) exactness b) fragment c) politeness d) intensity e) precision
2. The road is open now, but it is often blocked by much traffic. The synonyms of the word "blocked" are ..... .
   a) cracked b) congested c) jammed d) tracked e) flapped
3. Some people find that certain foods ..... their headaches.
   a) cite b) cause c) match d) trigger e) distinguish
4. I've asked them not to play their music so loudly, but they're not being very cooperative. The antonyms of the word "cooperative" are ..... .
   a) stubborn b) reliable c) helpful
   d) vital e) uncooperative
5. The service produces clear, measurable benefits to people's health. The antonyms of the word "measurable" are ..... .
   a) immeasurable b) calculable c) ambitious
   d) incalculable e) essential

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. Scientists use satellites and radar to ..... storms.
   a) ignore b) track c) stop d) delay
7. The ..... of a storm refers to how strong it is.
   a) accuracy b) intensity c) humidity d) pattern
8. ..... means being ready for an emergency.
   a) Prediction b) Preparedness c) Evacuation d) Damage
9. A waterproof container keeps water from ..... important documents.
   a) drying b) damaging c) heating d) cleaning
10. ..... plates are large pieces of Earth's crust that move and cause earthquakes.
    a) Atmospheric b) Tectonic c) Oceanic d) Volcanic
11. Meteorologists study and predict ..... conditions.
    a) geological b) weather c) economic d) social

12. A(n) ..... kit includes flashlights, water, and first aid supplies.

a) emergency b) school c) travel d) cooking

13. ..... are practice activities for real emergencies.

a) Predictions b) Drills c) Reports d) Meetings

14. "Better safe than sorry" emphasizes the importance of ..... .

a) risk-taking b) preparedness c) luck d) delay

15. Fake news often uses ..... headlines to grab attention.

a) boring b) sensational c) scientific d) quiet

16. "Don't believe everything you read" is advice to avoid ..... .

a) truth b) science c) education d) misinformation

17. A(n) ..... is a system that shows you similar content based on your past activity.

a) printer b) algorithm c) camera d) battery

18. ..... means checking if information is true or accurate.

a) Guessing b) Printing c) Verification d) Sharing

19. ..... are mistakes in written text.

a) Headlines b) Misprints c) Photos d) Videos

20. Media uses ..... tactics to influence how people think.

a) harmful b) subtle c) slow d) old

21. "Going viral" is an example of ..... content.

a) boring b) trending c) hidden d) forgotten

22. ..... skills are personal qualities that affect how you work with others.

a) Hard b) Soft c) Technical d) Measurable

23. The ability to fix a machine is an example of a/an ..... skill.

a) soft b) hard c) emotional d) social

24. Being able to work well in a team is a key of ..... skill.

a) leadership b) teamwork c) programming d) mechanical

25. Hard skills are often ..... through education or training.

a) ignored b) learned c) hidden d) forgotten

26. Employers value soft skills because they help employees ..... with others.

a) compete b) interact c) hide d) argue

27. A person who can solve problems quickly is said to ..... on their feet.

a) run b) think c) jump d) walk

28. ..... is the ability to plan and use your time effectively.

a) Debate b) Leadership

c) Programming d) Time management

29. A ..... helps you stay organized and "and on top of things."

a) phone b) planner c) friend d) game

30. A brilliant programmer needs ..... to explain ideas to others.

a) coding b) isolation c) silence d) communication

(B) Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

31. This box is ..... than the other one.

a) heavy b) heavier c) more heavy d) heaviest

32. She is the ..... student in the class.

a) intelligent b) more intelligent

c) most intelligent d) less intelligent

33. This is ..... movie I've ever seen!

a) good b) better c) the better d) the best

34. My brother is ..... taller than me.

a) many b) much c) such d) more

35. This is one of ..... cities I've visited.

a) beautiful b) the most beautiful

c) more beautiful d) the less beautiful

36. This exercise is ..... than the last one.

a) easy b) easier

c) the easier d) more easy

37. Mount Everest is ..... mountain in the world.

a) high b) higher

c) the highest d) most high

38. She speaks French fluently, ... she?

a) doesn't b) isn't c) does d) is

39. They didn't finish the project, ... they?

a) did b) didn't c) do d) have

40. He's been to Paris before, ... he?

a) hasn't b) isn't c) has d) is

41. They are sad as they have lost the match, ... they?

a) don't b) didn't c) haven't d) aren't

42. You won't tell anyone, ... you?

a) will b) won't c) do d) don't

43. She's very kind, ... she?

a) isn't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) has

44. I'm late, ...?

a) am I not b) aren't I c) don't I d) isn't it

45. Of the two answers, this one is ..... .

a) correct b) more correct c) the most correct d) most correct

46. The test was ..... than I expected.

a) hard b) harder c) the harder d) hardest

47. Ahmed is the student ..... got full marks.

a) which b) who c) where d) when

48. The new building, ... is solar-powered, opened last October.

a) that b) which c) who d) where

49. Dogs are animals ..... are loyal to their owners.

a) who b) which c) where d) when

50. Yara, ... father was a teacher, is a clever doctor.

a) whose b) who c) which d) that

51. We must protect the glory ..... we inherited from our ancestors.

a) who b) which c) where d) when

52. The engineer ..... designed the bridge is from Egypt.

a) which b) who c) where d) when

53. My phone, ... has a cracked screen, still works well.

a) that b) which c) who d) where

54. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) She likes coffee, doesn't she? b) She likes coffee, doesn't he?

c) She likes coffee, does she? d) She likes coffee, isn't she?

55. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) They aren't coming, are they?

b) They aren't coming, aren't they?

c) They aren't coming, do they?

d) They aren't coming, isn't they?

56. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) He's never late, is he?
b) He's never late, isn't he?
c) He's never late, doesn't he?
d) He's never late, has he?

57. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) The students who passed the exam celebrated.
b) The students, who passed the exam, celebrated.
c) The students who passed the exam, celebrated.
d) The students, who passed the exam celebrated.

58. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) I'm the most tallest in my family.
b) I'm taller than anyone in my family.
c) I'm more taller than my brother.
d) I'm the most high in my family.

59. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) One of the most beautiful places is Hawaii.
b) One of the more beautiful places is Hawaii.
c) One of the beautiful places is Hawaii.
d) One of the beautiful places Hawaii.

60. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

a) The movie, who was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
b) The movie which was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
c) The movie, which was directed by Spielberg, won an Oscar.
d) The movie that was directed by Spielberg won an Oscar.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

61. She's never late for work, is she? (always)
62. Mount Fuji is the highest mountain in Japan. (higher than)
63. He doesn't smile much, does he? (rarely)
64. This phone is more expensive than the one I had before. (not as)
65. My laptop is very old. It still works well. (which)
66. The book was very interesting. I read it last week. (that)
67. The students were very noisy. They were in my class. (who)
68. That was the worst movie I've ever seen, wasn't it? (much worse)
69. The movie was boring. It lasted three hours. (which)
70. She doesn't mind working late, does she? (happy to)

(C) Translation

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

71. Soft skills, like communication and teamwork, are personal qualities that help individuals work effectively with others.

a) المهارات المكتسبة، مثل التواصل والعمل الجماعى، هى صفات شخصية تُساعد الأفراد على العمل بكفاءة مع الآخرين.

b) المهارات الشخصية، مثل التواصل والعمل الفردى، هى صفات شخصية تُساعد الأفراد على العمل بكفاءة مع الآخرين.

c) المهارات الشخصية، مثل التواصل والعمل الجماعى، هى صفات شخصية تُساعد الأفراد على العمل بفعالية مع الآخرين.

d) المهارات المكتسبة، مثل التواصل والعمل الجماعى، هى صفات عامة تُساعد الأفراد على العمل بفعالية مع الآخرين.

72. Sensational headlines and biased reporting can mislead audiences, undermining trust in truthful journalism.

a) يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية المثيرة والتقارير المتحيزة أن تُضلل الجمهور، مما يُقوّض الثقة فى الصحافة الصادقة.

b) يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية المثيرة والتقارير المتحيزة أن تُضلل الجمهور، مما يعزز الثقة فى الصحافة الصادقة.

c) يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية المثيرة والتقارير الصادقة أن تُضلل الجمهور، مما يُقوّض الثقة فى الصحافة المنحازة.

d) يمكن للعناوين الرئيسية العادية والتقارير المتحيزة أن تُضلل الجمهور، مما يؤكد الثقة فى الصحافة الكاذبة.

73. Earthquakes can cause widespread destruction by shaking the ground violently, often collapsing buildings and triggering tsunamis.

a) يمكن أن تُسبب الزلازل دمارًا محدودًا واسع النطاق من خلال هزّ الأرض برفق، وغالبًا ما تُؤدى إلى انهيار المبانى وتسبب موجات تسونامى.

b) يمكن أن تُسبب الزلازل دمارًا واسع النطاق من خلال هزّ الأرض بعنف، وغالبًا ما تُؤدى إلى انهيار المبانى وتسبب موجات تسونامى.

c) يمكن أن تُسبب الزلازل دمارًا واسع النطاق من خلال هزّ الأرض برفق، وغالبًا ما تُؤدى إلى ترميم المبانى وتسبب موجات تسونامى.

d) يمكن أن تُسبب الزلازل دمارًا محدود النطاق من خلال هزّ الأرض بعنف، وغالبًا ما تُؤدى إلى ترميم المبانى وتسبب موجات تسونامى.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

74. تُسبب الأعاصير رياحًا قوية وأمطارًا غزيرة، مما يؤدي إلى فيضانات وأضرار جسيمة في المناطق الساحلية.

a) Hurricanes bring powerless winds and heavy rainfall, leading to flooding and significant damage in desert areas.

b) Hurricanes prevent powerful winds and heavy rainfall, leading to flooding and significant damage in desert areas.

c) Hurricanes bring powerless winds and heavy rainfall, leading to bleeding and significant damage in coastal areas.

d) Hurricanes bring powerful winds and heavy rainfall, leading to flooding and significant damage in coastal areas.

(D) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Mass media, encompassing television, radio, newspapers, and the internet, is a powerful force in modern society. While it plays a crucial role in disseminating information and connecting people globally, its negative effects are a growing concern. One of the most significant impacts is the distortion of reality. The constant barrage of curated images and stories can create unrealistic expectations about life, success, and beauty. For instance, social media often presents a highlight reel of people's lives, leading to feelings of inadequacy and low self-esteem among viewers.

Another major drawback is the potential for misinformation and fake news to spread rapidly. In the digital age, anyone can publish content, and without proper fact-checking, false information can go viral, influencing public opinion and even political outcomes. This erodes trust in traditional news sources and creates a fragmented and polarized society. Furthermore, the relentless exposure to media, particularly violent content, has been linked to increased aggression and desensitization in some individuals, particularly young people.

The constant need for media consumption can also lead to information overload and addiction. The fear of missing out (FOMO) and the compulsive checking of devices disrupt sleep, reduce productivity, and strain relationships. The pressure to conform to media-driven trends, whether in fashion or lifestyle, can stifle individuality and promote a culture of consumerism. While media literacy education is key to helping people navigate these challenges, the negative effects of mass media on mental health, societal trust, and personal well-being remain a critical issue that demands our attention.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is that mass media ..... .

a) is entirely beneficial for society

b) has both positive and negative impacts, with the negative ones being a significant concern

c) is only a problem for young people

d) is not a powerful force in modern society

2. The passage mentions that a pressure to conform can be a result of ..... .

a) media-driven trends

b) a focus on individuality

c) the promotion of diverse opinions

d) traditional values

3. The feeling of "fear of missing out" (FOMO) is linked to which negative effect?

a) Improved productivity.
b) Disrupted sleep and strained relationships.
c) Reduced need for media.
d) A desire to disconnect from devices.

4. The passage suggests that mass media can distort reality by ..... .

a) only showing the negative aspects of life
b) presenting a curated and unrealistic view of life
c) encouraging people to be themselves
d) limiting access to information

5. The spread of "fake news" is described as a concern because it can ..... .

a) increase trust in traditional news
b) be easily verified by anyone
c) influence public opinion and polarize society
d) only affect a small number of people

6. The underlined phrase "information overload" refers to ..... .

a) the lack of available information
b) having too much information to process
c) the process of fact-checking
d) an interest in various topics

7. The author suggests that a potential solution to the negative effects of media is ..... .

a) completely avoiding all media
b) increasing the amount of media consumed
c) promoting media literacy education
d) relying solely on social media for news

8. Which of the following is NOT listed as a form of mass media in the passage?

a) Television. b) Social gatherings. c) Radio. d) Newspapers.

(E) Writing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A formal report should begin with a clear ..... that tells the reader the topic.

a) story b) title c) joke d) email

2. In a formal report, you should write "do not" instead of "don't" because formal writing avoids ..... .

a) headings b) contractions c) paragraphs d) punctuation

3. The section that explains the purpose of the report is called the ..... .

a) conclusion b) introduction c) findings d) greeting

4. A formal report uses a ..... tone, not casual or emotional language.
a) funny b) neutral and polite c) angry d) poetic

5. Using bullet points and headings helps to make the report ..... to read.
a) harder b) more organized c) longer d) more colorful

6. Which phrase is most appropriate for making a recommendation in a formal report?
a) I think we should b) maybe we can
c) it is recommended that d) let's try

7. A strong introduction should include a hook, background, and ..... .
a) secret b) joke
c) song d) thesis statement

8. In the conclusion, you should restate your opinion and give a ..... .
a) future prediction b) random guess
c) movie title d) phone number

9. The part of the report that presents facts and observations is called the ..... .
a) title b) findings c) story d) opinion

10. What is the primary purpose of an opinion essay?
a) To provide a factual and unbiased report on a topic.
b) To argue for and support a specific point of view on a topic.
c) To narrate a personal experience or story.
d) To compare and contrast two different subjects.

11. Which of the following is a good hook for a descriptive essay?
a) I don't know what to say.
b) The room was silent, but the air buzzed with tension.
c) This is a normal day.
d) Let's skip this.

2 Write on one of the following:

a) An opinion essay about "Social media does more harm than good."

.....

.....

b) A descriptive essay about "A time you felt proud of yourself"

.....

.....

Story

Around the World in Eighty Days

Story

Introduction

Summary in Points

Chapter Texts

Exercises

Introduction

(A) The Writer (Jules Verne) الكاتب

- Jules Verne was a famous French writer.
- He was born on February 8, 1828, in Nantes, France, and died on March 24, 1905.
- He is known as one of the fathers of science fiction.
- His books are full of adventures, inventions, and future technology.
- He imagined things that didn't exist yet—like submarines, space travel, and airships—long before they became real.
- Jules Verne believed in the power of science, exploration, and the human mind.
- His stories are still popular all over the world and have been translated into many languages.

(B) The Story القصة

- *Around the World in Eighty Days* is a famous adventure story written by the French author Jules Verne. It was first published in 1873. The story is full of excitement, travel, and challenges. It shows how people in the 19th century started to believe in science, technology, and fast travel. The story is loved by many readers around the world.

(C) Characters الشخصيات

Character	Role in the Story الدور	Main Traits الصفات
Phileas Fogg	The main character; a rich English gentleman. He makes a bet to travel around the world in 80 days.	Punctual, calm, intelligent, determined, brave
Passepartout	Fogg's new French servant. He joins Fogg on the journey and helps him many times.	Loyal, funny, curious, emotional, helpful
Detective Fix	A British detective who thinks Fogg is a bank robber. So, he follows Fogg secretly during the whole journey.	Suspicious, serious, stubborn, focused

Aouda	A kind Indian woman rescued by Fogg from a dangerous ritual. She joins them on the journey and later falls in love with Fogg.	Kind, brave, polite, thankful, loving

(D) Important Places الأماكن المهمة حسب سير الرحلة

Place	Role in the Story	Country
London	The start and end point of the journey; where Fogg makes and wins the bet.	England
Suez	The first stop; where Detective Fix first meets Fogg.	Egypt
Bombay (Mumbai)	Fogg arrives here by ship; Passepartout causes trouble.	India
Calcutta (Kolkata)	Fogg rescues Aouda and is arrested here.	India
Hong Kong	They plan to take a ship to Japan; Fix tries to delay them.	China
Yokohama	Passepartout reunites with Fogg; they continue to America.	Japan
San Francisco	Fogg travels by train across America; faces dangers like snow and attacks.	USA
New York	Fogg misses the ship to England and looks for another way home.	USA
Liverpool	Fogg arrives and is arrested by Fix before returning to London.	England
Reform Club (London)	The place where the bet is made and won; story's final location.	England

(E) Summary الملخص

- The story begins in London, where a rich and quiet Englishman named Phileas Fogg makes a deal with his friends. He says he can travel around the world in 80 days. If he wins, he will get £20,000. He takes his new servant Passepartout, and they start the journey.
- Fogg and Passepartout travel to many countries, like Egypt, India, China, Japan, and the United States. Along the way, they face many problems: transport delays, storms and bad weather, and a police officer named Detective Fix follows Fogg because he thinks Fogg is a bank robber. They rescue an Indian woman named Aouda, and she joins them.
- They use different types of transport: trains, ships, an elephant, and even a sledge. Fogg thinks he returns to London one day too late and that he lost the bet. But later he learns he gained one day because he traveled east around the world. He arrives just in time and wins the bet.
- In the end, Fogg doesn't just win the money—he also finds love and decides to marry Aouda. He learns that life is more than just being on time—it's about people and experiences.

Chapter (1) The Mysterious Gentleman of Savile Row

Vocabulary — المفردات

acrobat	بهلوان	leather	جلد	reason	عقل
argument	جدال	lively	حيوى	regularity	انتظام
banker	مصرفى	loyal	مخلص	relief	راحة
ceiling	سقف	mathematical	رياضى	require	يتطلب
circus performer	مؤدى سيرك	mistaken	مخطئ	respectability	احترام
concentration	تركيز	neighbor	جار	schedule	جدول زمنى
constant	ثابت / مستمر	oak	شجر بلوط	servant	خادم
decoration	زخرفة	order	نظام	steady	ثابت
demands	متطلبات	polished	مصقول	strategy	استراتيجية
desire	رغبة	politician	سياسى	strict	صارم
discipline	انضباط	portrait	صورة شخصية	tailor	خياط
disturb	يزعج	precision	دقة	topic	موضوع
elegant	أنيق	private	خاصة	truth	حقيقة
endure	يتحمل	profession	مهنة	valet	خادم
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	punctual	دقيق	visible	مرئى
gentleman	رجل نبيل	punctuality	دقة المواعيد	whisper	همس / يهمس

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a man of habit	رجل ذو عادة	first impressions	الانطباعات الأولى	place an advertisement	يضع إعلانًا
a temple of reason and respectability	معبد العقل والاحترام	heart of a traveler	قلب مسافر	remain calm	يبقى هادئًا
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	known for	معروف بـ		
at least	على الأقل	long for	يشتاق إلى	the rustle of newspapers	صوت تقليب الصحف
at the same exact time	فى نفس الوقت تمامًا	measured by the tick of the clock	يُقَاس بدقة الساعة		

Values in this Chapter

Discipline	الانضباط	Mr. Fogg shows the strength of order and punctuality.
Loyalty and service	الولاء والخدمة	Passepartout, though surprised, follows his master faithfully.
Curiosity and openness	الفضول والانفتاح	Passepartout reminds us that new experiences can bring growth.

Summary in Points

1. In 1872, in the center of London, lived a gentleman named Phileas Fogg, known by many but truly understood by very few.

عام ١٨٧٢، فى قلب لندن، كان يعيش رجل يُدعى فيلياس فُوج، كان معروفًا للكثيرين لكن القليل فقط عرفوه معرفة حقيقية.

2. He was a man of strong habits, great order, and perfect punctuality, living a life ruled by routine.

كان رجلًا ملتزمًا بعادات ثابتة، يحب النظام، ويعيش بدقة فى مواعيده بشكل صارم.

3. His home was on Savile Row, a quiet street famous for tailors and fine houses.

كان منزله فى شارع «سافيل رو»، وهو شارع هادئ مشهور بالخياطين والمنازل الأنيقة.

4. Neighbors often wondered about him because he seemed to live without family, change, or visible work.

كان الجيران يتساءلون عنه لأنه كان يعيش بلا عائلة أو تغيير أو عمل ظاهر.

5. Mr. Fogg's life was measured by the ticking of clocks, as he left and returned home at the exact same minutes every day.

كانت حياة فُوج تُقاس بدقات الساعات، إذ كان يخرج ويعود فى نفس الدقيقة يوميًا.

6. His meals, his reading, and even his walks were all arranged with mathematical precision.

كانت وجباته وقراءاته وحتى فترات التمشية منظمة بدقة حسابية.

7. Some people believed he was cold and proud, while others thought he was rich but strange.

بعض الناس كانوا يعتقدون أنه متكبر وفاتر، بينما كان يظن آخرون أنه ثرى لكنه غريب الأطوار.

8. The truth was simpler: Phileas Fogg valued calm, order, and discipline above all else.

لكن الحقيقة كانت أبسط: فقد كان فُوج يقدّر الهدوء والنظام والانضباط أكثر من أى شىء.

9. Every day at the same hour, he went to the Reform Club, a gentlemen's club for London's respected men.

كان يذهب يوميًا فى نفس الساعة إلى «نادى الإصلاح»، وهو نادٍ للرجال المحترمين فى لندن.

10. The club had oak tables, red leather chairs, high ceilings, and the sound of rustling newspapers.

كان النادى يحتوى على طاولات خشبية، كراسى جلدية حمراء، وأسقف عالية مع أصوات تقليب الجرائد.

11. Its members were politicians, bankers, engineers, and men of science, who discussed serious topics or played games.

كان الأعضاء سياسيين، مصرفيين، مهندسين وعلماء، يناقشون موضوعات مهمة أو يلعبون ألعابًا.

12. There, Mr. Fogg spent long hours reading and playing whist, a card game of focus and strategy.

كان فُوج يقضى ساعات طويلة فى القراءة ولعب لعبة الورق «ويست» التى تحتاج للتركيز والتخطيط.

13. He spoke very little, but whenever he did, his words were always clear and precise.

كان قليل الكلام، لكن كلماته كانت دائمًا واضحة ودقيقة.

14. On the morning of October 2nd, 1872, something unusual happened: Mr. Fogg's servant suddenly left him.

فى صباح ٢ أكتوبر ١٨٧٢، حدث أمر غير معتاد: خادمه تركه فجأة.

15. The servant could no longer handle his master's strict routine and demands.

الخادم لم يعد قادرًا على تحمل الروتين الصارم لسيده ومتطلباته.

16. Fogg remained calm and immediately placed an advertisement for a new valet.

ظل فُوج هادئًا ووضع فورًا إعلانًا لطلب خادم جديد.

17. That same day, a Frenchman named Jean Passepartout came to apply for the job.

وفى نفس اليوم، جاء رجل فرنسى يُدعى جان باسبرتو ليتقدم للوظيفة.

18. Passepartout was around thirty, with a friendly face, lively eyes, and the spirit of a traveler who had tried many jobs.

كان باسبرتو فى الثلاثين تقريبًا، ذا وجه ودود وعينين حيويتين، وروح مسافر جرّب وظائف عديدة.

19. He had worked as a singer, acrobat, firefighter, and circus performer, but now wanted peace and stability.

عمل كمغنٍّ ولاعب بهلوانى ورجل إطفاء وفنان سيرك، لكنه كان يبحث الآن عن حياة هادئة مستقرة.

20. Fogg promised him peace and regularity, and Passepartout accepted happily, believing he had finally found rest—without knowing that great adventures were just ahead.

وعده فُوج بالسلام والنظام، فقبل باسبرتو بسعادة معتقدًا أنه وجد الراحة أخيرًا، دون أن يدرى أن المغامرات الكبرى كانت بانتظاره.

Chapter Text

The Calm Life of Mr. Phileas Fogg

In the year 1872, in the busy heart of London, lived a gentleman who was unlike any other. His name was Phileas Fogg, and though many people had heard of him, very few truly knew him. He was a man of habits, of order, and of perfect punctuality. His home was in Savile Row, a quiet street known for tailors and fine houses. The neighbors sometimes wondered about this man who seemed to live without change, without family, and without visible work.

Mr. Fogg's life was measured by the tick of the clock. He left his house at the same minute each morning, returned at the same exact time each evening, and never allowed the smallest delay to interrupt his order. His meals, his reading, even his walks were organized with mathematical precision.

Some people thought he was cold and proud. Others whispered that he might be rich but strange. But the truth was simpler: Phileas Fogg valued calm, order, and discipline above all things.

Every day, at the same hour, he went to the Reform Club, a private gentlemen's club where London's wealthiest and most respected men met to read newspapers, discuss important topics, or play games. The Reform Club on Pall Mall was a place of polished oak tables, red leather chairs, high ceilings, and the constant rustle of newspapers. The men who gathered there were politicians, bankers, engineers, and men of science. It was a temple of reason and respectability, where arguments were

sharp but voices remained calm. There, Mr. Fogg spent hours reading and playing whist, a card game that required concentration and strategy. He spoke little, but when he did, his words were clear and precise.

A New Servant

On the morning of October 2nd, 1872, something unusual disturbed Mr. Fogg's carefully ordered life. His servant had left him suddenly, unable to endure his master's strict schedule and demands. Mr. Fogg, calm as always, simply placed an advertisement for a new valet.

That same day, a Frenchman named Jean Passepartout arrived at Savile Row to apply for the position. Passepartout was about thirty years old, with a friendly face, lively eyes, and the heart of a traveler. He had tried many professions—singer, acrobat, firefighter, and even circus performer—but now he longed for a quiet and steady life.

When Mr. Fogg interviewed him, the conversation was short and direct.

"Your name?" asked Fogg.

"Jean, but everyone calls me Passepartout," replied the Frenchman cheerfully.

"You wish to serve as my valet?"

"Yes, sir. I am strong, punctual, and loyal. I left Paris because I desired peace and regularity."

"Peace and regularity, you shall have," said Mr. Fogg, without changing his expression. "My house is in order, and my habits never change. If you serve me well, you will find this place most suitable."

Passepartout accepted with relief. After so many adventures, a life of calm sounded perfect. He did not yet know how mistaken he was.

Passepartout's First Impressions

As soon as he entered his master's house, Passepartout noticed its unusual character. The furniture was plain but elegant, polished until it shone. There were no pictures, no decorations, no family portraits. The only thing that seemed alive was the large clock in every room, all ticking in harmony.

"This is the home of a man who loves order more than life itself," Passepartout whispered to himself. "Well, at least it will be restful!"

He did not know that within two days, he would be traveling across Europe, leaving London far behind.

Chapter (1) Answered Exercises

1. Who is the main character in the story?

من هو البطل الرئيسى فى القصة؟

- Phileas Fogg is the main character.

2. What was special about Mr. Fogg's habits?

ما الذى كان مميزًا فى عادات السيد فُوج؟

- He followed strict order and punctuality.

3. What did Mr. Fogg usually do at the Reform Club?

ماذا كان يفعل السيد فُوج عادةً فى «نادى الإصلاح»؟

- He read newspapers and played whist (a special card game).

4. Why did Mr. Fogg's servant leave him?

لماذا ترك خادم السيد فُوج خدمته؟

- Because he could not endure يتحمل his strict schedule.

5. What kind of jobs had Passepartout done before?

ما نوع الأعمال التى قام بها باسبرتو من قبل؟

- He had worked as a singer, an acrobat, a firefighter, and a circus performer.

6. What kind of life was Passepartout looking for?

أى نوع من الحياة كان باسبرتو يبحث عنه؟

- He was looking for a quiet and steady life.

7. What was unusual about Mr. Fogg's house?

ما الأمر غير المعتاد فى منزل السيد فُوج؟

- It had no pictures or decorations, only plain polished furniture and clocks.

8. What did Passepartout notice about the clocks in the house?

ماذا لاحظ باسبرتو بخصوص الساعات فى المنزل؟

- He noticed that there was a large clock in every room, all ticking in harmony.

9. Why do you think very few people truly knew Mr. Fogg?

لماذا تعتقد أن قلة قليلة من الناس كانت تعرف السيد فُوج حق المعرفة؟

- Because he was private, quiet, and lived without family or change.

10. What does Mr. Fogg's punctual lifestyle tell us about his personality?

ماذا يخبرنا أسلوب حياة السيد فُوج المنظم والدقيق عن شخصيته؟

- It tells us that he valued discipline, calm, and order.

11. How is Passepartout different from Mr. Fogg in personality?

كيف يختلف باسبرتو عن السيد فُوج من حيث الشخصية؟

- Passepartout is lively and cheerful, while Fogg is calm and serious.

12. How do clocks in every room reflect Mr. Fogg's character?

كيف تعكس الساعات الموجودة فى كل غرفة شخصية السيد فُوج؟

- They symbolize يرمزإلى his love for punctuality and order.

13. How did Mr. Fogg's neighbors describe his lifestyle?

كيف وصف جيران السيد فُوج أسلوب حياته؟

- They saw it as unusual—he had no family, no visible work, and lived without change.

14. How is the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout made clear in this chapter?

كيف أصبح التباين بين فُوج وباسبرتو واضحًا فى هذا الفصل؟

- Fogg is strict and unemotional, while Passepartout is cheerful and lively.

15. If you were Passepartout, would you feel comfortable working for someone like Fogg? Why or why not?

إذا كنت مكان باسبرتو، فهل كنت ستشعر بالراحة فى العمل لدى شخص مثل فُوج؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟

- Yes, because of the order and calm. / No, because he seems cold and too strict.

16. Why do you think Fogg lives alone with no family or friends?

فى رأيك لماذا يعيش فوج وحيدًا بدون عائلة أو أصدقاء؟

- Maybe he's too strict and pushes people away. Or maybe something bad happened to him before

17. Do you think the neighbors' opinions about Fogg are fair? Why?

هل تعتقد أن آراء الجيران حول فوج عادلة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. He is strange and keeps to himself. But the neighbors say bad things about him without knowing what he's really like, which is not good.

18. In your opinion, is Phileas Fogg a good person or not? Explain.

برأيك، هل فيلياس فوج شخصٌ صالح أم لا؟ اشرح.

- I think he might be a good person who's just really different. He's nice to people, pays his workers, and talks clearly, but he acts cold, and his neighbors don't know him.

19. What kind of problems will Fogg and Passepartout have together?

ما هى المشاكل التى سيواجهها فوج وباسبارتو معًا؟

- Fogg likes everything perfect and on time, but Passepartout will probably make mistakes and be late. This will cause problems and funny moments between them.

20. The story gives hints that Fogg's boring life will change soon. What are they?

تُشير القصة إلى أن حياة فوج المملة ستتغير قريبًا. ما هى هذه التلميحات؟

- The story says Passepartout "did not know how wrong he was" about getting a quiet job. This tells us something exciting will happen soon.

Chapter (1) Student's Book Exercises

Part (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Phileas Fogg lived in ..... .
   a) Paris b) London c) Rome d) New York
2. Mr. Fogg's home was on ..... .
   a) Oxford Street b) Savile Row c) Regent Street d) Bond Street
3. Fogg was known for his ..... .
   a) kindness b) habits and punctuality
   c) wealth and fame d) large family
4. The neighbors thought Fogg was ..... .
   a) very social b) strange and cold
   c) always traveling d) a teacher
5. Fogg spent much of his day at the ..... .
   a) Parliament b) Reform Club c) Royal Academy d) Theater
6. At the club, he often played ..... .
   a) chess b) poker c) whist d) dominoes
7. Mr. Fogg spoke ..... .
   a) loudly and often b) very little but clearly
   c) quickly and nervously d) only to his family
8. On October 2nd, 1872, Fogg's servant ..... .
   a) disappeared suddenly b) got married
   c) left for Paris d) became sick
9. Fogg hired a new valet named ..... .
   a) Fix b) Ralph c) Passepartout d) Andrew
10. Passepartout was about ..... years old.
    a) 20 b) 25 c) 30 d) 35
11. Passepartout had tried many ..... .
    a) books b) professions c) schools d) sports
12. One of his jobs had been as a ..... .
    a) doctor b) singer c) banker d) tailor
13. Passepartout wanted a life of ..... .
    a) fame b) travel
    c) peace and regularity d) adventure
14. Fogg told Passepartout that his habits ..... .
    a) never change b) change often
    c) depend on travel d) are confusing

15. Passepartout thought Fogg's house was ..... .

a) full of paintings b) elegant but plain
c) untidy and messy d) noisy and crowded

16. The furniture in the house was ..... .

a) colorful and heavy b) plain but polished
c) old and broken d) expensive and golden

17. There were no ..... in the house.

a) chairs b) windows c) decorations d) clocks

18. Instead, there were large ..... in every room.

a) portraits b) clocks c) mirrors d) lamps

19. Passepartout whispered, "This is the home of a man who loves ..... more than life itself."

a) beauty b) money c) order d) fun

20. Passepartout believed the new job would be ..... .

a) dangerous b) peaceful c) temporary d) adventurous

21. Mr. Fogg's daily life was measured by the ..... .

a) clock b) calendar c) seasons d) sun

22. He left his house at the same ..... each day.

a) hour b) week c) season d) year

23. Fogg's meals and walks were organized with ..... .

a) imagination b) precision c) randomness d) freedom

24. Some people thought Fogg might be ..... .

a) a spy b) poor c) rich but strange d) a teacher

25. The club he visited was for ..... .

a) farmers b) respected gentlemen
c) shopkeepers d) artists

26. Passepartout was relieved to find a ..... job.

a) quiet b) exciting c) temporary d) dangerous

27. Fogg's new servant thought the house would be ..... .

a) boring b) restful
c) frightening d) uncomfortable

28. Passepartout said he left Paris because he wanted ..... .

a) excitement b) peace and stability
c) to travel d) money

29. Fogg described his home as always ..... .

a) quiet and peaceful b) open to visitors c) in order d) changing

30. Within two days, Passepartout would be ..... .

a) fired b) traveling across Europe
c) working in the club d) going back to Paris

Part (B) Open-ended Questions:

1. Who was Phileas Fogg, and where did he live?
2. How was Mr. Fogg's daily routine described?
3. What did people think of Mr. Fogg's personality?
4. Where did Mr. Fogg spend most of his time outside his home?
5. What game did Fogg enjoy playing?
6. Why did Mr. Fogg need a new servant?
7. Who applied for the position of valet?
8. What kind of jobs had Passepartout tried before?
9. Why did Passepartout leave Paris?
10. How did Mr. Fogg describe his habits?
11. Why might neighbors have found Fogg mysterious?
12. How does punctuality define Fogg's character?
13. What does Passepartout's name suggest about his character?
14. Why do you think Fogg's interview with Passepartout was so short?
15. How does the description of Fogg's house reflect his personality?
16. Why do you think clocks were important in his house?
17. How does Passepartout feel when he first sees the house?
18. What differences can you see between Fogg and Passepartout's personalities?
19. Why might Passepartout have thought the job would be restful?
20. How does the chapter prepare readers for future events?

Part (C) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Do you think living a life of strict routine is positive or negative? Why?
2. How important is punctuality in today's world compared to Fogg's time?
3. What qualities make a good servant or assistant in your opinion?
4. If you were Passepartout, would you accept the job? Why or why not?
5. Why do you think Jules Verne chose to make Fogg mysterious instead of ordinary?
6. Can order and discipline be more valuable than adventure? Explain.
7. How would you feel living in a house with no decorations, only clocks?
8. What might be the advantages and disadvantages of Fogg's personality?
9. Do you think Fogg and Passepartout will get along well in the future? Why or why not?
10. What lesson can we learn from the contrast between Fogg and Passepartout?

Chapter (2) The Challenge at the Reform Club

Vocabulary — المفردات

attempt	محاولة	forever	إلى الأبد	propose	يقترح
calendar	تقويم	formula	صيغة	protest	يحتج
chuckle	ضحكة مكتومة	generous	كريم	recite	يتلو / يقرأ
companion	رفيق	hesitation	تردد	ridiculous	سخيف
confidence	ثقة	identity	هوية	risk	مخاطرة
contract	عقد	imaginary	خيالى	rob	يسرق
curious	فضولى	jest	يمزح	sign	يوقع
declare	إعلان	lean	يميل	speculate	يتكهن
delay	تأخير	madness	جنون	speed	سرعة
disbelief	عدم تصديق	member	عضو	stage	مرحلة
eccentric	غريب الأطوار	mutter	يتمتم	stare	يحدق
enormous	هائل	mysterious	غامض	steamship	باخرة
escape	يهرب	neat	دقيق / مرتب / أنيق	sum	مبلغ
estate	تركة	ocean	محيط	venture	مشروع
excitement	إثارة	particular	خاص		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

caught the attention of	لفت انتباه ...	not in the least	على الإطلاق
crossing oceans faster than ever before	عبور المحيطات أسرع من أى وقت مضى	on the contrary	على العكس
go around	يتجول	produced a small notebook	أخرج دفتر ملاحظات صغيرًا
in astonishment	فى دهشة	shook their heads	هزوا رءوسهم
in shock	فى حالة صدمة	unaffected by	غير متأثر بـ

Values in this Chapter

Precision and planning الدقة والتخطيط	Careful preparation can make even the impossible possible.
Courage to risk الشجاعة للمخاطرة	Daring to put everything on the line requires bravery.
Loyalty الولاء	Passepartout's obedience shows devotion, even in confusion.

Summary in Points

1. One October afternoon in 1872, an important conversation began at the Reform Club.

فى أحد أيام أكتوبر عام ١٨٧٢، بدأت محادثة مهمة فى «نادى الإصلاح».

2. The news across London was that the Bank of England had been robbed.

كان الخبر المنتشر فى لندن أن بنك إنجلترا قد تمّت سرقته.

3. The thief escaped with fifty-five thousand pounds, shocking the whole city.

هرب اللص ومعه خمسة وخمسون ألف جنيه، مما صدم المدينة كلها.

4. Newspapers were full of guesses about who the robber might be.

كانت الصحف مليئة بالتخمينات حول هوية السارق.

5. At the club, some men discussed the robbery, while others spoke of modern travel.

فى النادى، تحدث بعض الرجال عن السرقة، بينما ناقش آخرون السفر الحديث.

6. They mentioned new railways in India, the Suez Canal, and fast steamships.

ذكروا السكك الحديدية الجديدة فى الهند، وقناة السويس، والسفن البخارية السريعة.

7. Phileas Fogg sat quietly, playing cards, unaffected by the excitement.

جلس فيلياس فُوج بهدوء يلعب الورق، غير متأثر بالضجة.

8. His calmness made him seem mysterious to the other gentlemen.

جعله هدوءه يبدو غامضًا فى نظر باقى الرجال.

9. Mr. Ralph declared that the world was "growing smaller every day."

أعلن السيد رالف أن العالم «يصغر كل يوم».

10. Andrew Stuart laughed and said a man might travel the world in eighty days.

ضحك أندرو ستيوارت وقال إن الفرد قد يسافر حول العالم فى ثمانين يومًا.

11. These words caught Mr. Fogg's attention, and he stated calmly, "It can be done."

لفتت هذه الكلمات انتباه فُوج، وقال بهدوء: «يمكن فعل ذلك».

12. Stuart objected, calling it impossible, but Fogg insisted it was possible.

اعترض ستيوارت واعتبره مستحيلًا، لكن فُوج أصر أنه ممكن.

13. Fogg produced a notebook with a detailed timetable of the journey.

أخرج فُوج دفترًا صغيرًا به جدول دقيق للرحلة.

14. He listed each stage: London to Suez, then Bombay, Calcutta, Hong Kong, Yokohama, San Francisco, New York, and back to London.

ذكر كل مرحلة: من لندن إلى السويس، ثم بومباى، كالكوتا، هونغ كونغ، يوكوهاما، سان فرانسيسكو، نيويورك، والعودة إلى لندن.

15. He calculated the total as exactly eighty days.

حسب المدة الإجمالية لتكون ثمانين يومًا بالضبط.

16. Stuart argued about accidents, storms, and delays, but Fogg dismissed these as ""imaginary".

جادل ستيوارت عن الحوادث والعواصف والتأخيرات، لكن فُوج اعتبرها «خيالية».

17. Fogg then calmly suggested a wager to make things interesting.

اقترح فُوج بهدوء رهانًا ليجعل الأمر أكثر تشويقًا.

18. He offered to pay twenty thousand pounds if he failed, and win the same if he succeeded.

عرض أن يدفع عشرين ألف جنيه إذا فشل، وأن يأخذ المبلغ نفسه إذا نجح.

19. The men were shocked at the enormous sum but accepted the challenge.

صُدم الرجال من ضخامة المبلغ، لكنهم قبلوا التحدى.

20. Fogg declared he would leave that very evening, October 2nd, at 8:45, and return on December 21st.

أعلن فُوج أنه سيغادر مساء ذلك اليوم، ٢ أكتوبر الساعة ٨:٤٥، ويعود فى ٢١ ديسمبر.

Chapter Text

An Afternoon at the Reform Club

That particular afternoon in October 1872, a conversation arose in the Reform Club that would change the life of Phileas Fogg forever.

The news had spread through London: the Bank of England had been robbed of fifty-five thousand pounds. The thief had escaped, leaving the city in shock. The newspapers speculated about his identity, though no one yet knew who he was.

Some members of the club spoke of the robbery while reading the day's paper. Others discussed the speed of modern travel. New railways were being built in India, the Suez Canal had opened, and steamships were crossing oceans faster than ever before.

Phileas Fogg sat quietly, as always, playing whist with his companions. He seemed unaffected by the excitement around him. His calmness made him mysterious, and some of the gentlemen often wondered if anything could truly surprise him.

A Heated Debate

One of the players, Mr. Ralph, set down his cards and declared:

"The world is growing smaller every day. Why, gentlemen, one might soon travel around it in a matter of months!"

"Months?" replied Andrew Stuart, another member, laughing. "You are too generous, Ralph. With all these steamships and railways, one might do it in eighty days or even less!"

The group chuckled, but Stuart's words caught the attention of Mr. Fogg. He raised his calm eyes from the cards and spoke in his measured voice.

"Eighty days," he said. "It can be done."

"Done?" cried Stuart. "Nonsense! You cannot travel around the world in eighty days. It is impossible."

"On the contrary," replied Fogg, "it is entirely possible. I am prepared to prove it."

The men leaned closer. "You speak seriously, Fogg?"

"I never speak otherwise."

"Then explain yourself," demanded Stuart.

The Calculation

"Without hesitation, Mr. Fogg produced a small notebook from his pocket. Inside was a neat timetable, drawn up with precision. He spoke as though reciting a mathematical formula, listing each stage of the journey with exact times.

Then, with calm certainty, he concluded, 'Total: exactly 80 days.'" He recited it like a formula:

- London to Suez – 7 days
- Suez to Bombay – 13 days
- Bombay to Calcutta – 3 days
- Calcutta to Hong Kong – 13 days
- Hong Kong to Yokohama – 6 days
- Yokohama to San Francisco – 22 days
- San Francisco to New York – 7 days
- New York to London – 9 days

The men stared in astonishment.

"You forget storms, delays, accidents," protested Stuart. "You count only the minutes of the timetable, not the accidents of life."

"Accidents?" said Fogg. "I never plan for accidents. A true gentleman does not waste time on imaginary delays. The routes exist. The ships sail. The trains run. The journey is possible."

"Impossible," muttered Stuart. "Even if you succeed in reaching India, the rest of the world will defeat you."

Mr. Fogg placed his cards on the table. "Shall we make it interesting?"

The Challenge

The other men looked at one another. Stuart narrowed his eyes.

"What do you mean?" he asked.

"I propose a challenge," said Fogg calmly. "I shall go around the world in eighty days or less. If I fail, I will pay you twenty thousand pounds. If I succeed, you will pay me the same."

A silence followed. Twenty thousand pounds! It was an enormous sum, enough to buy an estate or fund an entire railway project. For Fogg to risk so much showed either great confidence or great madness.

"You are jesting," said Stuart.

"Not in the least," replied Fogg. "Shall we say the challenge is accepted?"

One by one, the men agreed. They were curious to see if this eccentric gentleman would truly attempt such a ridiculous venture. A contract was drawn up and signed.

"You will leave when?" asked Ralph.

"Immediately," said Fogg. "Today, October 2nd, at 8:45 in the evening, I shall take the train to Dover, and from there to Calais. I shall return here to the Reform Club on Saturday, December 21st, at the same hour. Gentlemen, mark your calendars."

The men shook their heads in disbelief.

Chapter (2) Answered Exercises

1. What shocking news spread through London that afternoon?

ما الخبر الصادم الذى انتشر فى لندن بعد الظهر؟

- The Bank of England had been robbed of fifty-five thousand pounds.

2. What were some members of the Reform Club discussing besides the robbery?

ما الذى كان بعض أعضاء «نادى الإصلاح» يناقشونه بجانب حادثة السرقة؟

- They discussed modern travel, new railways, the Suez Canal, and steamships.

3. What was Andrew Stuart's bold claim about travel?

ما الادعاء الجرىء الذى قاله أندرو ستيوارت عن السفر؟

- He said one could go around the world in eighty days or less.

4. How did Fogg respond to Stuart's claim?

كيف رد فُوج على ادعاء ستيوارت؟

- He said, "Eighty days. It can be done."

5. Which part of the journey did Fogg say would take 22 days?

أى جزء من الرحلة قال فُوج إنه سيستغرق ٢٢ يومًا؟

- It is the journey from Yokohama to San Francisco.

6. What objection did Stuart raise about Fogg's timetable?

ما الاعتراض الذى أثاره ستيوارت حول الجدول الزمنى لفُوج؟

- He said it ignored storms, delays, and accidents.

7. What amount of money did Fogg bet on his journey?

ما المبلغ الذى راهن به فُوج على رحلته؟

- He bet on twenty thousand pounds.

8. What did Stuart and the other men do after hearing Fogg's challenge?

ماذا فعل ستيوارت وبقية الرجال بعد سماع تحدى فُوج؟

- They accepted and signed a contract.

9. When did Fogg say he would leave London?

متى قال فُوج إنه سيغادر لندن؟

- On October 2nd at 8:45 in the evening.

10. When did Fogg promise to return to the Reform Club? متى وعد فُوج بالعودة إلى «نادى الإصلاح»؟

- On December 21st at the same hour.

11. Why do you think Fogg remained calm while others were excited about the robbery?

لماذا تعتقد أن فُوج ظل هادئًا بينما كان الآخرون متحمسين بشأن السرقة؟

- Because he was disciplined and not easily disturbed by outside events.

12. What does Ralph's comment about the world "growing smaller" mean?

ماذا يعنى تعليق رالف بأن «العالم أصبح أصغر»؟

- It means travel and communication were becoming faster and easier.

13. Why was twenty thousand pounds such a shocking wager?

لماذا كان مبلغ عشرين ألف جنيه رهانًا صادمًا للغاية؟

- Because it was a huge sum at that time, showing how serious Fogg was.

14. If you were in the Reform Club, would you have accepted Fogg's bet? Why or why not?

لو كنت فى «نادى الإصلاح»، فهل كنت ستقبل رهان فُوج؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟

- Yes, because he seemed serious. / No, because the journey looked impossible.

15. In your opinion, what does Phileas Fogg's calmness tell us about him?

برأيك، ماذا يخبرنا هدوء فيلياس فوج عنه؟

- Fogg's calmness shows that he's a careful and confident person who doesn't get easily upset.

16. Why do you think the other men agree to Fogg's bet?

لماذا تعتقد أن الرجال الآخرين يوافقون على رهان فوج؟

- The men agree because they're curious to see if Fogg can really do it, and they might also want to win the twenty thousand pounds.

17. Fogg seems not to worry about problems. Do you agree? Why? Why not?

يبدو أن فوج لا يكترث للمشاكل. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟ لماذا لا؟

- Maybe because his regular life is so controlled that he thinks he can control everything. Or maybe he's just too proud to admit things could go wrong.

18. What does this chapter tell us about rich men in 1872?

ماذا يخبرنا هذا الفصل عن الرجال الأثرياء فى عام ١٨٧٢؟

- They had lots of free time and money to make big bets just for fun. They also thought they knew everything about the world.

19. Would you want to take a trip like Fogg's? Why? Why not?

هل ترغب فى القيام برحلة مثل رحلة فوج؟ لماذا؟ لم لا؟

- Yes, I would. Traveling around the world in 80 days would be a thrilling adventure, offering new experiences and challenges every day.

20. Do you think Fogg's confidence in his plan is justified? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن ثقة فوج بخطته مبررة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. His plan might be too perfect, and unexpected problems could arise.

Chapter (2) Student's Book Exercises

Part (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Reform Club was located on ..... .

a) Savile Row b) Pall Mall c) Oxford Street d) Bond Street

2. The Reform Club was known for its ..... .

a) loud parties b) respectability and reason

c) concerts d) art galleries

3. The members of the Reform Club were ..... .

a) bankers, engineers, and scientists b) actors and singers

c) students and teachers d) soldiers only

4. The Bank of England had been robbed of ..... .

a) £25,000 b) £55,000 c) £100,000 d) £5,000

5. The robbery left the city of London in ..... .

a) joy b) shock c) confusion d) peace

6. Newspapers speculated about the ..... of the thief.

a) age b) identity c) family d) address

7. Some members of the club also discussed the speed of ..... .

a) modern travel b) farming c) new schools d) newspapers

8. The opening of the ..... had made travel faster.

a) Eiffel Tower b) Reform Club c) Suez Canal d) Big Ben

9. Mr. Fogg sat quietly, playing ..... as usual.

a) chess b) whist

c) cards with children d) dice

10. His calmness made him seem ..... .

a) ordinary b) mysterious c) angry d) lazy

11. Mr. Ralph said the world was growing ..... .

a) larger b) smaller

c) more crowded d) more dangerous

12. Stuart said one could travel the world in ..... .

a) 1 year b) 6 months c) 80 days or less d) 200 days

13. Phileas Fogg replied that the journey was ..... .

a) impossible b) possible c) dangerous d) foolish

14. Fogg pulled out a ..... from his pocket.

a) timetable notebook b) deck of cards

c) newspaper d) map of London

15. Stuart argued that Fogg forgot about ..... .

a) delays and accidents b) food and water

c) tickets and money d) family and friends

16. Fogg said he never planned for ..... .

a) delays b) happiness c) food d) travel

17. According to Fogg, a gentleman does not waste time on ..... .

a) real travel b) imaginary delays c) playing cards d) other people

18. Fogg proposed a ..... to prove his point.

a) lecture b) challenge c) debate d) story

19. The gentlemen thought the challenge was either great confidence or great ..... .

a) madness b) wisdom c) kindness d) luck

20. Fogg planned to leave on ..... .

a) October 2nd, at 8:45 p.m. b) October 3rd, at 9:00 a.m.

c) October 4th, at midnight d) October 5th, at noon

21. The men reacted with ..... to his plan.

a) belief b) disbelief c) excitement d) joy

Part (B) Open-ended Questions:

1. Where was the Reform Club located?

2. Who were the members of the Reform Club?

3. What major crime had shocked London?

4. How much money was stolen from the Bank of England?

5. What important travel development was mentioned in the discussion?

6. What game did Fogg play at the club?

7. Who suggested that the world could be traveled in 80 days?

8. How did Phileas Fogg react to Stuart's claim?

9. What did Fogg use to show his calculation of the trip?

10. What was Stuart's main argument against Fogg's plan?

11. Why did Fogg's calmness make him seem mysterious?

12. How does the Suez Canal symbolize progress in the story?

13. Why do you think the men at the club doubted Fogg?
14. How did Fogg's view of accidents and delays differ from Stuart's?
15. Why do you think Fogg was so confident in his calculations?
16. What does the bet reveal about Fogg's personality?
17. Why did the men agree to sign the contract?
18. How does this chapter build excitement for the adventure?
19. What role does the Reform Club setting play in the story?

Part (C) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. How has modern travel changed compared to the 1870s?
2. Do you think accidents should always be considered in planning? Why or why not?
3. Would you risk everything you own for a challenge? Why or why not?
4. How does Fogg's determination inspire or worry you?
5. What does this chapter teach us about confidence?
6. If you were one of the gentlemen at the club, would you accept Fogg's challenge?
7. How might this chapter reflect human curiosity about the world?
8. Do you think challenges and risks are necessary for progress? Explain.

Chapter (3) Across the Mediterranean to Suez

Vocabulary — المفردات

accent	لهجة	gaze	نظرة	rhythm	إيقاع
adjust	يعدل	glance	نظرة خاطفة	roll	لفة
adventure	مغامرة	gleaming	بريق	rug	سجادة
agent	عميل	glimpse	لمحة	rumor	شائعة
arrange	يرتب	glow	يتوهج	scatter	يتشتت
await	ينتظر	groan	أنين	self-control	ضبط النفس
banknotes	أوراق نقدية	guidebook	دليل	smokestack	مدخنة
belch	تجشؤ	handle	يتعامل	steward	مضيف/خادم
board	لوح	haste	تسرع	stockings	جوارب
brass	نحاس	hooves	حوافر	stretch	يتمدد
cab	سيارة أجرة	lightning	برق	struggle	صراع
carpetbag	حقيبة سجادة	manner	أسلوب	suspect	مشتبه به
clatter	قعقعة	mast	صارى	suspicion	شك
coal	فحم	merchant	تاجر	tar	قطران
compartment	حجرة	mixture	مزيج	telegram	برقية
convince	يقنع	obey	يطيع	telegraph	تلغراف
costume	زى	occasionally	أحيانًا	tremble	يرتعش
crawl across	يزحف عبر	officer	ضابط	vessel	وعاء
curiosity	فضول	official	رسمى	vineyard	كَرْم/عنب
detail	تفاصيل	pack	حزمة/يحزم	wardrobe	خزانة ملابس
detective	محقق	peasant	فلاح	watchful	حذر
dizzy	دوار	porter	حمال	wheat	قمح
drag	يسحب	purchase	يشترى	whistle	صافرة
echo	صدى	rattle	خشخشة	widen	يتسع
flash	وميض	revive	يحيى	winding	لف

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a trace of emotion أثرٌ من العاطفة	if only the sea would stop moving لو توقف البحر عن الحركة	off to the ends of the earth بعيدًا إلى أقاصى الأرض
bound for متجه إلى	in time فى الوقت المناسب	on deck على سطح السفينة
by contrast على النقيض	keep a close watch راقب عن كثب	on the other hand من ناحية أخرى
eyes widened اتسعت عيناى	keep his balance حافظ على توازنه	sped into انطلق
had no choice لم يكن لدى خيار	lose sight of فقد بصره	

Values in this Chapter

Discipline in all circumstances الانضباط فى جميع الظروف	Fogg's orderliness gives him strength.
Openness to new experiences الانفتاح على تجارب جديدة	Passepartout shows the value of wonder and curiosity.
Perseverance in duty المثابرة فى أداء الواجب	Fix's determination, though misguided, shows commitment.
Respect and fairness الاحترام والإنصاف	Fogg treats others with dignity, even while focused on his goal.
Justice and duty العدالة والواجب	Detective Fix demonstrates persistence in pursuing what he believes is right.

Summary in Points

1. When Mr. Fogg returned home, Passepartout was arranging clothes and expecting a calm life.

عندما عاد فُوج إلى المنزل، كان باسبارتو ينظم الملابس ويتوقع حياة هادئة.

2. Fogg suddenly told him they were leaving in ten minutes for Dover.

أخبره فوج فجأة أنهم سيغادرون بعد عشر دقائق إلى دوفر.

3. He ordered him to pack a small bag with shirts, stockings, a coat, and the banknotes.

أمره أن يجهز حقيبة صغيرة بها قمصان وجوارب ومعطف والنقود.

4. Passepartout was shocked to hear they would travel around the world in eighty days.

اندهش باسبارتو عندما سمع أنهم سيسافرون حول العالم فى ثمانين يومًا.

5. Though he wanted peace, he obeyed and packed nervously.

رغم أنه كان يريد الهدوء، لكنه انصاع وبدأ يحزم أمتعته وهو يرتجف.

6. At exactly 8:45, Fogg and Passepartout left in a cab through the foggy streets of London.

في تمام الساعة ٨:٤٥، غادر فوج وباسبارتو بعربة عبر شوارع لندن الملبئة بالضباب.

7. They arrived at Charing Cross Station where the train to Dover was waiting.

وصلوا إلى محطة تشارينغ كروس حيث كان القطار المتجه إلى دوفر ينتظر.

8. Fogg bought tickets calmly while Passepartout felt dizzy from the sudden change.

اشترى فوج التذاكر بهدوء بينما شعر باسبارتو بالدوار من التغير المفاجئ.

9. At the same time, Detective Fix suspected Fogg of being the bank robber.

في الوقت نفسه، اشتبه المحقق فيكس في أن فوج هو سارق البنك.

10. Fix decided to follow him closely until he had proof.

قرر فيكس أن يتبعه عن قرب حتى يحصل على دليل.

11. The story now tied three men together: Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix.

القصة الآن ربطت بين ثلاثة رجال: فوج، وباسبارتو، وفيكس.

12. The train crossed France, showing fields, vineyards, and small villages.

عبر القطار فرنسا، مظهرًا الحقول وكروم العنب والقرى الصغيرة.

13. Fogg sat calmly checking his timetable, while Passepartout admired the sights like a child.

جلس فوج بهدوء يراجع جدول رحلته، بينما كان باسبارتو يتأمل المناظر كالأطفال.

14. At Marseilles, Passepartout saw the sea for the first time, filled with ships.

في مارسيليا، رأى باسبارتو البحر لأول مرة، مليئًا بالسفن.

15. They boarded the steamship *Mongolia*, heading toward Egypt.

ركبوا السفينة البخارية «مونجوليا» المتجهة نحو مصر.

16. The ship was full of passengers from many nations, speaking many languages.

كانت السفينة مليئة بالركاب من جنسيات متعددة، يتحدثون لغات مختلفة.

17. Passepartout first felt seasick but soon began to enjoy the fresh air and sights.

في البداية شعر باسبارتو بدوار البحر، لكنه سرعان ما استمتع بالهواء والمناظر.

18. He loved watching dolphins, flying fish, and the beautiful sunsets.

أحب مشاهدة الدلافين والأسماك الطائرة وغروب الشمس الجميل.

19. Fogg, however, lived on the ship with the same routine as in London.

أما فوج، فعاش على السفينة بنفس الروتين كما لو كان في لندن.

20. Fix continued to watch Fogg carefully and even sent a telegram to London, though slowly.

استمر فيكس في مراقبة فوج بعناية، وأرسل برقية إلى لندن، لكن ببطء.

21. Passepartout began to respect his master, finding him strict but fair and never cruel.

بدأ باسبارتو يحترم سيده، فوجد أنه صارم لكنه عادل ولم يكن قاسيًا أبدًا.

Chapter Text

A Servant in Shock

When Mr. Fogg returned to his house on Savile Row, Passepartout was arranging his master's wardrobe. The Frenchman had imagined a calm life with quiet walks and peaceful evenings. He had no idea what was about to happen.

"Passepartout," said Fogg without a trace of emotion, "we are leaving in ten minutes. Pack a carpetbag with two shirts and three pairs of stockings. Bring my woolen coat and the traveling rug. Do not forget the banknotes. We leave for Dover."

Passepartout dropped the shoes he was polishing. "Leaving?

Tonight?"

"Yes. We are going around the world in eighty days."

Passepartout's eyes widened. "Around the world? In eighty days?"

"Precisely."

The Frenchman had dreamed of quiet. Instead, he was being thrown into the greatest adventure of his life. But he had no choice. He obeyed, though his hands trembled as he packed.

The Departure

At exactly 8:45 that evening, Mr. Fogg and Passepartout left Savile Row and entered a cab. The horse's hooves clattered against the stones as they hurried through the foggy streets of London. Gas lamps glowed faintly, and the bells of Big Ben struck the hour as if to mark the beginning of their strange voyage.

At Charing Cross Station, the train was waiting. Passengers hurried to their compartments, porters shouted, and whistles blew. Calm as ever, Fogg checked his watch, purchased two tickets, and boarded.

Passepartout followed, still dizzy from the speed of events. "Mon Dieu!" he muttered. "Here I thought I had found peace, and now I am off to the ends of the earth!"

The train whistled and moved forward. The journey had begun.

Suspicion Arises

At that same moment, another man was watching. His name was Detective Fix, an agent of Scotland Yard. He had been following rumors about the Bank of England robbery. The description of the suspect—a tall, well-dressed Englishman with calm manners—seemed to match Phileas Fogg.

When Fix saw Fogg and his servant board the train to Dover with such haste, his suspicions deepened. Why else would a gentleman leave London so suddenly with a bag of banknotes?

Fix decided to follow them. He would keep a close eye on this mysterious traveler until he had proof.

Thus, as the train sped into the night, three men were bound together by fate:

· Fogg, calm and determined, who trusted in timetables more than chance.

· Passepartout, confused but loyal, who longed for peace but found adventure.

· Fix, watchful and suspicious, who believed he was chasing a thief.

The stage was set for an extraordinary race against time.

From Paris to the Sea

The train from Paris rattled southward through the French countryside. Fields of golden wheat and rows of vineyards rolled past the windows. Villages with red-tiled roofs and small church towers flashed by as the train sped on. Inside the carriage, Phileas Fogg sat with his usual calm, his eyes occasionally glancing at the timetable in his hand.

Passepartout, on the other hand, pressed his face to the glass like an eager child. He had never traveled so far from London, and every detail fascinated him—the smoke of distant factories, the peasants gathering grapes, the winding rivers that shone in the afternoon sun.

"Mon Dieu," he whispered, "I thought my master was a quiet man who lived only by his clock. Instead, he drags me across all of France within a day!"

Fogg, hearing him, simply nodded and adjusted his cuffs. "The train is on time," he said.

When they reached Marseilles, the air was filled with the smell of salt and tar. Ships crowded the port, their masts rising like a forest of poles against the evening sky. The Mediterranean lay before them, blue and endless. For Passepartout, it was a first glimpse of a world beyond Europe.

Within hours, they boarded the steamship Mongolia, which was bound for Egypt.

Life on the Mongolia

The Mongolia was a proud vessel, painted black with gleaming brass rails. Its tall smokestack belched clouds of coal smoke, and its engines beat with the rhythm of a giant heart. On deck, the salty wind whipped through the rigging, and gulls followed in their wake.

Passengers came from many nations: English merchants, French officers, Indian officials, and travelers of every description. The deck echoed with different languages—English, French, Italian, Arabic, and more.

Passepartout at first struggled to keep his balance as the ship rocked gently. He leaned over the rail and groaned. "If only the sea would stop moving!" But soon, the fresh air revived him, and curiosity replaced discomfort.

He wandered among the passengers, asking questions, marveling at their costumes, and laughing at the strange mixture of accents. At night, he stood on deck gazing at the stars, brighter than he had ever seen in London.

Mr. Fogg, by contrast, lived exactly as if he were still in Savile Row. He rose at eight, took breakfast at nine, walked for half an hour, then joined a game of whist with three gentlemen. He read his guidebook at fixed hours and checked his watch regularly. He did not waste a moment on idle talk or sightseeing.

"My master travels the world," Passepartout muttered, "but he behaves as if he never left his armchair!"

Still, the servant admired Fogg's self-control. No storm, no noise, no change of scene could disturb his calm.

A Watchful Eye

Among the passengers was Detective Fix, an officer of Scotland Yard. He had secretly followed Fogg from Calais, convinced that the mysterious gentleman was the thief who had robbed the Bank of England.

Fix kept a close watch, walking the deck at all hours, pretending to admire the sea while keeping Fogg in view. He noted every detail: the calm way Fogg handled his cards at whist, the exact change he gave the steward, the precise moments when he walked on deck.

At Brindisi in Italy, the ship stopped briefly to take on coal. While passengers stretched their legs, Fix hurried to send a telegram to London:

"Suspect has boarded Mongolia. Bound for Suez. Please send arrest warrant to await him."

But the telegraph wires were slow. Messages crawled across Europe and the Mediterranean at the pace of old horses, not lightning. Fix feared that the warrant would not arrive in time.

"No matter," he thought grimly. "I shall not lose sight of him. One mistake, one slip, and I will have my proof."

Passepartout's Delight

Passepartout knew nothing of Fix's suspicions. For him, the voyage was a dream. He had never seen such clear skies, such blue water, such brilliant sunsets.

He laughed like a boy when he saw dolphins leaping beside the ship. He clapped his hands when flying fish scattered like silver arrows across the waves. He stared for hours at the coastlines—Italy's rocky shores, the distant islands rising like clouds from the sea.

One evening he said aloud, "Ah, France, I miss you! But what wonders await me! Who could have imagined I would travel farther in one week than in all my life before?"

The young Frenchman also began to feel respect for his master. Fogg never spoke unkindly, never raised his voice, and always paid fairly. He seemed cold, but he was never cruel. Passepartout thought, "Perhaps this journey will not be so bad after all."

Chapter (3) Answered Exercises

1. What was Passepartout doing when Mr. Fogg returned home?

ماذا كان يفعل باسبرتو عندما عاد السيد فُوج إلى المنزل؟

- He was arranging his master's wardrobe.

2. What did Mr. Fogg ask Passepartout to pack in the carpetbag?

ماذا طلب السيد فُوج من باسبرتو أن يضعه فى الحقيبة الصغيرة ؟

- He asked for two shirts, three pairs of stockings, his woolen coat, the traveling rug, and banknotes.

3. Where did they board the train? من أين استقلا القطار؟

- They boarded the train at Charing Cross Station.

4. Who was secretly watching Fogg and Passepartout at the station?

من كان يراقب فُوج وباسبرتو سرًا فى المحطة؟

- Detective Fix was watching him.

5. Why did Fix suspect Fogg of being the bank robber? لماذا اشتبه فيكس فى أن فُوج هو سارق البنك؟

- Because Fogg matched the description of the thief and left London suddenly with banknotes.

6. How did Passepartout feel at first on the ship? كيف كان شعور باسبرتو فى البداية على متن السفينة؟

- He felt seasick and leaned over the rail.

7. What did Fogg spend his time doing on the *Mongolia*?

فيمَ كان يقضى فُوج وقته على متن السفينة مونجوليا؟

- He followed his routine: rising at 8, breakfast at 9, walking, reading, and playing whist.

8. What message did Detective Fix send by telegram?

ما الرسالة التى أرسلها المحقق فيكس عبر البرقية؟

- Suspect has boarded *Mongolia*. Bound for Suez. Please send an arrest warrant to await him.

9. Why do you think Passepartout was shocked by Fogg's sudden order?

لماذا تعتقد أن باسبرتو شعر بالصدمة من أمر فُوج المفاجئ؟

- Because he expected a quiet life, not a sudden world trip.

10. How do Fogg and Passepartout's attitudes toward travel differ?

كيف تختلف مواقف فُوج وباسبرتو تجاه السفر؟

- Fogg is calm and focused on order, while Passepartout is curious and amazed.

11. Why might Fogg ignore sightseeing and continue his routine?

لماذا قد يتجاهل فُوج مشاهدة المعالم السياحية ويواصل روتينه المعتاد؟

- Because for him, the goal is the journey's success, not pleasure.

12. How do the stars and sea affect Passepartout compared to life in London?

كيف تؤثر النجوم والبحر على باسبرتو مقارنةً بحياته فى لندن؟

- They fill him with wonder, unlike London's gray skies.

13. How do Fogg's fairness and respect toward others influence Passepartout's opinion of him?

كيف يؤثر إنصاف فُوج واحترامه للآخرين فى رأى باسبرتو عنه؟

- They make Passepartout admire him, despite his coldness.

14. What values can readers learn from the three men (Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix)?

ما القيم التى يمكن أن يتعلمها القراء من الرجال الثلاثة (فُوج، باسبرتو، فيكس)؟

- They can learn discipline from Fogg, curiosity from Passepartout, and perseverance from Fix.

15. Why does Fogg act the same on the ship as he did at home?

لماذا يتصرف فوج على متن السفينة كما فعل فى بيته؟

- Maybe he feels safe when everything is routine and scheduled. Change might make him nervous, so he sticks to his habits even in new places.

16. Do you think Passepartout's opinion of his master changes during the journey? Why? Why not?

هل تعتقد أن رأى باسبارتو فى سيده يتغير خلال رحلة السفينة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, it changes for the better. He starts to respect Mr. Fogg because he is calm, fair, and never cruel, which makes Passepartout feel the journey might not be so bad.

17. Do you think Detective Fix is right to think that Mr. Fogg is the bank robber? Give reasons for your answer.

هل تعتقد أن المحقق فيكس محق فى اعتقاده أن السيد فوج هو سارق البنوك؟ اذكر أسباب إجابتك.

- Yes, I think so. Fogg's sudden trip with a bag of banknotes and calm behavior make Fix suspicious.

18. How does slow communication affect the story?

كيف يؤثر بطء التواصل على القصة؟

- Fix can't get permission to arrest Fogg quickly, Fogg can't contact the Reform Club if he has problems,.and families can't check if travelers are safe.

Chapter (3) Student's Book Exercises

Part (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. On October 2nd, Mr. Fogg told Passepartout to pack because they were ..... .
   a) moving houses b) leaving for Dover
   c) going to Paris d) visiting the club
2. Passepartout was told to bring only a ..... .
   a) suitcase full of books b) carpetbag with clothes and money
   c) trunk with decorations d) box of food
3. Passepartout was surprised because he thought life with Fogg would be ..... .
   a) calm and quiet b) full of travel c) dangerous d) full of surprises
4. At exactly ....., Fogg and Passepartout left Savile Row.
   a) 7:00 p.m. b) 8:45 p.m. c) 9:30 a.m. d) 10:15 p.m.
5. They left London from ..... Station.
   a) Waterloo b) Paddington c) Charing Cross d) King's Cross
6. As the journey began, gas lamps glowed and ..... struck the hour.
   a) Big Ben b) church bells c) the town clock d) the train whistle
7. Another man watching Fogg was ..... .
   a) Mr. Ralph b) Detective Fix c) Andrew Stuart d) Passepartout
8. Fix suspected Fogg because of the ..... robbery.
   a) jewelry store b) Bank of England c) Reform Club d) train station
9. Fix thought Fogg's sudden departure meant he was ..... .
   a) going on holiday b) escaping with stolen money
   c) running from family d) sick
10. Passepartout dreamed of peace but instead found ..... .
    a) boredom b) a great adventure
    c) trouble with money d) a new master
11. On the train to Paris, Passepartout looked out at the ..... .
    a) French countryside b) London streets
    c) desert d) ocean
12. He saw ..... in the fields.
    a) camels b) grapes and wheat c) elephants d) palm trees
13. Fogg only cared about the ..... .
    a) timetable b) animals c) scenery d) passengers
14. Passepartout said, "My master drags me across ..... within a day!"
    a) London b) France c) India d) Italy
15. At Marseilles, they prepared to board the ..... .
    a) *Mongolia* steamship b) Reform Club boat
    c) Titanic d) Dover ferry

16. Passepartout had never seen the ..... before.

a) mountains b) Mediterranean Sea
c) deserts d) Thames River

17. The *Mongolia* was painted ..... with brass rails.

a) red b) black c) blue d) white

18. Passepartout felt seasick but later enjoyed the ..... .

a) fresh air and stars b) noisy engines
c) crowded cabins d) captain's speeches

19. Fogg behaved on the ship as if he were still in ..... .

a) Bombay b) Paris c) Savile Row d) Cairo

20. Fogg spent his time ..... on the ship.

a) sightseeing b) playing whist and reading
c) sleeping d) teaching Passepartout

21. Detective Fix secretly followed Fogg onto the ..... .

a) train to Cairo b) *Mongolia* c) carriage in London d) ship to America

22. Fix sent a telegram from ..... in Italy.

a) Paris b) Brindisi c) Rome d) Venice

23. Fix hoped to get a/an ..... warrant.

a) arrest b) travel c) train d) work

24. Passepartout enjoyed watching ..... in the sea.

a) sharks b) dolphins and flying fish
c) whales d) turtles

25. Passepartout admired Fogg's ..... .

a) strict self-control b) love of sightseeing
c) kindness to animals d) jokes

26. The passengers on the *Mongolia* came from ..... .

a) only England b) many different countries
c) only France d) only Italy

27. Passepartout said he had traveled farther in one week than in ..... .

a) all his life before b) ten years
c) his time in Paris d) working as a singer

28. Fix feared the telegram to London was too ..... .

a) fast b) slow c) short d) expensive

29. Passepartout saw beautiful sunsets and clear skies, while Fogg only checked his ..... .

a) watch b) money c) books d) passport

30. By the time they reached Suez, Passepartout thought the journey might not be ..... .

a) so bad after all b) safe c) possible d) fun

Part (B) Open-ended Questions:

1. What did Fogg tell Passepartout to pack before leaving?
2. At what exact time did Fogg and Passepartout leave London?
3. From which station did they depart?
4. Who was Detective Fix?
5. Why did Fix suspect Fogg?
6. How did Passepartout feel about leaving so suddenly?
7. What did Passepartout notice from the train window in France?
8. Where did they board the steamship *Mongolia*?
9. How was the *Mongolia* described?
10. What did Passepartout enjoy most about the voyage?
11. Why did Fogg remain calm while everyone else was excited or nervous?
12. What does Passepartout's excitement show about his personality?
13. How does the author contrast Fogg and Passepartout on the voyage?
14. Why was Detective Fix determined to follow Fogg?
15. What does the slow telegram system add to the story's tension?
16. How does the journey on the *Mongolia* show differences in cultures?
17. Why does Fogg treat the voyage as if he were still in London?
18. How does Passepartout begin to respect his master despite differences?
19. What role does the sea imagery (dolphins, stars, sunsets) play in the story?
20. Why might Passepartout's joy be important for the reader's experience?

Part (C) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. If you were Passepartout, how would you feel about leaving your new job so suddenly?
2. Do you think Detective Fix was right to be suspicious of Fogg? Why or why not?
3. Would you enjoy traveling like Fogg (strict schedule) or like Passepartout (curious and amazed)?
4. How would you react if your boss suddenly told you to travel around the world?
5. What do you think is more important during travel: discipline or wonder?
6. How does this chapter show the difference between planning and adventure?
7. Do you think Fogg should have explained more to Passepartout? Why?
8. How does the author use Fix to build suspense?
9. What lessons about travel can we learn from Passepartout's excitement?
10. Do you think traveling without enjoying the scenery, like Fogg, is a waste? Explain.

Chapter (4) The Desert Crossing and Cairo

Vocabulary — المفردات

alley	زقاق	enchant	يسحر	occur	يحدث
approach	يقترب	fortunate	محظوظ	prayer	صلاة
Bedouins	البدو	fragrance	عطر	resolve	يحل
calculate	يحسب	frustrate	يحبط	roasted	محمص
caravan	قافلة	interval	فترة	rooftops	أسطح
confirm	يؤكد	iron track	سكة حديد	satisfied	راض
connection	اتصال	landscape	مشهد طبيعي	shadow	ظل
craftsmen	حرفيون	magic	سحر	sigh	تَنَهُّد
depart	يغادر	magnificent	رائع	solid	صلب
determination	عزيمة	merchant	تاجر	spices	بهارات
disembark	ينزل	minaret	مئذنة	trusting	ودود
dock	رصيف/ميناء	mission	مهمة	vision	رؤية
dome	قبة	mixture	مزيج	warrant	مذكرة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a man of precision, not of wonder	رجل دقيق، لا عجيب	filled with	ملىء بـ
a race against time	سباق مع الزمن	glance at	ينظر إلى
a vision from a storybook	رؤية من كتاب قصص	loaded with	محمل بـ
as planned	كما هو مخطط	on schedule	فى الموعد المحدد
astonished by	مندهش من	point on a timetable	نقطة فى جدول زمنى
at all costs	بأى ثمن	step onto	خطوة على
eager to	متشوق إلى	waste no time	لا تضيع وقتك

Values in this Chapter

Discipline keeps us focused الانضباط يُبقينا مُركّزين	Fogg's strict order helps him stay on track.
Openness to wonder الانفتاح على التعجب	Passepartout shows the importance of curiosity and appreciation of new cultures.
Persistence in duty المثابرة فى الواجب	Detective Fix, though misguided, demonstrates determination.
Respect in relationships الاحترام فى العلاقات	Fogg treats Passepartout fairly, showing leadership through calm respect.

Summary in Points

1. The steamship *Mongolia* arrived at the port of Suez after a week at sea.

وصلت السفينة مونجوليا إلى ميناء السويس بعد أسبوع فى البحر.

2. Passepartout was amazed by Egypt—golden sands, camels, minarets, and palm trees.

انبهر باسبارتو بمصر—رمال ذهبية، جمال، مآذن، ونخيل.

3. Mr. Fogg only cared about the timetable and checked his watch as soon as they arrived.

أما فوج فكان يهتم فقط بالجدول الزمنى، وفور وصوله نظر إلى ساعته.

4. Fogg reminded his servant that the train for Cairo would leave in two hours.

ذكر فوج خادمه أن القطار المتجه إلى القاهرة سيغادر بعد ساعتين.

5. Detective Fix was still following them, suspecting Fogg of being the bank robber.

كان المحقق فيكس ما زال يتبعهم، يظن أن فوج هو سارق البنك.

6. At Suez, Fix sent a telegram to London asking for an arrest warrant.

فى السويس، أرسل فيكس برقية إلى لندن يطلب فيها أمر اعتقال.

7. Fix also started talking with Passepartout, pretending to be friendly.

كما بدأ فيكس يتحدث مع باسبارتو متظاهرًا بالود.

8. Passepartout proudly explained their travel plan: India, Hong Kong, America, then back to London.

تحدث باسبارتو بفخر عن خطة رحلتهم: الهند، هونغ كونغ، أمريكا، ثم العودة إلى لندن.

9. Fix, however, believed Fogg was only using the challenge as a cover to escape.

لكن فيكس كان يظن أن فوج يستخدم التحدى كغطاء للهروب.

10. The train to Cairo crossed the hot desert, mixing modern railways with ancient scenery.

قطع القطار الصحراء الحارة، جامعًا بين السكك الحديدية الحديثة والمناظر القديمة.

11. Passepartout was full of wonder, pointing at Bedouins, camels, and caravans.

كان باسبارتو مدهوشًا، يشير إلى البدو والجمال والقوافل.

12. Fogg remained calm, reading his guidebook and checking his watch regularly.

أما فوج فظل هادئًا يقرأ دليله وينظر إلى ساعته بانتظام.

13. Passepartout asked his master if he ever felt amazed, but Fogg said amazement does not save time.

سأل باسبارتو سيده إن كان يشعر بالدهشة، فأجاب فوج أن الدهشة لا توفر الوقت.

14. By evening, the train reached Cairo, a lively city by the Nile.

مع حلول المساء، وصل القطار إلى القاهرة، المدينة النابضة بالحياة على النيل.

15. Passepartout was fascinated by the markets, spices, and the call to prayer.

انبهر باسبارتو بالأسواق، وروائح التوابل، وصوت الأذان.

16. Fogg, instead, went directly to arrange tickets for their next journey to India.

أما فوج فاتجه مباشرة لحجز التذاكر لرحلتهم القادمة إلى الهند.

17. Fix followed them through the streets, still waiting for the warrant.

ظل فيكس يتبعهم فى الشوارع، منتظرًا وصول أمر الاعتقال.

18. That evening, Fogg allowed Passepartout a short walk in the bazaar.

فى ذلك المساء، سمح فوج لباسبارتو بجولة قصيرة فى السوق.

19. Passepartout admired the glowing lamps, brass craftsmen, and storytellers.

انبهر باسبارتو بالمصابيح المضيئة، وصانعى النحاس، ورواة القصص.

20. Fogg only cared about calculating hours and distances, making sure they were on schedule.

لكن فوج كان يهتم فقط بحساب الساعات والمسافات ليتأكد أنهم على الموعد.

21. The next morning, Fix again spoke to Passepartout, trying to get information.

فى الصباح التالى، تحدث فيكس مرة أخرى مع باسبارتو محاولًا معرفة معلومات.

22. Passepartout defended his master, saying he was a man of honor who would win the challenge.

دافع باسبارتو عن سيده قائلاً إنه رجل شريف وسيفوز بالتحدى.

23. Fix secretly sent another telegram, still hoping to delay Fogg.

أرسل فيكس برقية أخرى سرًا، وما زال يأمل أن يؤخر فوج.

24. Finally, Fogg bought the tickets calmly and prepared to leave Cairo for the Red Sea.

أخيرًا، اشترى فوج التذاكر بهدوء واستعد لمغادرة القاهرة نحو البحر الأحمر.

25. As the train left, Passepartout waved at Cairo, wishing to return one day.

وعندما تحرك القطار، لوّح باسبارتو للقاهرة متمنيًا أن يعود إليها يومًا ما.

26. Fogg simply said, "Onward to India," while Fix followed silently, more determined than ever.

أما فوج فقال ببساطة: «إلى الهند»، بينما تبعهم فيكس بصمت، أكثر إصرارًا من أى وقت.

Chapter Text

The port of Suez shimmered under the hot Egyptian sun. The steamship Mongolia had just docked after a week at sea, and its passengers were eager to step onto solid ground again. Among them were Mr. Phileas Fogg and his servant, Passepartout, who followed his master with quick, lively steps. For Passepartout, Egypt was a dream he had never imagined—golden sands, narrow streets full of camels, and minarets rising against the burning sky. For Mr. Fogg, however, Egypt was only a point on a timetable, a line in his carefully measured plan.

Mr. Fogg checked his watch as soon as he disembarked. "We are on schedule," he murmured calmly, as if speaking to himself. Passepartout wiped sweat from his forehead, astonished by the heat and the new sights.

"Mon Dieu!" he exclaimed. "This is another world! Look, master—those domes, those palm trees, those camels carrying water!"

But Mr. Fogg only nodded politely. "The train for Cairo departs in two hours. We must not waste time."

Passepartout sighed. His master was a man of precision, not of wonder. Still, he followed faithfully.

Detective Fix at Work

Not far behind, Detective Fix of Scotland Yard kept a careful eye on them. He had followed Fogg since the Channel crossing, convinced that the English gentleman was the very man who had robbed the Bank of England. Fogg's quiet manner and enormous challenge only increased Fix's suspicion.

At Suez, Fix hurried to the telegraph office and sent another urgent message to London:

"Suspect Phileas Fogg has arrived in Suez. Traveling to Cairo by train. Please send a warrant for arrest immediately."

But the wires were slow, and the journey long. Fix knew the warrant might not arrive before Fogg moved further east. That frustrated him, but it also strengthened his resolve. He would stay close, waiting for the right moment to act.

Meanwhile, he struck up a casual conversation with Passepartout, who was too trusting to doubt him.

Passepartout said proudly. "We have already crossed France, Italy, and the Mediterranean. Next is India, then Hong Kong, then America, and back to London."

Fix nodded but thought to himself, This challenge is just a cover. He is escaping justice! His determination deepened. He must stop Fogg at all costs.

Across the Desert

The train to Cairo began its long journey through the desert. It was a curious mixture of European technology and ancient landscape. The iron tracks cut across golden sands, while the wind carried whispers of ancient caravans that had once crossed the same routes.

Passepartout sat by the window, his eyes wide with delight. He pointed excitedly at every sight. "Look, monsieur! Bedouins on horseback! And there—a caravan of camels loaded with goods! This land is full of wonders."

Mr. Fogg, on the other hand, sat upright in his seat, quietly reading his timetable and guidebook. His expression never changed. At exact intervals, he glanced at his watch, confirming the train's punctuality.

After a while, Passepartout could not contain himself. "Master, do you never feel amazed? This desert, this sun—it is unlike anything in England!"

Fogg looked up calmly. "The world is wide, Passepartout. But amazement does not help us arrive on time."

Still, Passepartout smiled. He admired his master's discipline, even if he did not understand it.

Cairo

By evening, the train rolled into Cairo, the great city by the Nile. For Passepartout, it was a vision from a storybook: narrow alleys filled with colorful markets, the sound of merchants calling out, and the fragrance of spices, coffee, and roasted meat. Donkeys and camels shared the streets with carriages. Minarets pierced the sky, and the call to prayer echoed across the rooftops.

"Magnificent!" Passepartout exclaimed. "I never thought I would see such a place with my own eyes."

Mr. Fogg, however, moved with steady steps. He walked straight to the ticket office to confirm their passage on the next train to Suez, where a ship would take them toward Bombay, India. Time was everything.

Detective Fix shadowed them through the crowded streets. He kept silent, but his thoughts burned. *If only the warrant arrives in time ...*

That evening, Fogg allowed Passepartout a short walk through the bazaar. The servant marveled at the lamps that glowed in the dark, the craftsmen hammering brass, and the storytellers gathering children around them. To him, Cairo was alive with magic.

But his master was already preparing for the next stage. He calculated the hours, the distance, and the connections. "We are still on schedule," he said, satisfied. "If no delays occur, we will reach Bombay as planned."

Passepartout nodded, though in his heart he wished for more time to explore. Still, he respected his master's mission. This was not a holiday; it was a race against time.

Fix Makes His Move

The next morning, as they prepared to leave Cairo, Fix approached Passepartout again. This time he spoke with false friendliness.

"You are fortunate to serve such a master," Fix said. "But tell me—do you know why he is in such a hurry? Why he risks so much money?"

Passepartout laughed. "Why, of course! He is a man of honor. He has made a challenge, and he will win it. You will see."

Fix smiled but thought, *The servant knows nothing. I must catch the master myself.*

He then secretly wrote another telegram to London, repeating his request for the arrest warrant. He was determined to delay Fogg in Egypt if possible, but Fogg's strict schedule left little chance.

Departure

The time soon came to leave Cairo and return toward the Red Sea, where their ship waited. Fogg bought the tickets with his usual calmness, checked his watch, and guided Passepartout back to the station.

As the train pulled away, Passepartout leaned out of the window, waving at the city that had enchanted him.

"Goodbye, Cairo! Perhaps one day I shall return."

Fogg closed his guidebook and said quietly, "Onward to India."

Behind them, Fix followed, his determination stronger than ever.

The great adventure was only beginning.

Chapter (4) Answered Exercises

1. Where did the steamship *Mongolia* arrive after a week at sea?

إلى أين وصلت السفينة البخارية مونجوليا بعد أسبوع فى البحر؟

- At the port of Suez.

2. How did Passepartout feel when he first saw Egypt?

كيف كان شعور باسبرتو عندما رأى مصر لأول مرة؟

- He was amazed by the golden sands, palm trees, camels, and domes.

3. What was the first thing Mr. Fogg did when he got off the ship?

ما أول شيء فعله السيد فُوج عند نزوله من السفينة؟

- He checked his watch.

4. Who was following Fogg closely in Egypt?

من كان يتابع فُوج عن قرب فى مصر؟

- Detective Fix.

5. What message did Fix send from Suez?

ما الرسالة التى أرسلها فيكس من السويس؟

- That Phileas Fogg had arrived in Suez and was traveling to Cairo, asking for a warrant.

6. How did Passepartout describe Cairo when they arrived?

كيف وصف باسبرتو مدينة القاهرة عندما وصلوا إليها؟

- He said it was magnificent, full of colors, markets, spices, and sounds.

7. What did Passepartout enjoy during his short walk in Cairo?

ما الذى استمتع به باسبرتو أثناء نزهته القصيرة فى القاهرة؟

- The lamps, craftsmen, storytellers, and lively bazaars.

8. Where were Fogg and Passepartout heading after leaving Cairo?

إلى أين كان فُوج وباسبرتو متجهين بعد مغادرتهما القاهرة؟

- Toward the Red Sea to board a ship to Bombay, India.

9. Why was Egypt exciting for Passepartout but not for Mr. Fogg?

لماذا كانت مصر مثيرة لباسبرتو لكنها لم تكن كذلك بالنسبة للسيد فُوج؟

- Because Passepartout loved new sights, while Fogg cared only about time and schedules.

10. How do Passepartout and Fogg balance each other as characters?

كيف يكمل باسبرتو وفُوج بعضهما كشخصيتين؟

- Passepartout shows curiosity and wonder, while Fogg shows order and control.

11. Why does Fix pretend to be friendly with Passepartout?

لماذا يتظاهر فيكس بالود تجاه باسبرتو؟

- To gain his trust and learn more about Fogg's journey.

12. Why does Fogg allow Passepartout a short walk in the city?

لماذا يسمح فُوج لباسبرتو بنزهة قصيرة فى المدينة؟

- To give him a little enjoyment, though Fogg himself remained focused on the journey.

13. Why does Passepartout respect his master even if he does not fully understand him?

لماذا يكنّ باسبرتو الاحترام لسيده حتى وإن لم يفهمه تمامًا؟

- Because Fogg is fair, calm, and determined, qualities that inspire loyalty.

Chapter (4) Student's Book Exercises

Part (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The port of Suez shimmered under the hot ..... sun.
a) Indian b) Egyptian c) Arabian d) Italian

2. For Passepartout, Egypt seemed like a ..... .
a) desert nightmare b) dream he never imagined
c) familiar place d) cold land

3. For Mr. Fogg, Egypt was only a ..... .
a) holiday b) line in his timetable
c) new adventure d) dangerous place

4. As soon as he arrived in Suez, Fogg checked his ..... .
a) bag b) timetable c) watch d) guidebook

5. Passepartout was amazed by the ..... .
a) temples and markets b) desert and camels
c) domes and palm trees d) all of the above

6. Fogg said the train to Cairo departed in ..... hour(s).
a) 1 b) 2 c) 3 d) 4

7. Detective Fix kept a careful ..... on Fogg.
a) friendship b) eye c) distance d) schedule

8. Fix believed Fogg was really the ..... .
a) bank thief b) mayor of London
c) circus man d) new servant

9. Fix sent another urgent ..... to London.
a) letter b) telegram c) book d) parcel

10. Passepartout proudly explained that they had already crossed ..... .
a) France, Italy, and the Mediterranean b) Asia and Africa
c) America d) Australia

11. Fix secretly thought the journey was just a cover to ..... .
a) explore the world b) escape justice
c) enjoy a holiday d) find gold

12. The train to Cairo crossed the hot ..... .
a) jungle b) desert c) mountains d) forest

13. Passepartout pointed out ..... along the way.
a) Bedouins and camels b) elephants
c) kangaroos d) castles

14. Fogg sat quietly reading his ..... during the trip.

a) timetable and guidebook b) story
c) letters d) maps

15. Passepartout asked if his master ever felt ..... .

a) tired b) amazed c) angry d) bored

16. Fogg replied that amazement did not help them ..... .

a) enjoy the trip b) arrive on time
c) see the world d) spend money

17. In Cairo, Passepartout was fascinated by the ..... .

a) markets and spices b) storytellers
c) coffee shops and lamps d) all of the above

18. For Mr. Fogg, Cairo was just a place to buy ..... .

a) food b) souvenirs c) train tickets d) clothes

19. Fix shadowed Fogg and Passepartout through the ..... .

a) desert b) crowded streets c) ship d) hotel

20. Passepartout trusted Fix and spoke to him with ..... .

a) suspicion b) pride c) fear d) anger

21. Fix asked Passepartout if he knew why his master was in such a ..... .

a) hurry b) good mood c) bad mood d) disguise

22. Passepartout said Fogg was a man of ..... .

a) luck b) money c) honor d) science

23. Fix believed the servant knew ..... .

a) the truth b) nothing
c) about the robbery d) about the warrant

24. Fogg allowed Passepartout a short walk through the ..... .

a) desert b) bazaar c) park d) museum

25. Passepartout loved the lamps, craftsmen, and ..... in Cairo.

a) storytellers b) soldiers c) tourists d) police

26. Fogg said calmly, "We are still on .....".

a) holiday b) time c) schedule d) the right road

27. Fix wrote another telegram repeating his request for an ..... .

a) arrest warrant b) invitation c) appointment d) explanation

28. Fogg guided Passepartout back to the ..... for departure.

a) hotel b) station c) harbor d) market

29. As the train pulled away, Passepartout waved goodbye to ..... .

a) London b) Cairo c) Bombay d) Paris

30. Fogg quietly said, "Onward to .....".

a) India b) Italy c) France d) America

Part (B) Open-ended Questions:

1. What was Passepartout's reaction to Egypt?
2. How did Fogg react upon arriving in Suez?
3. What amazed Passepartout on the way to Cairo?
4. How did Fogg behave during the desert journey?
5. Who followed Fogg and Passepartout closely?
6. What messages did Detective Fix send to London?
7. What did Passepartout think of the bazaar in Cairo?
8. What was Fogg's main priority in Cairo?
9. How did Passepartout describe his master to Fix?
10. What did Fix secretly think about Passepartout's knowledge?
11. Why did Fogg value the timetable more than amazement?
12. How do the desert and Cairo symbolize adventure for Passepartout?
13. Why does Passepartout's excitement contrast with Fogg's calmness?
14. What does Fix's determination tell us about his character?
15. How does the author use Egypt to show cultural differences?
16. Why is Passepartout's trust in Fix important to the story?
17. How does this chapter show Fogg's personality more clearly?
18. Why does Passepartout admire Cairo so much?
19. What tension is created by Fix's telegrams being delayed?
20. Why does Fogg allow Passepartout only a short walk?

Part (C) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Would you enjoy Egypt the way Passepartout did, or stay focused like Fogg? Why?
2. Do you think Fogg is too strict, or is his focus necessary?
3. How would you feel if someone followed you secretly like Fix?
4. Should Passepartout have trusted Fix so easily? Why or why not?
5. Do you think amazement is as important as punctuality when traveling? Explain.
6. Would you choose to live like Fogg (order) or like Passepartout (curiosity)? Why?
7. What lesson does Cairo give Passepartout about new cultures?
8. Do you think Fix will succeed in stopping Fogg? Why or why not?

Chapter (5) The Indian Ocean and Bombay

Vocabulary — المفردات

abandon	يتخلى عن	harbor	ميناء	souvenir	تذكار
Arab dhow	سفينة عربية	holy	مقدس	sparkle	بريق
barren	قاحل	horizon	أفق	stroll	يتجول
clench	يقبض	immensity	ضخامة	subcontinent	شبه القارة
coastlines	السواحل	incense	بخور	sunrise	شروق الشمس
consequence	عاقبة	junk	خردة	sweat	عرق
curiosity	فضول	mystery	غموض	thrill	نشوة
custom	عادة	oppressive	قمعى	trace	أثر
delight	بهجة	phosphorescence	توهّج مستديم	triangular	مثلث
dense	كثيف	plead	يتوسل	trinket	حلية
departure	مغادرة	port	ميناء	unbearable	لا يطاق
distance	مسافة	press	يضغط	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
exotic	غريب	priest	كاهن	variety	تنوع
fair	عادل	pursuit	مطاردة	view	منظر
fist	قبضة	rocky	صخرى	willpower	قوة الإرادة
fortune	ثروة	shimmer	يتلألأ		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a page in the timetable	صفحة فى الجدول الزمنى	in awe	بذهول
agreed to	وافق على	prove his suspicion	يثبت شكه
another world	عالَم آخر	the harbor was alive with ships	كانت الميناء يعج بالسفن
at the appointed time	فى الوقت المحدد	the world grows larger every day	العالم يتسع كل يوم
compared to	مقارنة بـ	torn between	ممزق بين

Values in this Chapter

Discipline in adversity الانضباط فى مواجهة الشدائد	Fogg's calm routine shows strength of mind.
Curiosity and respect الفضول والاحترام	Passepartout learns the importance of observing traditions when traveling.
Perseverance المثابرة/الإصرار	Fix's chase continues despite endless delays.
Wonder and openness الانبهار والانفتاح	New sights expand Passepartout's vision of the world.

Summary in Points

1. The steamer *Mongolia* left Suez at sunrise, moving into the Red Sea.

غادرت الباخرة منغوليا ميناء السويس عند شروق الشمس ودخلت البحر الأحمر.

2. Passengers admired the Arabian desert coast with golden sands and rocky hills.

أُعجب الركاب بساحل الصحراء العربية برماله الذهبية وتلاله الصخرية.

3. Seabirds followed the ship as it moved south toward the Indian Ocean.

تبعت طيور البحر السفينة وهى تتجه جنوبًا نحو المحيط الهندى.

4. For Mr. Fogg, the departure was just another entry in his timetable.

بالنسبة للسيد فوج، كان الرحيل مجرد سطر آخر فى جدول مواعيده.

5. Fogg checked his watch and calmly noted the distance to Bombay.

راجع فوج ساعته ودوّن بهدوء المسافة المتبقية إلى بومباى.

6. Passepartout was amazed by the vast world compared to London.

اندهش باسبرتو من كِبر العالم مقارنة بلندن.

7. Life on board developed a routine with meals, walks, and card games.

أصبحت الحياة على متن السفينة روتينية بوجبات منتظمة، نزهات، وألعاب ورق.

8. Mr. Fogg played cards with calmness, winning or losing equally.

لعب فوج الورق بهدوء، سواء فاز أو خسر بنفس الروح.

9. Passepartout explored the ship, talked to sailors, and enjoyed the stars at night.

استكشف باسبرتو السفينة، تحدث مع البحارة، واستمتع بالنظر للنجوم ليلًا.

10. Detective Fix kept watching Fogg, waiting for the arrest warrant from London.

ظل المحقق فيكس يراقب فوج منتظرًا أمر القبض من لندن.

11. The ship sailed through the Red Sea under intense heat and dusty air.

أبحرت السفينة عبر البحر الأحمر فى جو شديد الحرارة ومليء بالغبار.

12. Fogg continued his exact walks regardless of the weather.

واصل فوج نزهاته المنتظمة دون أن يهتم بالطقس.

13. Passepartout complained about the heat, but Fogg said only the timetable mattered.

اشتكى باسبرتو من الحر، لكن فوج قال إن ما يهم هو الالتزام بالجدول.

14. The ship stopped at Aden to take on coal.

توقفت السفينة فى عدن للتزود بالفحم.

15. Passepartout explored Aden's bazaar and camels, finding everything exotic.

استكشف باسبرتو سوق عدن وجمالها، ووجد كل شىء غريبًا وممتعًا.

16. Fix searched for telegraphs in Aden but still received no warrant.

بحث فيكس عن برقيات فى عدن لكنه لم يجد أمر القبض.

17. Fogg stayed on board, recording times and calculating hours to Bombay.

بقى فوج على متن السفينة يسجل المواعيد ويحسب الساعات المتبقية إلى بومباى.

18. The *Mongolia* sailed into the Indian Ocean with fresh air and larger waves.

أبحرت منغوليا فى المحيط الهندى بهواء نقى وأمواج أكبر.

19. Passepartout admired dolphins, stars, and glowing waters at night.

أعجب باسبرتو بالدلافين والنجوم ومياه الليل المتلألئة.

20. After thirteen days, they reached Bombay's busy harbor full of ships and animals.

بعد ثلاثة عشر يومًا، وصلوا إلى ميناء بومباى المزدحم بالسفن والحيوانات.

21. Passepartout was astonished by Bombay's colors, markets, and music.

انبهر باسبرتو بألوان بومباى وأسواقها وموسيقاها.

22. He entered a Hindu temple but was driven out for wearing shoes.

دخل معبدًا هندوسيًّا لكن طُرد بسبب ارتدائه الحذاء.

23. Fogg allowed him one hour in the city before boarding the train.

سمح له فوج بساعة واحدة فى المدينة قبل ركوب القطار.

24. Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix boarded the train to Calcutta together.

ركب فوج وباسبرتو وفيكس القطار معًا متجهين إلى كلكتا.

25. For Fogg, it was just the next stage; for Passepartout, a wonder; for Fix, a chase.

بالنسبة لفوج كان مجرد مرحلة جديدة، ولباسبرتو كان عجبًا، ولفيكس كان مطاردة.

Chapter Text

The sun was rising as the steamer Mongolia left the port of Suez, its engines turning steadily as it entered the narrow waters of the Red Sea. For many of the passengers, this was their first view of the desert coast of Arabia, with its endless stretches of golden sand and rocky hills. The air shimmered with heat, and the cries of seabirds followed the ship as it pressed southward toward the Indian Ocean.

For Phileas Fogg, the departure was no different from the turning of a page in a timetable. He checked his watch, compared it with the ship's clock, and then calmly opened his guidebook to note the distance to Bombay. His entire fortune depended on such calculations, and yet his face showed no trace of worry. Passepartout, however, was in awe.

"Mon Dieu," the valet whispered to himself, leaning over the rail, "the world grows larger every day. And yet my master behaves as if it were only another street in London!"

Life Aboard the Mongolia

The days at sea soon developed their rhythm. The passengers dined at fixed hours, strolled on deck during the cooler mornings and evenings, and played games of cards to pass the time. Mr. Fogg continued his habit of playing whist, winning or losing with equal calmness, as though the game itself mattered more than the money.

Passepartout, meanwhile, enjoyed exploring the ship. He spoke with sailors, asked questions about the engines, and admired the skill with which the crew managed such a vast machine. At night, he often stood on deck gazing at the stars, wondering how far from Paris he had already traveled. Sometimes he dreamed of home, but the thrill of adventure always returned with the sunrise.

Among the passengers, however, Detective Fix kept his watch. He observed every movement of Fogg, never relaxing his suspicion. Each day he hoped for a message from Suez or Aden that would confirm the arrest warrant, but none came. The telegraph lines were still too slow, and his frustration grew.

Through the Red Sea

The Mongolia sailed down the long body of the Red Sea, passing barren coastlines and the occasional Arab dhow with its triangular sail. The heat became oppressive, and the air thick with salt and dust. Many passengers hid below decks, but Fogg continued his measured walks at the exact same hours, no matter the weather.

Passepartout, sweating heavily, fanned himself with his hat. "Does my master not feel this heat?" he muttered. But when he asked, Fogg replied only:

"The temperature is of no consequence, provided the timetable is maintained."

In truth, Fogg's willpower was a mystery to everyone. He treated heat, cold, and distance all as minor inconveniences compared to the precision of his plan.

The Port of Aden

After several days, the steamer reached the port of Aden, at the southern tip of Arabia. The ship stopped to take on coal, and Passepartout was allowed to disembark for an hour. He marveled at the whitewashed houses, the crowded bazaar, and the camels kneeling patiently under the burning sun. For him, every sight was exotic, every sound a discovery.

Fix, too, went ashore, though his eyes searched not for wonders but for telegraph offices. Still no reply from London. He clenched his fists. "The warrant must arrive in Bombay," he told himself. "It must."

Meanwhile, Fogg remained on the ship. He spent the hour writing in his notebook, calmly recording the time of arrival and departure, and calculating how many hours remained until Bombay. For him, the stop at Aden was simply another entry in his careful schedule.

Into the Indian Ocean

The Mongolia now left the narrow seas and entered the wide Indian Ocean. The air grew fresher, the waves larger, and the horizon endless. For the first time since leaving London, Passepartout felt the true immensity of the world.

At night, the ship cut through waters sparkling with phosphorescence. Dolphins raced beside the bow. Passepartout clapped his hands in delight, calling other passengers to watch. Even Fix, though troubled, could not help admiring the sight.

The voyage across the Indian Ocean lasted thirteen days. The weather remained fair, and the engines of the Mongolia worked without failure. Each sunrise brought them closer to India. Fogg's calm never broke. He played cards, walked the deck, and read his guidebook.

Arrival at Bombay

Finally, the morning came when the coast of India appeared on the horizon. At first it was only a thin blue line, then the shapes of hills, and finally the towers and domes of Bombay. For Passepartout, the sight was astonishing. The crowded harbor was alive with ships from every nation, from British steamers to Indian dhows and Chinese junks. On the docks, he saw elephants, oxen, and endless lines of workers carrying goods.

"This," he whispered, "is truly another world."

Fogg, however, stepped ashore with his usual calm. He checked his watch, confirmed the departure of the train to Calcutta, and walked straight toward the ticket office.

Fix followed closely. His heart beat faster. Surely the warrant would be waiting here! But when he checked at the telegraph office, again there was nothing. The delay was unbearable, yet he could not abandon his chase.

Passepartout, meanwhile, begged his master for a few minutes to see the city. "Only a little time, monsieur!" he pleaded. Fogg, calculating the hours, agreed to give him one hour before the train departed.

A Glimpse of India

Passepartout ran into the streets like a child at a fair. He saw people of every dress and color. The smells of spices, incense, and dust filled the air. He had never imagined such variety in one city.

In a marketplace, he watched a group of musicians playing strange instruments, while dancers in bright costumes spun and clapped. He bought a few small trinkets as souvenirs, thinking of the stories he would tell in Paris.

But he also noticed the differences in custom. When he entered a Hindu temple out of curiosity, the priests shouted angrily and drove him out, for his shoes had polluted the holy ground. Red-faced and confused, he hurried back to meet Fogg, realizing that traveling the world meant not only seeing new wonders but also respecting unfamiliar traditions.

Departure by Train

At the appointed time, Fogg and Passepartout boarded the train bound for Calcutta. The carriages were crowded, the heat stifling, but the train represented the modern power of the British Empire in India. For Fogg, it was another link in the great chain of his plan. For Passepartout, it was the beginning of an adventure he could scarcely imagine.

As the train pulled out of Bombay, Fix stood on the platform, torn between anger and determination. "The warrant will arrive in Calcutta if not here," he swore. And so, boarding the same train, he continued his pursuit.

The great subcontinent of India lay before them, with its vast rivers, dense forests, and crowded cities. For Fogg, it was only the next stage on the timetable. For Passepartout, it was the heart of an extraordinary journey. For Fix, it was the chance to prove his suspicion.

The adventure pressed on.

Chapter (5) Answered Exercises

1. From which port did the *Mongolia* leave at the beginning of this chapter?

من أى ميناء غادرت السفينة مونجوليا فى بداية هذا الفصل؟

- From the port of Suez.

2. What did many passengers see for the first time when leaving Suez?

ماذا رأى العديد من الركاب لأول مرة عند مغادرتهم السويس؟

- The desert coast of Arabia.

3. How did Mr. Fogg spend much of his time on the ship?

كيف قضى السيد فُوج معظم وقته على متن السفينة؟

- By playing cards (whist), walking, and reading his guidebook.

4. What did Passepartout enjoy doing on the ship? ما الذى كان يستمتع باسبرتو بفعله على السفينة؟

- Exploring, speaking with sailors, and watching the stars.

5. What problem did Fix face with the telegraph? ما المشكلة التى واجهها فيكس مع البرق (التلغراف)؟

- The messages were too slow, and no arrest warrant arrived.

6. Where did the ship stop to take coal? أين توقفت السفينة لتزويدها بالفحم؟

- At the port of Aden.

7. What did Passepartout see in Aden? ماذا رأى باسبرتو فى عدن؟

- White houses, bazaars, and camels.

8. How long did the voyage across the Indian Ocean take? كم استغرقت الرحلة عبر المحيط الهندى؟

- Thirteen days.

9. What city did they finally reach in India? أى مدينة وصلوا إليها أخيرًا فى الهند؟

- Bombay.

10. What mistake did Passepartout make in the Hindu temple?

ما الخطأ الذى ارتكبه باسبرتو فى المعبد الهندوسى؟

- He entered with his shoes on, which made the priests angry.

11. Where was Fogg planning to go next after Bombay? إلى أين كان يخطط فُوج للذهاب بعد بومباى؟

- By train to Calcutta.

12. How does Fogg's behavior on the ship show his personality?

كيف يُظهر سلوك فُوج على السفينة جانبًا من شخصيته؟

- He stays calm, focused, and disciplined, always following his timetable.

13. Why does Passepartout find the world "larger every day"?

لماذا يجد باسبرتو أن العالم «يكبر كل يوم»؟

- Because he keeps discovering new lands, cultures, and sights he never imagined.

14. How do Aden and Bombay appear differently to Passepartout and to Fogg?

كيف تبدو عدن وبومباى بشكل مختلف بالنسبة لباسبرتو وفُوج؟

- Passepartout sees wonders and color, while Fogg sees only a stop in his schedule.

15. How do cultural differences create problems for Passepartout in Bombay?

كيف تسببت الاختلافات الثقافية فى مشاكل لباسبرتو فى بومباى؟

- He did not know the temple rules, so he upset the priests by wearing shoes.

16. What lesson does Passepartout learn after being shouted at in the temple?

ما الدرس الذى تعلمه باسبرتو بعد أن صاحوا فى وجهه داخل المعبد؟

- That travel means respecting other people's traditions and customs.

17. Why do you think Fogg treats everything like "entries in his schedule" instead of experiences? لماذا تعتقد أن فوج يعامل كل شىء كـ«بنود فى جدول مواعيده» بدلًا من تجارب؟

- Maybe he's afraid of losing control or getting distracted from his goal. Or perhaps he's never learned how to enjoy life because he's always focused on being perfect and organized.

18. In your opinion, what would a better detective do differently than Fix?

برأيك، ما الذى قد يفعله محقق أفضل من فيكس بشكل مختلف؟

- He would look for real proof of the crime, talk to anyone who saw what happened, and not automatically believe that Fogg is the bank robber.

19. In your opinion, how is Passepartout changing as a person during this journey?

برأيك، كيف يتغير باسبارتو كشخص خلال هذه الرحلة؟

- He's getting more comfortable with the world and with himself. He's discovering the world is a much bigger and more interesting place than he ever imagined.

20. What does it mean that Fogg "wins or loses with equal calmness"?

ماذا يعنى أن فوج «يفوز أو يخسر بهدوء متساو»؟

- He doesn't get emotionally attached to outcomes. This could be good self-control, or it could mean he doesn't really care about anything deeply.

21. Mr. Fogg sees amazing new places, but he acts like he's still in London. Why do you think he doesn't get excited?

يرى السيد فوج أماكن جديدة مذهلة، لكنه يتصرف كما لو أنه لا يزال فى لندن. لماذا تعتقد أنه لا يشعر بالحماس؟

- I think he believes emotions are dangerous because they might make him fail his bet, so he ignores all the beautiful things around him.

Chapter (5) Student's Book Exercises

Part (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The steamer *Mongolia* left the port of ..... .

a) London b) Bombay c) Suez d) Cairo

2. As the ship entered the Red Sea, passengers saw endless stretches of ..... .

a) jungle b) golden sand and rocky hills

c) forests d) rivers

3. Passepartout whispered, "The world grows larger every ....."

a) week b) day c) year d) month

4. Fogg showed no trace of ..... about the journey.

a) worry b) calm c) order d) confidence

5. Life aboard the *Mongolia* soon developed a ..... .

a) rhythm b) problem c) storm d) danger

6. Passengers passed the time by walking, dining, and playing ..... .

a) chess b) dominoes c) whist d) dice

7. Passepartout often admired the skill of the ship's ..... .

a) captain b) crew c) passengers d) musicians

8. At night, Passepartout gazed at the ..... .

a) waves b) stars c) ports d) lamps

9. Detective Fix observed every movement of ..... .

a) Passepartout b) Fogg c) the captain d) the crew

10. Fix was waiting for a message from ..... .

a) London b) Bombay c) Cairo d) Paris

11. The *Mongolia* sailed through the ..... Sea.

a) Red b) Black

c) Arabian d) Mediterranean

12. The heat on the ship was described as ..... .

a) mild b) oppressive c) cool d) comfortable

13. Many passengers hid ..... during the heat.

a) in the cabins below deck b) on deck

c) in the engine room d) in the port

14. Fogg still continued his walks at the ..... times.

a) same b) random c) shorter d) later

15. Passepartout fanned himself with his ..... .

a) coat b) hat c) hands d) scarf

16. Fogg said the temperature was of no ..... .

a) importance b) consequence c) problem d) use

17. The steamer stopped at the port of ..... .

a) Aden b) Marseille c) Dover d) Venice

18. Passepartout was allowed to disembark for ..... .

a) 1 hour b) 2 hours c) 5 hours d) 1 day

19. Passepartout admired the bazaar, camels, and ..... .

a) elephants b) whitewashed houses

c) mountains d) palaces

20. Fogg stayed on the ship and spent the hour ..... .

a) writing in his notebook b) walking in Aden

c) sightseeing d) shopping

21. Fix searched Aden for a ..... .

a) ticket b) telegraph office c) hotel d) servant

22. Fix told himself the warrant must arrive in ..... .

a) Cairo b) Aden c) Bombay d) Paris

23. The *Mongolia* entered the wide ..... Ocean.

a) Atlantic b) Pacific c) Indian d) Arctic

24. Passepartout clapped his hands at the sight of ..... .

a) sharks b) dolphins c) whales d) crabs

25. Even Fix, though troubled, admired the ..... .

a) sunsets b) ocean c) dolphins d) sights at sea

26. The voyage across the Indian Ocean lasted ..... days.

a) 7 b) 13 c) 20 d) 3

27. The weather during the voyage was ..... .

a) stormy b) fair c) dangerous d) rainy

28. Finally, the ship reached the coast of ..... .

a) India b) Arabia c) Africa d) China

29. Passepartout begged his master for ..... in Bombay.

a) money b) one hour to see the city

c) a new job d) rest

Part (B) Open-ended Questions:

1. From which port did the *Mongolia* depart?
2. What did passengers see along the Red Sea coast?
3. How did Fogg treat the departure?
4. What did Passepartout whisper about the world?
5. How did life on board the ship settle into a rhythm?
6. What game did Fogg play?
7. What did Passepartout admire about the crew?
8. What did he enjoy looking at during the nights?
9. Who secretly watched Fogg throughout the trip?
10. Where was Fix hoping to receive a warrant?
11. How does Fogg's calmness highlight his character?
12. Why was Passepartout amazed by the stars and dolphins?
13. What does the description of the heat and Fogg's reaction reveal?
14. Why did Fogg not get off the ship at Aden?
15. What does Passepartout's curiosity show about his nature?
16. How does Fix's frustration with the telegram system add tension?
17. Why might the author describe so many sights from Passepartout's point of view?
18. How does the Indian Ocean crossing contrast Fogg and Passepartout?
19. How does Bombay appear to Passepartout compared to Fogg?

Part (C) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Would you rather travel like Fogg (focused on schedule) or like Passepartout (curious and amazed)?
2. How would you feel traveling through the Red Sea in the 19th century?
3. Do you think Fogg's decision to stay on the ship at Aden was wise or boring?
4. How does Passepartout's reaction to new cultures reflect modern travelers?
5. Do you agree with Fogg that the weather is of "no consequence"? Why or why not?
6. If you were Fix, would you still follow Fogg without evidence? Explain.
7. What can we learn about enjoying small wonders, like dolphins, from Passepartout?
8. Do you think Fogg misses out on experiences by focusing only on time?
9. Which character's approach to travel do you admire most—Fogg, Passepartout, or Fix? Why?

Chapter (6) Across India by Rail

Vocabulary — المفردات

bale	بالة	inquiries	استفسارات	saris	ثياب السارى
barely	بالكاد	loads	حمولات	scenery	منظر
beasts	وحوش	marvel	معجزة	screech	صراخ / عواء
blinking	وميض / رمش	master	سيّد	spires	أبراج
bow	ينحنى	ox carts	عربات الثيران	stretch	يتمدد
carriages	عربات	pilgrims	حجاج	suspicious	مريب
copper	نحاس	platform	رصيف القطار	thatched roofs	أسقف القش
daring	جرىء	pretend	يتظاهر	trader	تاجر
engines hissing	صوت المحركات	purchase	يشترى	unconscious	غيرواع
grand	عظيم	release	يطلق	vendor	بائع متجول
grateful	ممنون	reliable	موثوق / يعتمد عليه	whisper	يهمس
hardship	صعوبة	resolve	يحل		
hesitation	تردد	restless	لا يهدأ	whistle	صافرة
horse-drawn	تجرها الخيول	saddle	سرج		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at dawn	عند الفجر	remained as unshaken as ever	ظلت ثابتة كما كانت دائمًا
conductor	كمسارى	shadow someone	يتتبع شخصًا
escape justice	الإفلات من العدالة	the jungle was alive with sound	كانت الغابة مليئة بالصوت
I must remain his shadow	يجب أن أبقى ظله	through the jungles	عبر الأدغال
keep close	يبقى على مقربة	Time is more valuable than gold.	الوقت أغلى من الذهب.
leaned out of	مالت خارج	was jolted awake	استيقظ مذعورًا
leaping across the branches	القفز عبر الفروع	wave gently	تتمايل بلطف
on the banks of	على ضفاف	wrestled with doubt	تصارع مع الشك
onward to	إلى الأمام نحو		

Values in this Chapter

Courage in the face of danger الشجاعة فى مواجهة الخطر	Fogg risks everything to save Aouda.
The value of human life قيمة حياة الإنسان	Passepartout insists that no custom justifies cruelty.
Justice and compassion العدالة والرحمة	Even Fix is forced to respect Fogg's sense of right and wrong.
Time vs. morality الوقت مقابل الأخلاق	Fogg shows that keeping a schedule must never outweigh doing what is right.

Summary in Points

1. At Bombay station, Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix boarded the train eastward.

فى محطة بومباى، ركب فوج وباسبرتو وفيكس القطار المتجه شرقًا.

2. The station was crowded with officers, traders, pilgrims, and women in colorful saris.

كانت المحطة مزدحمة بالضباط والتجار والحجاج ونساء بملابس زاهية.

3. Passepartout was amazed by the diversity and beauty of India.

اندهش باسبرتو من تنوع وجمال الهند.

4. Fix secretly followed them, still waiting for the arrest warrant.

تبعهم فيكس سرًا وهو ما زال ينتظر أمر القبض.

5. The train crossed villages, palm trees, temples, and herds of elephants.

مرّ القطار بقرى وأشجار نخيل ومعابد وقطعان من الأفيال.

6. Passepartout admired everything, while Fogg stayed calm, reading his newspaper.

أعجب باسبرتو بكل شىء، بينما ظل فوج هادئًا يقرأ صحيفته.

7. After two days, the train stopped suddenly—the railway was unfinished.

بعد يومين توقف القطار فجأة لأن خط السكة لم يكتمل.

8. Passengers had to leave; fifty miles of jungle had no tracks.

اضطر الركاب للنزول إذ كان أمامهم خمسون ميلًا من الأدغال بلا سكك.

9. Fogg stayed calm and searched for transport in the nearby village.

ظل فوج هادئًا وبحث عن وسيلة نقل فى القرية القريبة.

10. They found an elephant named Kiouni, strong and reliable but very expensive.

وجدوا فيلًا اسمه كايونى، قويًا وموثوقًا لكنه غالى الثمن.

11. Fogg paid two thousand pounds without hesitation, saying time was more valuable.

دفع فوج ألفى جنيه بلا تردد قائلًا إن الوقت أثمن من المال.

12. With a mahout as guide, they rode the elephant into the jungle.

ومع سائق فيل كمرشد، ركبوا الفيل ودخلوا الأدغال.

13. The jungle was full of birds, insects, and distant tiger roars.

كانت الأدغال مليئة بالطيور والحشرات وزئير النمور البعيد.

14. Passepartout was nervous but also amazed by the beauty of the forest.

كان باسبرتو قلقًا لكنه اندهش من جمال الغابة.

15. Fogg kept checking his watch, determined to stay on schedule.

ظل فوج يراجع ساعته مصممًا على الالتزام بالجدول.

16. Fix grew restless, still doubting if Fogg was truly a thief.

ازداد قلق فيكس وما زال يشك إذا كان فوج حقًا لصًا.

17. One day, they found a young woman unconscious in the jungle.

فى أحد الأيام، وجدوا شابة فاقدة الوعى فى الأدغال.

18. Her name was Aouda, the daughter of a wealthy merchant.

كان اسمها عاودا، ابنة تاجر ثرى.

19. She was rescued by Fogg, who acted with courage and kindness.

أنقذها فوج بشجاعة ولطف.

20. Aouda was grateful, and Passepartout admired his master more than ever.

شكرت عاودا فوج، وأعجب باسبرتو بسيده أكثر من أى وقت.

21. Even Fix began to respect Fogg's bravery despite his suspicion.

حتى فيكس بدأ يحترم شجاعة فوج رغم شكوكه.

22. With Aouda safe, they continued on the elephant until they reached the railway again.

ومع نجاة عاودا، واصلوا رحلتهم على الفيل حتى وصلوا للسكة الحديد مجددًا.

23. Fogg paid the mahout generously and released Kiouni back to him.

دفع فوج للمهوات بسخاء وأعاد إليه الفيل.

24. The group boarded the train once more, now heading to Calcutta.

ركبوا القطار مرة أخرى متجهين نحو كلكتا.

25. Fogg had lost time and money, but he had saved a precious life.

خسر فوج وقتًا ومالًا، لكنه أنقذ حياة ثمينة.

Chapter Text

The Grand Departure from Bombay

The following morning, Mr. Fogg, Passepartout, and Detective Fix—though the latter still uninvited—stood on the platform of Bombay's grand train station. The air was hot even at dawn, filled with the sounds of vendors shouting and engines hissing. The newly built railway line was a marvel of British engineering, stretching eastward across India. It promised to carry travelers from Bombay, through the jungles and plains, to the holy city of Allahabad, and onward to Calcutta on the banks of the Ganges.

Phileas Fogg purchased the tickets without hesitation, his calm face betraying no excitement. Passepartout, however, could barely contain his amazement. He had never seen so many different people together in one place: British officers in smart uniforms, Indian traders carrying bales of cloth, women in colorful saris, and pilgrims with walking sticks and copper pots.

"India!" he whispered to himself. "It is more wonderful than I ever imagined."

Fix kept close to the pair, pretending to be another traveler. In reality, his eyes never left Fogg. He still waited for the arrest warrant from London, hoping it would arrive in time. Until then, he resolved to follow Fogg wherever he went.

The train gave a long whistle. Steam poured from the engine, and the carriages shuddered. With a cry from the guard, the journey across India began.

Through the Countryside

At first, the train sped past the crowded streets of Bombay, where ox carts mixed with horse-drawn carriages and wandering cattle. Soon, the scenery changed. Palm trees waved gently in the breeze, villages with mud houses and thatched roofs appeared, and farmers worked in the rice fields, their feet sinking in the water.

Passepartout could not sit still. He leaned out of the window, pointing out temples with tall spires and monkeys leaping across the branches of banyan trees. He laughed like a child at every sight, while his master sat quietly, reading a newspaper.

"Mr. Fogg," he said at last, "do you see that? A whole herd of elephants! Enormous beasts, bigger than any horse."

But Fogg only nodded. "Yes, elephants are used for carrying loads in these regions. They are reliable animals."

Passepartout sighed. His master could find a way to make even elephants sound ordinary.

Fix's Inner Struggle

Meanwhile, Fix sat in the next carriage, pretending to admire the view. In truth, he wrestled with doubt. The more he studied Fogg, the more he wondered: could such a calm and polite gentleman really be the daring thief who robbed the Bank of England? Yet everything about the man's journey — the haste, the large sums of money, the determined silence — seemed suspicious.

"If only the warrant would arrive," Fix thought bitterly. "Until then, I must remain his shadow."

An Unexpected Halt

For two days the train traveled smoothly, stopping at small stations where merchants sold spiced tea, rice cakes, and fruit. Then, on the third day, the train slowed unexpectedly. Passepartout, who had just fallen asleep, was jolted awake. The conductor's voice shouted through the carriage:

"Attention! The line ends here. All passengers must leave the train."

Confused, Passepartout looked out the window. They were in the middle of the jungle. A small village stood nearby, but beyond it stretched an endless forest.

"What is this nonsense?" Passepartout cried. "Surely the line cannot end in the middle of nowhere!"

Fogg calmly asked the conductor for an explanation. The man bowed slightly and said, "Sir, the railway company promised to finish the track all the way to Allahabad. But the construction has not been completed. From here, there is no railway for fifty miles. You must find another way across the jungle."

Passepartout threw up his hands. "Fifty miles! In this heat, on foot? Impossible!"

Fogg, however, remained as unshaken as ever. He simply replied, "We will find transportation."

The Elephant Solution

In the nearby village, Fogg made inquiries. Ox carts and horses were available, but none could travel quickly across the rough jungle paths. Just when hope seemed thin, a guide mentioned that an elephant was for hire. The animal, named Kiouni, was large and strong, with broad ears and calm eyes.

"The price is high," warned the guide. "Two thousand pounds."

Passepartout nearly fell over. "Two thousand pounds ! Why, that is robbery!"

But Fogg handed over the money without blinking. "Time is more valuable than gold," he said.

With that, the elephant was saddled, and a skilled mahout (elephant driver) joined them as a guide. Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix climbed onto the animal's back. Slowly, Kiouni moved into the dense jungle, carrying them toward Allahabad.

Journey Through the Jungle

The jungle was alive with sound. Birds of bright colors screeched in the treetops, while insects buzzed like tiny drums. Occasionally, a tiger's roar echoed in the distance, causing Passepartout to clutch the saddle tightly.

"Do not worry," said the mahout calmly. "Tigers rarely attack elephants."

Passepartout muttered, "Rarely is not never."

Still, he could not deny the beauty of the forest. Sunlight filtered through the tall trees, and the air smelled of flowers and spice. Along the way, they passed small villages where children stared wide-eyed at the foreign travelers on the great elephant.

Fogg remained calm, studying his watch frequently to ensure they were still on schedule. Fix, on the other hand, grew restless. Every hour that passed felt like a chance for his suspect to escape justice.

A Dramatic Encounter

On the second day of their jungle crossing, they heard distant cries. The mahout slowed Kiouni and raised his hand. "Listen," he whispered.

The voices rose higher and higher until they came to an open space. There, they found a young woman lying unconscious, her face deathly pale.

A New Companion

Fogg decided to rescue the woman. And he made a plan. The woman's name was Aouda. She was the daughter of a wealthy merchant, forced a terrible situation after her husband's death. Grateful and shaken, she thanked Fogg with tears in her eyes.

"You have saved my life," she said softly.

Fogg replied simply, "No thanks are necessary. It was the right thing to do."

Passepartout, however, was glowing with pride. "Monsieur Fogg, you are the bravest man I have ever known!"

Even Fix, though still suspicious, felt a grudging respect. He had not expected such courage from his so-called criminal.

With Aouda now part of their group, the journey to Allahabad continued. Kiouni carried them steadily until at last, after days of hardship, the railway line appeared again.

Fogg paid the mahout generously and released Kiouni to him, with Aouda seated safely beside them. The party boarded the train once more, bound for Calcutta. Fogg had lost money and time, but he had gained something far more valuable—a human life saved.

Chapter (6) Answered Exercises

1. From which city did Fogg and his companions begin their train journey?

من أى مدينة بدأ فُوج ورفاقه رحلتهم بالقطار؟

- From Bombay.

2. What animals did Passepartout see in the countryside?

ما الحيوانات التى رآها باسبرتو فى الريف؟

- Elephants and monkeys.

3. How did Fogg describe elephants?

كيف وصف فُوج الأفيال؟

- As reliable animals used for carrying loads.

4. Why did the train stop in the jungle?

لماذا توقف القطار فى الغابة؟

- Because the railway line was not finished for 50 miles.

5. What transportation did Fogg choose instead of walking?

أى وسيلة نقل اختارها فُوج بدلًا من السير على الأقدام؟

- An elephant named Kiouni.

6. How much did the elephant cost to hire?

كم كان ثمن استئجار الفيل؟

- Two thousand pounds.

7. Who guided them through the jungle?

من الذى أرشدهم عبر الغابة؟

- A mahout (elephant driver).

8. What danger did Passepartout fear in the jungle?

ما الخطر الذى كان باسبرتو يخشاه فى الغابة؟

- Tigers.

9. What was the name of the woman they rescued, and who was she?

ما اسم المرأة التى أنقذوها، ومن كانت؟

- Aouda. The daughter of a wealthy merchant

10. How did Aouda feel after being saved?

كيف كان شعور أودة بعد إنقاذها؟

- She was grateful and thanked Fogg with tears.

11. Where did the group go after reaching the railway again?

إلى أين ذهب الفريق بعد أن وصلوا مجددًا إلى السكة الحديدية؟

- They boarded the train to Calcutta.

12. Why was Fogg willing to pay such a high price for the elephant?

لماذا كان فُوج مستعدًّا لدفع ثمن مرتفع جدًّا مقابل الفيل؟

- Because he valued time more than money.

13. How does the jungle setting create both beauty and danger?

كيف يجعل مشهد الغابة المكان مليئًا بالجمال والخطر فى الوقت نفسه؟

- It has colorful birds and flowers, but also tigers and thick forests.

14. What qualities does Fogg show when rescuing Aouda?

ما الصفات التى يُظهرها فُوج أثناء إنقاذه لأودة؟

- Courage, compassion, and moral responsibility.

15. What does the phrase "Time is more valuable than gold" reveal about Fogg?

ماذا يكشف تعبير «الوقت أثمن من الذهب» عن شخصية فُوج؟

- That he sees time as the most important resource in life.

Chapter (6) Student's Book Exercises

Part (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mr. Fogg, Passepartout, and Detective Fix stood at the platform of ..... .
   a) Bombay station b) Paris station
   c) Cairo station d) London station
2. The railway line promised to carry travelers from Bombay to ..... .
   a) Delhi b) Allahabad and Calcutta
   c) Suez d) Aden
3. The station was filled with vendors shouting and ..... .
   a) playing music b) engines hissing
   c) fireworks d) dancing
4. Phileas Fogg bought the train tickets with ..... .
   a) hesitation b) no hesitation c) anger d) fear
5. Passepartout was amazed by the variety of ..... .
   a) animals b) different people c) shops d) houses
6. Pilgrims carried ..... and copper pots.
   a) sticks b) books c) clothes d) flowers
7. Fix pretended to be another ..... .
   a) officer b) traveler c) vendor d) servant
8. Fix was still waiting for the ..... from London.
   a) arrest warrant b) letter
   c) ticket d) telegram reply
9. The train gave a long ..... before departure.
   a) whistle b) speech c) light d) horn
10. At first, the train sped past the crowded streets of ..... .
    a) Paris b) Bombay c) Suez d) Calcutta
11. Passepartout leaned out the window, pointing at ..... .
    a) temples and monkeys b) trains and buses
    c) elephants and lions d) castles and palaces
12. Fogg sat quietly reading a ..... .
    a) timetable b) newspaper c) guidebook d) letter
13. Passepartout was excited to see a herd of ..... .
    a) camels b) elephants c) tigers d) cows

14. Fogg explained elephants were used for carrying ..... .

a) kings b) loads c) water d) people only

15. Fix began to doubt if Fogg was really a ..... .

a) gentleman b) thief c) servant d) banker

16. For two days, the train traveled smoothly, stopping at ..... .

a) large cities b) small stations c) ports d) villages

17. Merchants sold ..... at the stations.

a) rice cakes, tea, and fruit b) clothes

c) books d) tickets

18. On the third day, the train unexpectedly ..... .

a) broke down b) slowed and stopped

c) turned back d) caught fire

19. The conductor announced the line ended in the middle of the ..... .

a) jungle b) desert c) mountains d) city

20. Passepartout cried, "Surely the line cannot end in the middle of .....!"

a) London b) nowhere c) a forest d) the sea

21. The conductor said the railway company had not finished the ..... .

a) train b) station

c) construction of the line d) bridge

22. They needed to find another way across ..... miles of jungle.

a) 25 b) 50 c) 100 d) 75

23. Fogg stayed calm and said they would find ..... .

a) a hotel b) transportation c) water d) money

24. In the nearby village, they found an animal named ..... .

a) Kiouni the elephant b) Simba the lion

c) Raja the horse d) Coco the camel

25. The guide warned the elephant's price was ..... .

a) cheap b) very high c) free d) low

26. Fogg paid ..... pounds for the elephant.

a) 500 b) 2,000 c) 1,000 d) 5,000

27. Passepartout thought the price was ..... .

a) fair b) robbery c) cheap d) small

28. Fogg said, "Time is more valuable than .....".

a) gold b) life c) family d) friends

29. They rescued a woman named ..... during the jungle crossing.

a) Clara b) Aouda c) Sophia d) Maria

Part (B) Open-ended Questions:

1. Where did Fogg, Passepartout, and Fix begin their journey in this chapter?
2. What destinations was the new railway line supposed to reach?
3. What kinds of people did Passepartout see at the station?
4. What did the pilgrims carry with them?
5. Why did Fix continue to travel with them?
6. What animals did Passepartout see from the train?
7. How did Fogg describe elephants?
8. What food did merchants sell at the small stations?
9. Why did the train stop on the third day?
10. How many miles of jungle had no railway line?
11. Why did the unfinished railway surprise Passepartout so much?
12. What does Fogg's calmness in the face of the problem show?
13. Why was Passepartout upset about the price of the elephant?
14. Why did Fogg agree to pay such a high price?
15. How does the elephant Kiouni symbolize adaptation in the journey?
16. How does Fix's doubt about Fogg affect the story?
17. What dangers did the jungle crossing include?
18. Why was Aouda's rescue important?
19. How did Passepartout feel about Fogg after the rescue?
20. Why might even Fix admire Fogg at this point?

Part (C) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Would you feel safe traveling across the jungle on an elephant? Why or why not?
2. Do you agree with Fogg that "time is more valuable than gold"? Explain.
3. Was Passepartout right to call the price of the elephant robbery? Why?
4. Would you spend a fortune to save time, like Fogg?
5. How do you think Fogg's decision to rescue Aouda changes the story?
6. Do you think Fogg is motivated by honor or pride in his decisions?
7. What lessons about flexibility in plans can we learn from this chapter?
8. How does the unfinished railway show the limits of technology in the 19th century?
9. What would you have done if you were in Fogg's place?
10. What does this chapter teach us about the balance between goals and humanity?

Dictionary

الكلمات الواردة بقطع الفهم

atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى/الجو	firmly	بثبات/بحزم	nocturnal	ليلى
awareness	وعى	flexibility	المرونة	nutrients	مواد غذائية/عناصر غذائية
bounce	يرتد/قفز	food recipes	وصفات الطعام	occur	يحدث
circumstances	ظروف	frightful	مخيف	peanut butter	زبدة الفول السودانى
citizenship	مواطنة	function	وظيفة/دور	permission	إذن/تصريح
combining	دمج/الجمع	generations	أجيال	perseverance	المثابرة
compare	يقارن	gravity	الجاذبية	plantations	مزارع
constructions	إنشاءات/مبانى	guarantee	ضمان	potential energy	طاقة كامنة
contribute to	يساهم فى	hedgehog	قنفذ	prank	مزحة/مقلب
cooperative	تعاون/متعاون	high-pitched	حاد الصوت/مرتفع النغمة	predators	مفترسات
coordination	تنسيق	horror	رعب	processed foods	أطعمة مصنعة
curious	فضولى	hysterically	بهيستيريا/بجنون	prosperous future	مستقبل مزدهر
delicate	رقيق/حساس	identity	هوية	protection	حماية
desert-dwelling animals	حيوانات تعيش فى الصحراء	immune system	الجهاز المناعى	relieve stress	يخفف التوتر
detective	محقق	ingredients	المكونات	rodents	قوارض
devoted to	مكرس لـ/مخلص لـ	interact with	يتفاعل مع	rucksack	حقيبة ظهر
directions	اتجاهات/تعليمات	interpret	يفسر/يترجم	scent	رائحة/عطر
disapprove	لا يوافق/يرفض	kinetic energy	طاقة حركية	scolding	توبيخ
discipline	انضباط	measure	يقيس/قياس	silliness	حماقة/سخافة
diverse culture	ثقافة متنوعة	mindful	منتبه/واعٍ	space shuttle	مكوك فضائى
self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس	modems	أجهزة المودم	tangible	ملموس
eliminate depression	يقضى على الاكتئاب	moderate	معتدل	the metric system	النظام القياسى المترى
empower	يمكّن/يُقوّى	motion	حركة	troublemakers	مثيرو الشغب
entrepreneurship	ريادة/ريادة الأعمال	muffled yell	صرخة مكتومة	tumble down	يسقط/ينهار
essence	جوهر/ماهية	muscles	عضلات	ultimately	فى النهاية
evaluate	يُقيِّم	natural-born	مولود بالفطرة	upbringing	التربية/التنشئة
excellent	ممتاز	navigating	الملاحة/التوجيه	values	قيم
exploitation	استغلال	negative impact	تأثير سلبى	vanishing	اختفاء
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	nightmare	كابوس	vary	يتنوع/يختلف

جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب
مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أى جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير
أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابى صريح من الناشر.

رقم الإيداع: 2025/8847
خدمة العملاء: 16766
NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

(اللغة الإنجليزية / الصف الثانى الثانوى)

معاك الكتاب
معاك الـAPP

نزّل تطبيق الأضواء

1 نـــزّل

2 سجّـــل

3 أدخل كودك الشخصى

4 احصل على منهجك التفاعلى مجانًا

اســـم الطـالـــب: .....

الـعـنـــــوان: .....

البريد الإلكترونـى: .....

الهاتف/ المحمول: .....

المحـــافـظـــة: .....

المـــــدرســـــة: .....

الإدارة التعليـمـيـة: .....

اسم مدرس المادة: .....

الـــكـــــود:

6 221133 001632
لغة إنجليزية/ 2ث /ف1/ 2026

/aladwaa
ALADWAA Gem
MAHDET MISR